	Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1	**For safety and security**	Make sure to read through them
2	**Instrument cluster**	How to read the gauges and meters, the variety of warning lights and indicators, etc.
3	**Operation of each component**	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving, etc.
4	**Driving**	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving
5	**Audio system**	Operating the audio system
6	**Interior features**	Usage of the interior features, etc.
7	**Maintenance and care**	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures
8	**When trouble arises**	What to do in case of malfunction or emergency
9	**Vehicle specifications**	Vehicle specifications, customizable features, etc.
	Index	Search by symptom
		Search alphabetically

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 2 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

For your information 8
Reading this manual.....12
How to search 13
Pictorial index.....14

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving.....34
For safety drive 36
Seat belts.....38
SRS airbags.....42
Airbag manual on-off system 52
Safety information for children 54
Child restraint systems 55
Installing child restraints 64
Exhaust gas precautions 74

1-2. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 75
Alarm 83
Double locking system.....86

2 Instrument cluster

2. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators..... 88
Gauges and meters..... 94
Multi-information display (3-ring meter) 97
Multi-information display (2-ring meter) 102
Fuel consumption information 113

3 Operation of each component

3-1. Key information
Keys 118

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 130
Back door 136
Smart entry & start system..... 141

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 157
Rear seats..... 159
Head restraints..... 161

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 163
Inside rear view mirror..... 165
Outside rear view mirrors..... 167

3-5. Opening and closing the windows
Power windows 170

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 3 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 176
Cargo and luggage 188
Trailer towing 189

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch (vehicles without a smart entry & start system).....199
Engine (ignition) switch (vehicles with a smart entry & start system).....203
Multidrive 213
Manual transmission.....218
Turn signal lever 221
Parking brake.....222

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch.....223
Fog light switch 229
Windshield wipers and washer 231
Rear window wiper and washer 235

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 237

4-5. Toyota Safety Sense

Toyota Safety Sense 240
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 244
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 252
Automatic High Beam 258
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 262

4-6. Using the driving support systems

Stop & Start system (Smart Stop)..... 267
Cruise control 280
Speed limiter 285
Toyota parking assist-sensor 289
Simple-IPA (Simple-Intelligent Parking Assist) 296
Diesel particulate filter system..... 311
Driving assist systems..... 313

4-7. Driving tips

Winter driving tips..... 319

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 4 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

5 Audio system

5-1. Basic Operations
Audio system types.....324
Steering wheel audio switches.....325
AUX port/USB port.....326

5-2. Using the audio system
Optimal use of the audio system 327

5-3. Using the radio
Radio operation 329

5-4. Playing audio CDs and MP3/WMA discs
CD player operation.....332

5-5. Using an external device
Listening to an iPod 340
Listening to a USB memory device 348
Using the AUX port.....355

5-6. Using Bluetooth® devices
Bluetooth® audio/phone 356
Using the steering wheel switches..... 361
Registering a Bluetooth® device..... 362

5-7. “SET UP” menu
Using the “SET UP” menu (“Bluetooth” menu)..... 363
Using the “SET UP” menu (“Phone” menu)..... 368

5-8. Bluetooth® Audio
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 373

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone
Making a phone call 376
Receiving a phone call 378
Speaking on the phone 379

5-10. Bluetooth®
Bluetooth®..... 381

6 Interior features

6-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Heater system.....386

Automatic air conditioning system 391

Power heater 399

Seat heaters 401

6-2. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list.....403

• Interior lights.....404

• Vanity lights 404

• Personal lights.....405

6-3. Using the storage features

List of storage features 407

• Glove box 408

• Console box 408

• Bottle holders 409

• Cup holders 410

• Auxiliary boxes 411

Luggage compartment features.....413

6-4. Other interior features

Other interior features.....419

• Sun visors.....419

• Vanity mirrors 419

• Clock 420

• Portable ashtray 420

• Power outlets.....421

• Armrest.....422

• Assist grips 423

• Coat hooks 423

• Panoramic roof shade.....424

7 Maintenance and care

7-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior..... 428

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior..... 432

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 435

7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 438

Hood..... 441

Positioning a floor jack 443

Engine compartment 444

Tires 465

Tire inflation pressure..... 476

Wheels 478

Air conditioning filter..... 481

Wireless remote control/ electronic key battery 483

Checking and replacing fuses 486

Light bulbs..... 492

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 6 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

8 When trouble arises

8-1. Essential information
Emergency flashers 508
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 509

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If your vehicle needs to be towed 511
If you think something is wrong 517
Fuel pump shut off system 518
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 519
If a warning message is displayed 531
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 537
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit).....551
If the engine will not start.....566
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P..... 568
If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 569
If the vehicle battery is discharged..... 572
If your vehicle overheats 578
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls 582
If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 583

9 Vehicle specifications

9-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 586
Fuel information 606

9-2. Customization
Customizable features 608

9-3. Initialization
Items to initialize..... 615

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 618
Alphabetical index..... 623

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Toyota policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Toyota

Both genuine Toyota and a wide variety of other spare parts and accessories for Toyota vehicles are currently available on the market. Should it be determined that any of the genuine Toyota parts or accessories supplied with the vehicle need to be replaced, Toyota recommends that genuine Toyota parts or accessories, be used to replace them. Other parts or accessories of matching quality can also be used. Toyota cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Toyota products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine Toyota spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system (if equipped)
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system
- Toyota Safety Sense (if equipped)

Be sure to check with any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Scrapping of your Toyota

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Toyota contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, before you scrap your vehicle.



Your vehicle contains batteries and/or accumulators. Do not discard them into the environment but cooperate with separate collection (Directive 2006/66/EC).

⚠ WARNING

■ **General precautions while driving**

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ **General precaution regarding children's safety**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

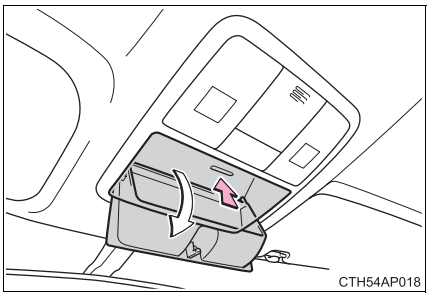
Reading this manual

WARNING:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.

NOTICE:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

1 2 3 ··· Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

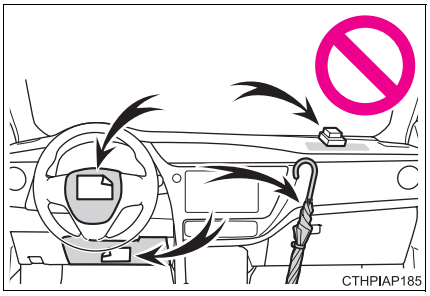
Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.



Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

Indicates the component or position being explained.

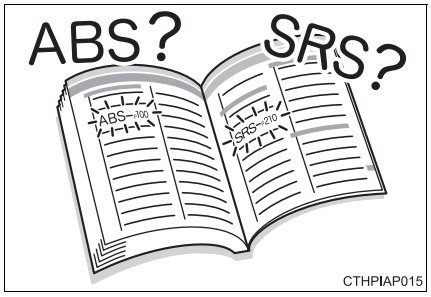
Means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



How to search

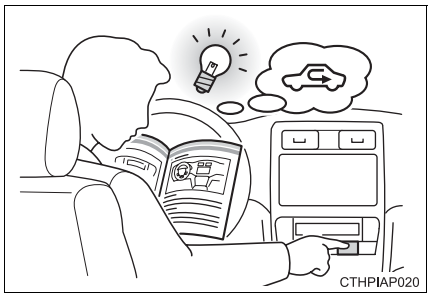
■ **Searching by name**

• Alphabetical index ..... P. 623



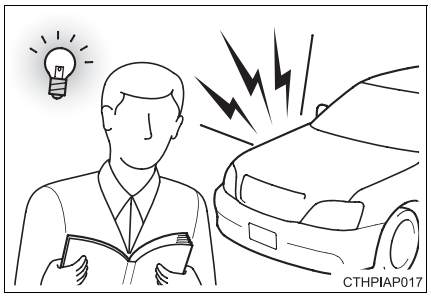
■ **Searching by installation position**

• Pictorial index ..... P. 14



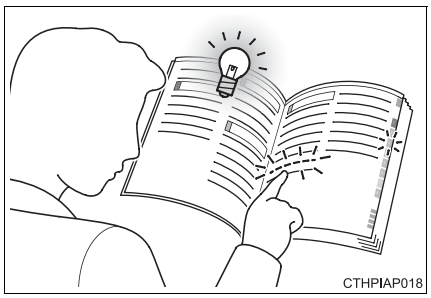
■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

• What to do if... (Troubleshooting) ..... P. 618



■ **Searching by title**

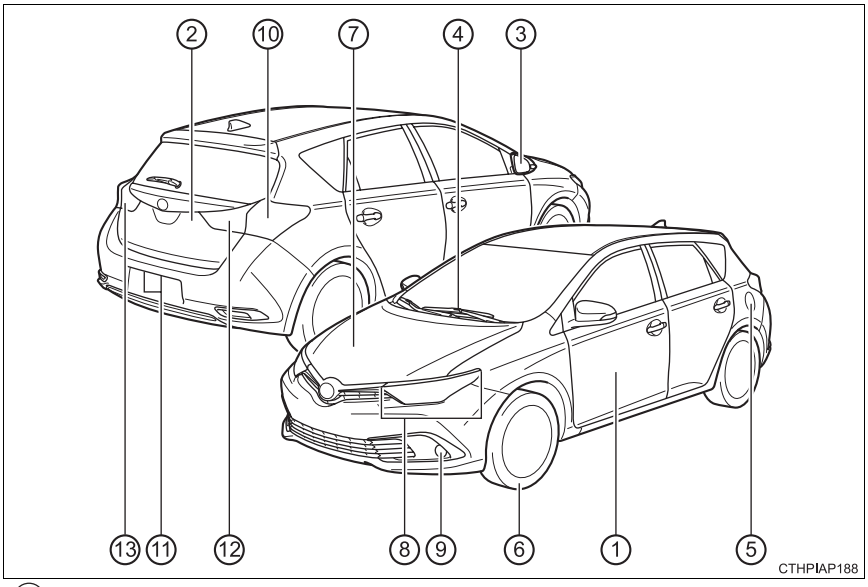
• Table of contents ..... P. 2



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 14 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Pictorial index

Exterior



① **Doors . . . . . P. 130**
Locking/unlocking . . . . . P. 130
Opening/closing the side windows . . . . . P. 170
Locking/unlocking using the mechanical key*1 . . . . . P. 569
Warning lights/warning messages*2 . . . . . P. 519, 531

② **Back door . . . . . P. 136**
Locking/unlocking . . . . . P. 136
Warning lights/warning messages*2 . . . . . P. 519, 531

③ **Outside rear view mirrors . . . . . P. 167**
Adjusting the mirror angle . . . . . P. 167
Folding the mirrors . . . . . P. 167
Defogging the mirrors . . . . . P. 388, 395

④ **Windshield wipers . . . . . P. 231**
Precautions for winter . . . . . P. 319
Precautions for using a car wash . . . . . P. 430

⑤ **Fuel filler door . . . . . P. 237**
Refueling method . . . . . P. 237
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity . . . . . P. 592

⑥ **Tires . . . . . P. 465**
Tire size/inflation pressure . . . . . P. 603
Winter tires/tire chains . . . . . P. 319
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system*1 . . . . . P. 465
Coping with flat tires . . . . . P. 537

⑦ **Hood . . . . . P. 441**
Opening . . . . . P. 441
Engine oil . . . . . P. 593
Coping with overheating . . . . . P. 578

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P. 492, Watts: P. 605)

⑧ **Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights/ turn signal lights . . . . . P. 221, 223**

⑨ **Front fog lights*1 . . . . . P. 229**

⑩ **Stop lights/tail lights/turn signal lights . . . . . P. 221, 223**

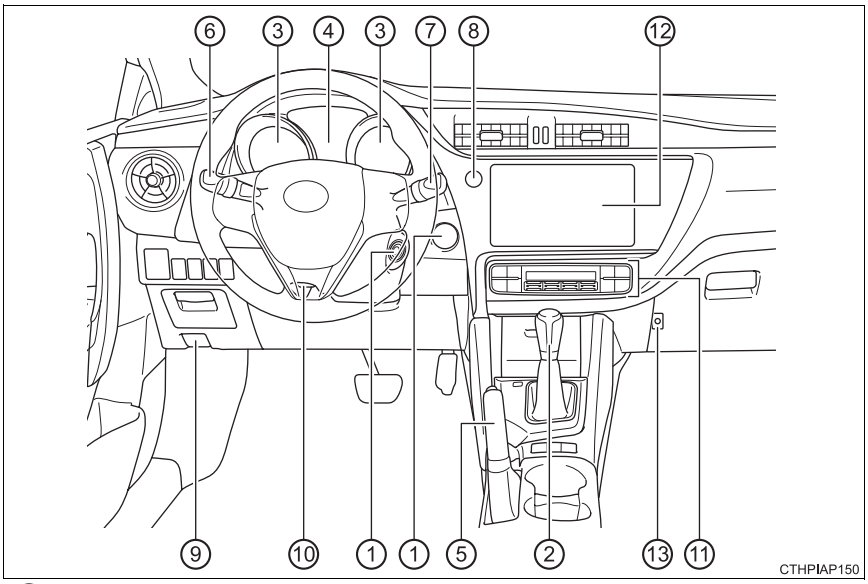
⑪ **License plate lights . . . . . P. 223**

⑫ **Tail lights . . . . . P. 223**
Rear fog light*4 . . . . . P. 229
Back-up light*3
Shifting the shift lever to R . . . . . P. 213, 218

⑬ **Tail lights . . . . . P. 223**
Rear fog light*3 . . . . . P. 229
Back-up light*4
Shifting the shift lever to R . . . . . P. 213, 218

*1: If equipped
*2: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter
*3: Left-hand drive vehicles
*4: Right-hand drive vehicles

Instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)



① **Engine switch . . . . . P. 199, 203**
Starting the engine/changing the modes . . . . . P. 199, 203
Emergency stop of the engine . . . . . P. 509
When the engine will not start . . . . . P. 566
Warning messages*1 . . . . . P. 531

② **Shift lever . . . . . P. 213, 218**
Changing the shift position . . . . . P. 213, 218
Precautions against towing . . . . . P. 511
When the shift lever does not move*2 . . . . . P. 568

③ **Meters . . . . . P. 94**
Reading the meters/adjusting the meter light . . . . . P. 94
Warning lights/indicator lights . . . . . P. 88
When the warning lights come on . . . . . P. 519

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 17 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

④ **Multi-information display . . . . . P. 97, 102**
If a warning message or indicator is displayed*1 . . . . . P. 531

⑤ **Parking brake. . . . . P. 222**
Applying/releasing . . . . . P. 222
Precautions for winter . . . . . P. 320
Warning buzzer/message*1 . . . . . P. 222

⑥ **Turn signal lever . . . . . P. 221**
Headlight switch . . . . . P. 223
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/ daytime running lights . . . . . P. 223
Front fog lights*3/rear fog light . . . . . P. 229

⑦ **Windshield wiper and washer switch . . . . . P. 231**
Usage . . . . . P. 231
Adding washer fluid . . . . . P. 462
Headlight cleaners*3 . . . . . P. 231

⑧ **Emergency flasher switch . . . . . P. 508**

⑨ **Hood lock release lever . . . . . P. 441**

⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever . . . . . P. 163**
Adjustment. . . . . P. 163

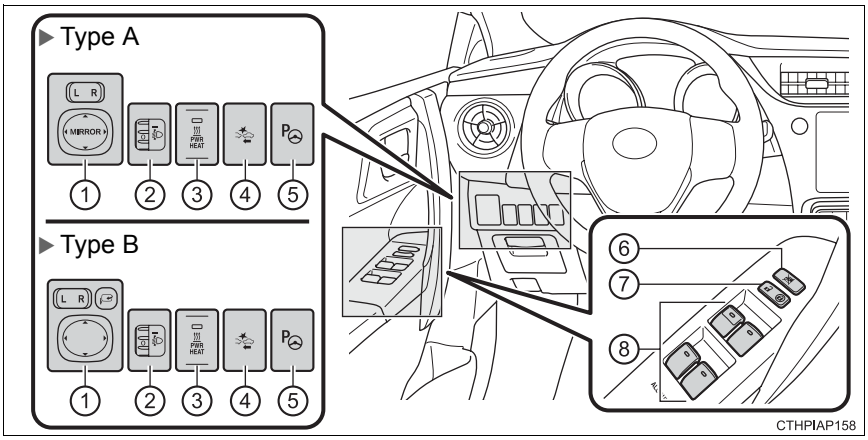
⑪ **Heater system*3 . . . . . P. 386**
Air conditioning system*3 . . . . . P. 391
Usage . . . . . P. 386, 391
Rear window defogger. . . . . P. 388, 395

⑫ **Audio system*3 . . . . . P. 324**
Navigation/multimedia system*3, 4
Trip information/past record. . . . . P. 113

⑬ **Tire pressure warning reset switch*3 . . . . . P. 468**

*1: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter
*2: Vehicles with a Multidrive
*3: If equipped
*4: Refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

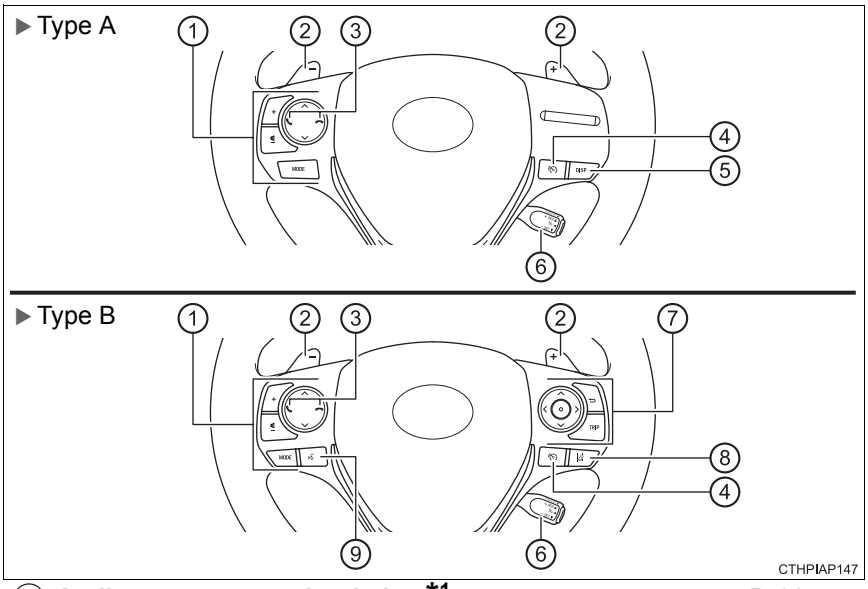
Switches (left-hand drive vehicles)



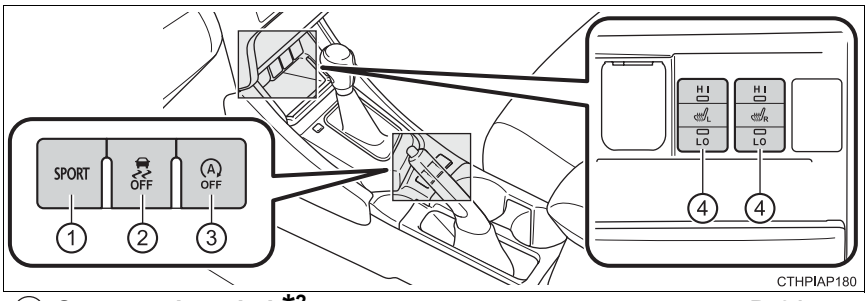
① **Outside rear view mirror switches** . . . . . **P. 167**
② **Headlight leveling dial*** . . . . . **P. 226**
③ **Power heater switch*** . . . . . **P. 399**
④ **PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch*** . . . . . **P. 244**
⑤ **Simple-IPA switch*** . . . . . **P. 297**
⑥ **Window lock switch** . . . . . **P. 170**
⑦ **Door lock switch** . . . . . **P. 133**
⑧ **Power window switches*** . . . . . **P. 170**

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 20 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分



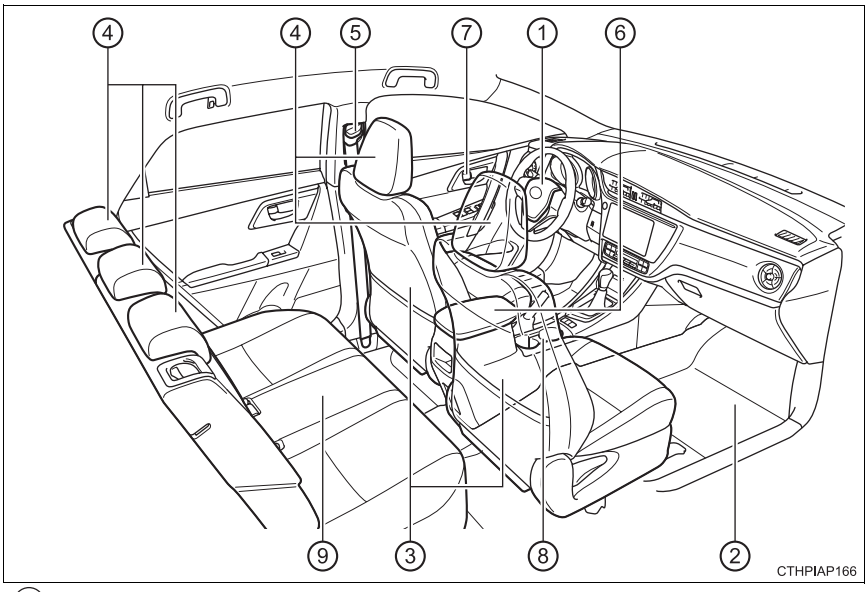
① **Audio remote control switches*1 . . . . . P. 325**
② **Paddle shift switches*2 . . . . . P. 215**
③ **Telephone switches*1 . . . . . P. 361**
④ **Speed limiter switch*2 . . . . . P. 285**
⑤ **“DISP” switch . . . . . P. 98**
⑥ **Cruise control switch*2 . . . . . P. 280**
⑦ **Meter control switches . . . . . P. 104, 105**
⑧ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert) switch*2 . . . . . P. 252**
⑨ **Talk switch*1 . . . . . P. 361**



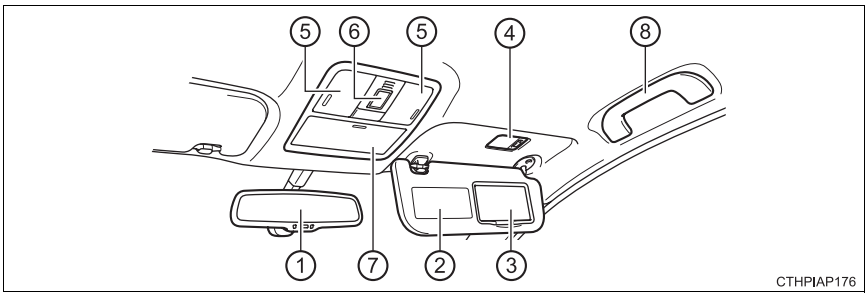
① **Sport mode switch*2 . . . . . P. 214**
② **VSC OFF switch . . . . . P. 314, 315**
③ **Stop & Start cancel switch*2 . . . . . P. 269**
④ **Seat heater switches*2 . . . . . P. 401**

*1: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.
*2: If equipped

Interior (left-hand drive vehicles)



① **SRS airbags** . . . . . **P. 42**
② **Floor mats** . . . . . **P. 34**
③ **Front seats** . . . . . **P. 157**
④ **Head restraints** . . . . . **P. 161**
⑤ **Seat belts** . . . . . **P. 38**
⑥ **Console box** . . . . . **P. 408**
⑦ **Inside lock buttons** . . . . . **P. 133**
⑧ **Cup holders** . . . . . **P. 410**
⑨ **Rear seats*1** . . . . . **P. 159**



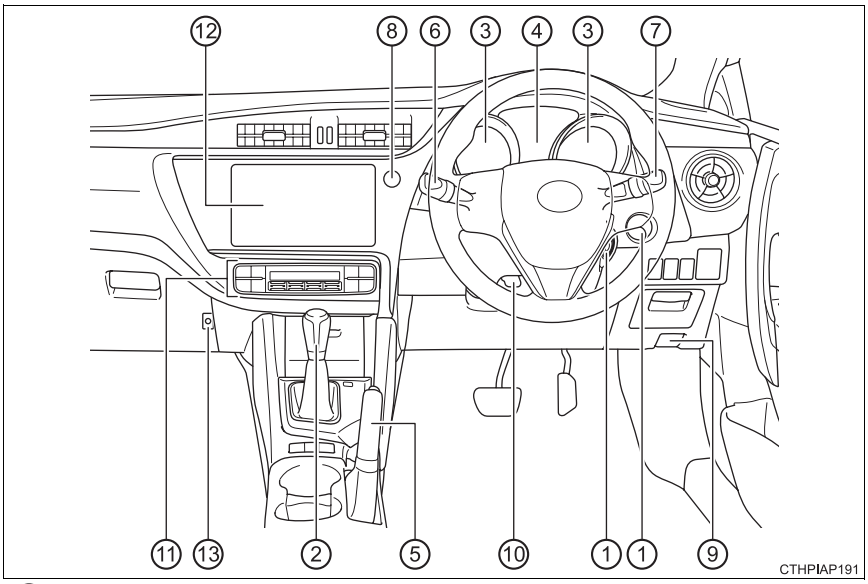
① **Inside rear view mirror** . . . . . **P. 165**
② **Sun visors*2** . . . . . **P. 419**
③ **Vanity mirrors** . . . . . **P. 419**
④ **Vanity lights*1** . . . . . **P. 404**
⑤ **Interior lights/personal lights** . . . . . **P. 404, 405**
⑥ **Panoramic roof shade switch*1** . . . . . **P. 424**
⑦ **Auxiliary boxes** . . . . . **P. 411**
⑧ **Assist grips** . . . . . **P. 423**

*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 72)



Instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)



① **Engine switch . . . . . P. 199, 203**
Starting the engine/changing the modes . . . . . P. 199, 203
Emergency stop of the engine . . . . . P. 509
When the engine will not start . . . . . P. 566
Warning messages*1 . . . . . P. 531

② **Shift lever . . . . . P. 213, 218**
Changing the shift position . . . . . P. 213, 218
Precautions against towing . . . . . P. 511
When the shift lever does not move*2 . . . . . P. 568

③ **Meters . . . . . P. 94**
Reading the meters/adjusting the meter light . . . . . P. 94
Warning lights/indicator lights . . . . . P. 88
When the warning lights come on . . . . . P. 519

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 25 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

④ **Multi-information display . . . . . P. 97, 102**
If a warning message or indicator is displayed*1 . . . . . P. 531

⑤ **Parking brake. . . . . P. 222**
Applying/releasing . . . . . P. 222
Precautions for winter . . . . . P. 320
Warning buzzer/message*1 . . . . . P. 222

⑥ **Turn signal lever . . . . . P. 221**
Headlight switch . . . . . P. 223
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/ daytime running lights . . . . . P. 223
Front fog lights*3/rear fog light . . . . . P. 229

⑦ **Windshield wiper and washer switch . . . . . P. 231**
Usage . . . . . P. 231
Adding washer fluid . . . . . P. 462

⑧ **Emergency flasher switch . . . . . P. 508**

⑨ **Hood lock release lever . . . . . P. 441**

⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever . . . . . P. 163**
Adjustment. . . . . P. 163

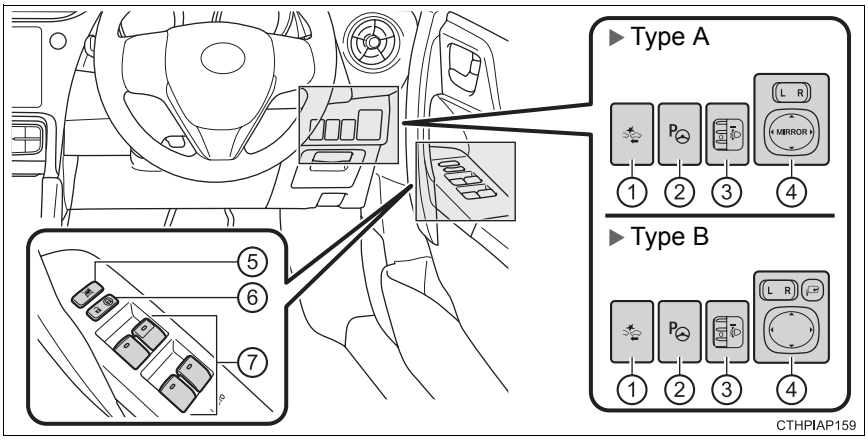
⑪ **Heater system*3 . . . . . P. 386**
Air conditioning system*3 . . . . . P. 391
Usage . . . . . P. 386, 391
Rear window defogger. . . . . P. 388, 395

⑫ **Audio system*3 . . . . . P. 324**
Navigation/multimedia system*3, 4
Trip information/past record. . . . . P. 113

⑬ **Tire pressure warning reset switch . . . . . P. 468**

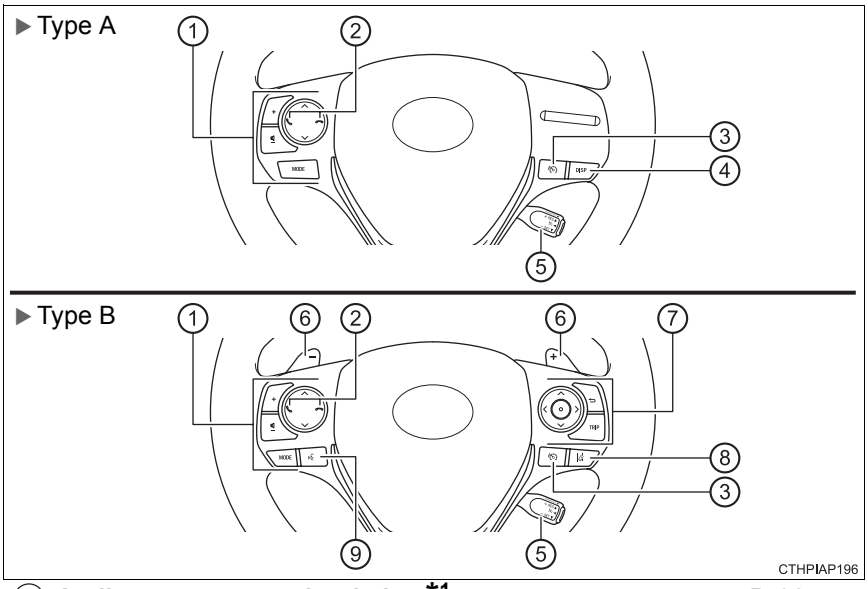
*1: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter
*2: Vehicles with a Multidrive
*3: If equipped
*4: Refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

Switches (right-hand drive vehicles)



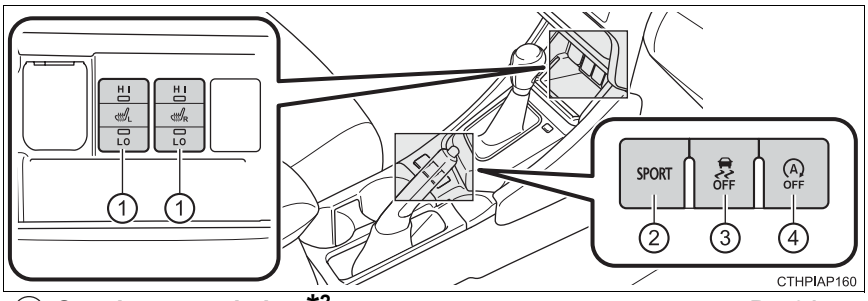
① **PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch*** . . . . . **P. 244**
② **Simple-IPA switch*** . . . . . **P. 297**
③ **Headlight leveling dial*** . . . . . **P. 226**
④ **Outside rear view mirror switches** . . . . . **P. 167**
⑤ **Window lock switch** . . . . . **P. 170**
⑥ **Door lock switch** . . . . . **P. 133**
⑦ **Power window switches*** . . . . . **P. 170**

*: If equipped



① **Audio remote control switches*1 . . . . . P. 325**
② **Telephone switches*1 . . . . . P. 361**
③ **Speed limiter switch*2 . . . . . P. 285**
④ **“DISP” switch . . . . . P. 98**
⑤ **Cruise control switch*2 . . . . . P. 280**
⑥ **Paddle shift switches*2 . . . . . P. 215**
⑦ **Meter control switches . . . . . P. 104, 105**
⑧ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert) switch*2 . . . . . P. 252**
⑨ **Talk switch*1 . . . . . P. 361**

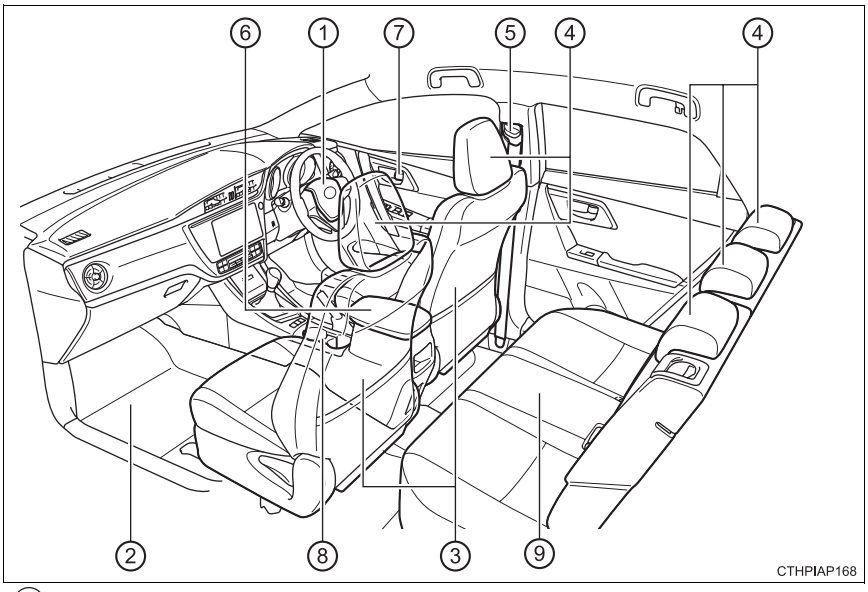
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 29 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分



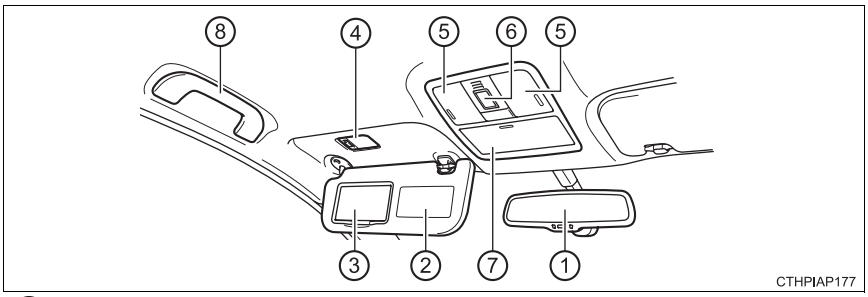
① **Seat heater switches*2 . . . . . P. 401**
② **Sport mode switch*2 . . . . . P. 214**
③ **VSC OFF switch . . . . . P. 314, 315**
④ **Stop & Start cancel switch*2 . . . . . P. 269**

*1: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.
*2: If equipped

Interior (right-hand drive vehicles)



① **SRS airbags** . . . . . **P. 42**
② **Floor mats** . . . . . **P. 34**
③ **Front seats** . . . . . **P. 157**
④ **Head restraints** . . . . . **P. 161**
⑤ **Seat belts** . . . . . **P. 38**
⑥ **Console box** . . . . . **P. 408**
⑦ **Inside lock buttons** . . . . . **P. 133**
⑧ **Cup holders** . . . . . **P. 410**
⑨ **Rear seats*1** . . . . . **P. 159**



① **Inside rear view mirror** . . . . . **P. 165**
② **Sun visors*2** . . . . . **P. 419**
③ **Vanity mirrors** . . . . . **P. 419**
④ **Vanity lights*1** . . . . . **P. 404**
⑤ **Interior lights/personal lights** . . . . . **P. 404, 405**
⑥ **Panoramic roof shade switch*1** . . . . . **P. 424**
⑦ **Auxiliary boxes** . . . . . **P. 411**
⑧ **Assist grips** . . . . . **P. 423**

*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 72)



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 32 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

For safety and security 1

1-1. For safe use

Before driving.....34
For safety drive.....36
Seat belts.....38
SRS airbags.....42
Airbag manual on-off system.....52
Safety information for children.....54
Child restraint systems.....55
Installing child restraints.....64
Exhaust gas precautions.....74

1-2. Theft deterrent system

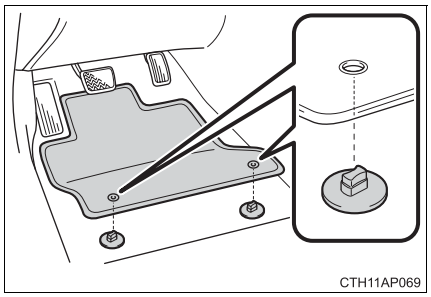
Engine immobilizer system.....75
Alarm.....83
Double locking system.....86

Before driving

Floor mat

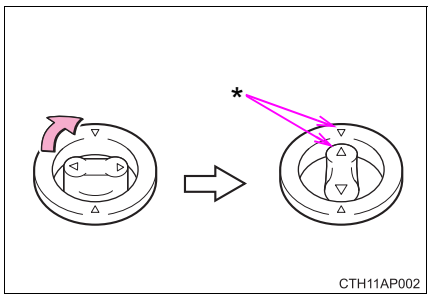
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the △ marks.



The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

WARNING

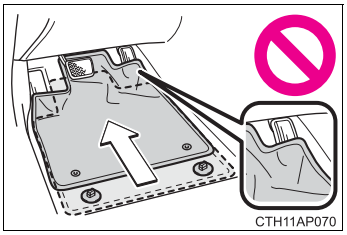
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Toyota Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P (Multidrive) or N (manual transmission), fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

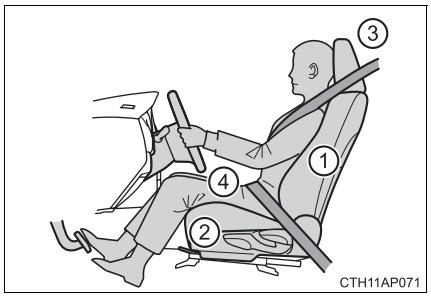

CTH11AP070

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 36 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

For safety drive

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



① Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P. 157)

② Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P. 157)

③ Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 161)

④ Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 38)

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P. 38)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 55)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 37 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P. 165, 167)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

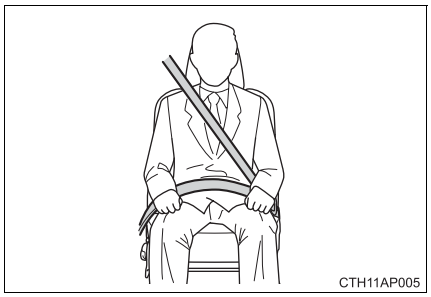
- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts

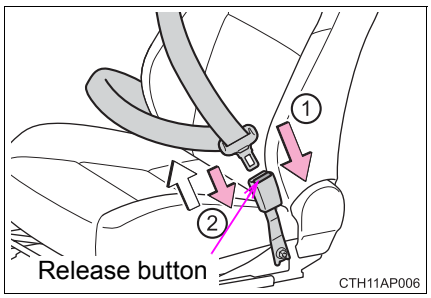
- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seat-back. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.


CTH11AP005

Fastening and releasing the seat belt

① To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

② To release the seat belt, press the release button.



CTH11AP006

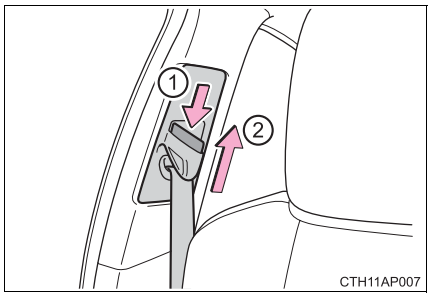
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 39 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

① Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.

② Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

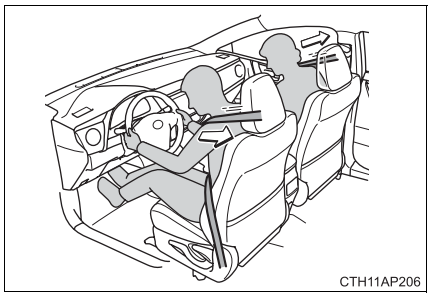
Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.



Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.



■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 55)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P. 38)

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated (front seats)

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for seat belt replacement or installation.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

Wearing a seat belt

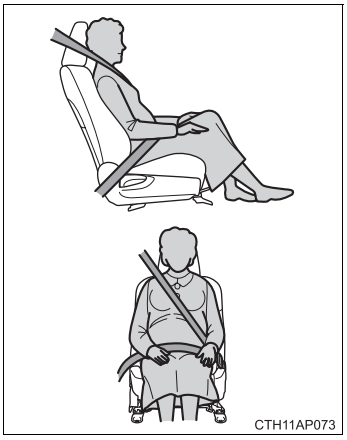
- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Toyota recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 38)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.


CTH11AP073

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 41 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ **People suffering illness**

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 38)

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ **Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)**

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Adjustable shoulder anchor (front seats)**

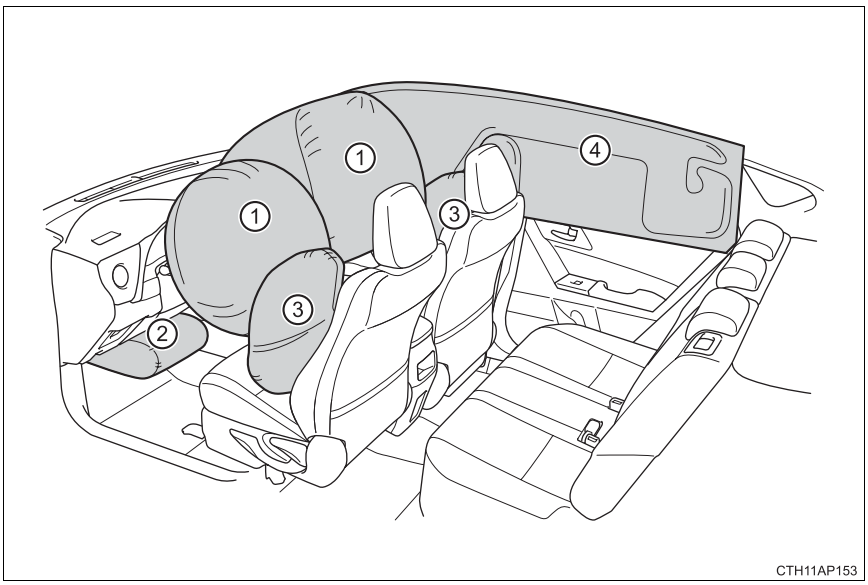
Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 39)

■ **Seat belt damage and wear**

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



◆ SRS front airbags

① SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

② SRS driver's knee airbag (if equipped)
Can help provide driver protection

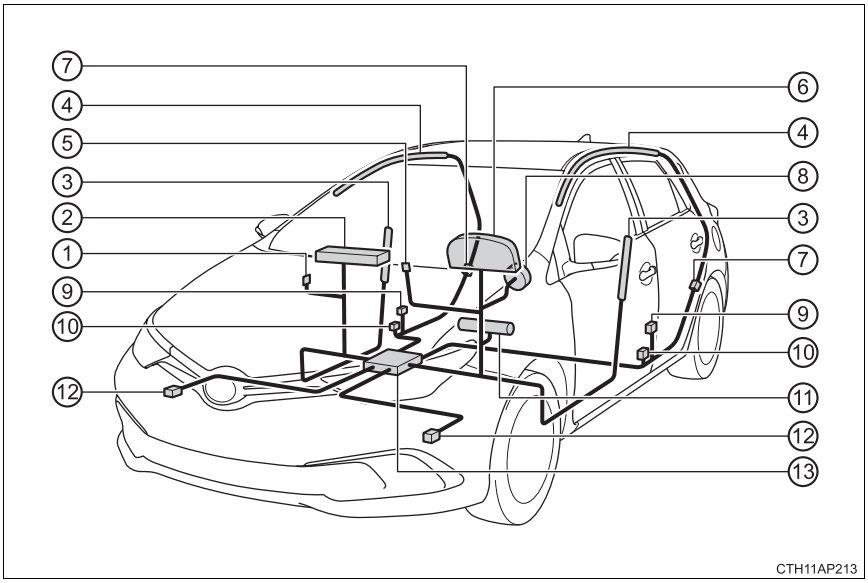
◆ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

③ SRS front side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

④ SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 43 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

SRS airbag system components



① Airbag manual on-off switch
② Front passenger airbag
③ Front side airbags
④ Curtain shield airbags
⑤ “PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator
⑥ SRS warning light
⑦ Side impact sensors (rear)
⑧ Driver airbag
⑨ Side impact sensors (front)
⑩ Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
⑪ Driver’s knee airbag (if equipped)
⑫ Front impact sensors
⑬ Airbag sensor assembly

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

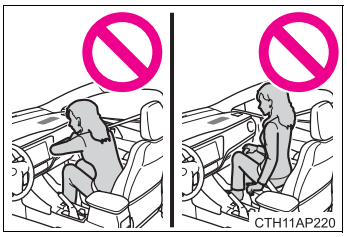
  • Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  • Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  • If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Toyota strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 55)

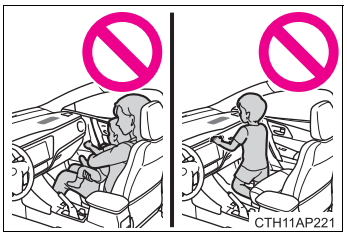
WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

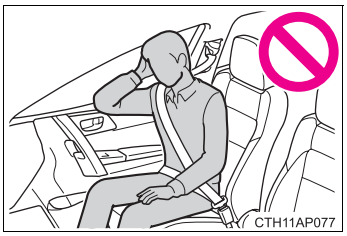
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



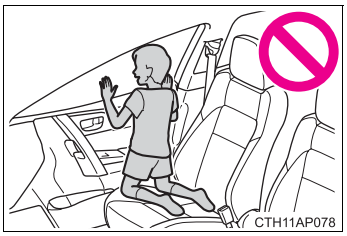
- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



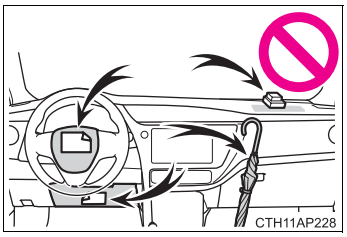
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



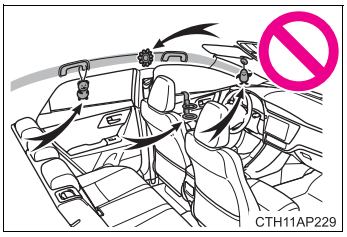
WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

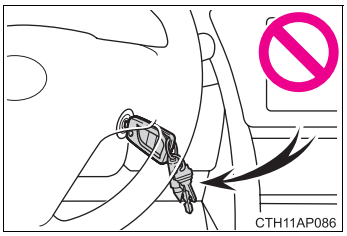
- Vehicles without an SRS driver's knee airbag: Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard or steering wheel pad.
  These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver and front passenger airbags deploy.
  Vehicles with an SRS driver's knee airbag: Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad, lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and driver's knee airbag deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side door glass, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip. (Except for the speed limit label →P. 554)



- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system and with a driver's knee airbag: Do not attach any heavy, sharp or hard objects such as keys and accessories to the key. The objects may restrict the SRS driver's knee airbag inflation or be thrust into the driver's seat area by the force of the deploying airbag, thus causing a danger.



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- Vehicles with an SRS driver's knee airbag: If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS driver's knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 47 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle’s suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 48 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pre-tensioners will activate.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

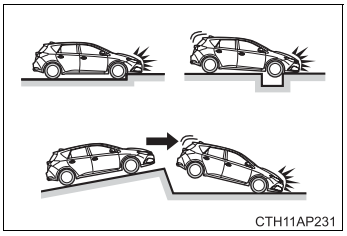
- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 49 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

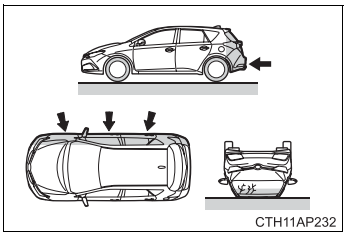
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling


CTH11AP231

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

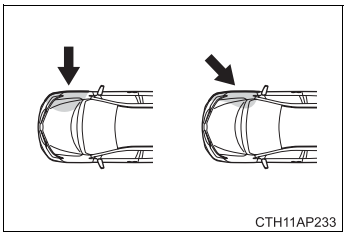
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


CTH11AP232

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

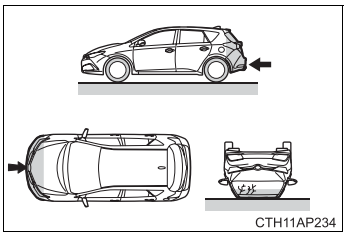
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle


CTH11AP233

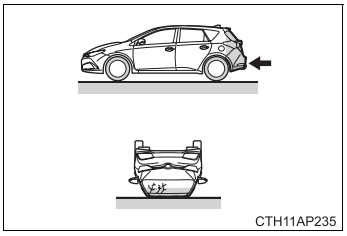
The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


CTH11AP234

The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

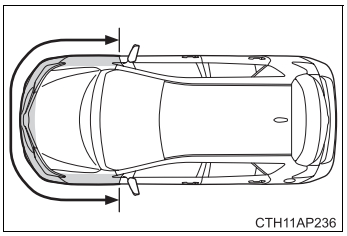
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


CTH11AP235

■When to contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

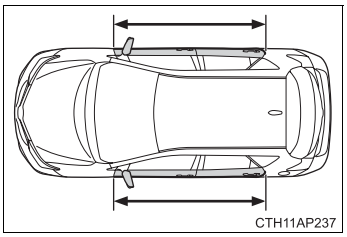
In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.

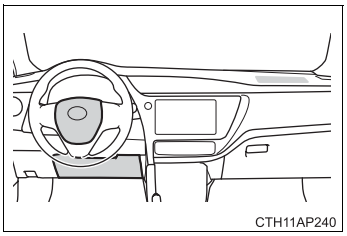

CTH11AP236

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 51 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

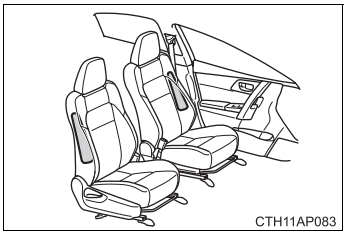
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.


CTH11AP237

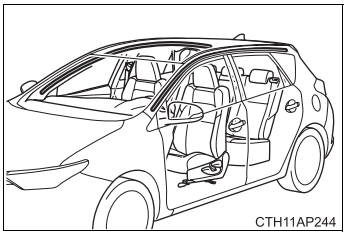
- Vehicles without an SRS driver's knee airbag: The pad section of the steering wheel or dashboard near the front passenger airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
  Vehicles with an SRS driver's knee airbag: The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CTH11AP240

- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CTH11AP083

- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CTH11AP244

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 52 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Airbag manual on-off system

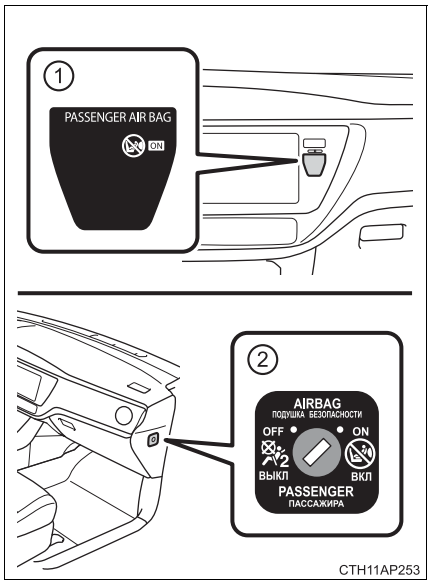
This system deactivates the front passenger airbag.
Only deactivate the airbag when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

① “PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: The “PASSENGER AIR BAG” and “ON” indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on, and about after 60 seconds they go off (only when the engine switch is in the “ON” position).

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: The “PASSENGER AIR BAG” and “ON” indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on, and about after 60 seconds they go off (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

② Airbag manual on-off switch

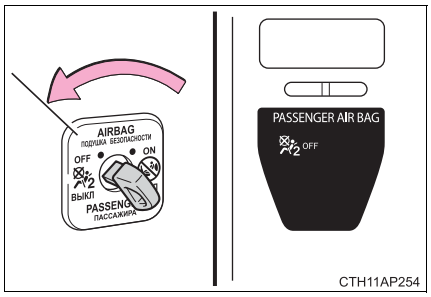


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 53 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Deactivating the front seat passenger airbag

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Insert the key into the cylinder and turn it to the “OFF” position.

The “OFF” indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in the “ON” position).



Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and turn it to the “OFF” position.

The “OFF” indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

“PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Neither “ON” nor “OFF” comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to “ON” or “OFF”.

WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to “OFF”.
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to “ON”.
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 54 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Safety information for children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally.
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats, etc.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 55 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Child restraint systems

Toyota strongly urges the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one on the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual.
  (→P. 64)
- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- Toyota recommends that you use a child restraint system which conforms to the regulation ECE No.44.

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the regulation ECE No.44:

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)

Group 0^+: Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)

Group I: 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)

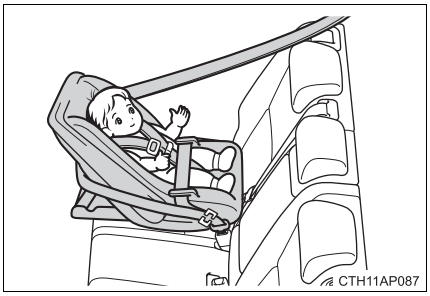
Group II: 15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.) (4 years - 7 years)

Group III: 22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.) (6 years - 12 years)

In this owner's manual, the following 3 types of popular child restraint systems that can be secured with the seat belts are explained:

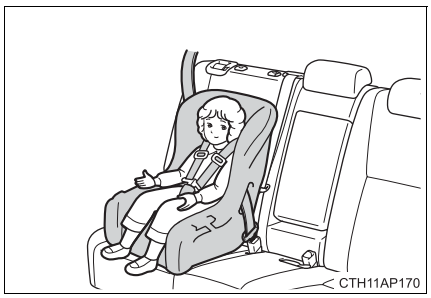
▶ Baby seat

Equal to Group 0 and 0^+ of ECE No.44



▶ Child seat

Equal to Group 0^+ and I of ECE No.44



▶ Junior seat

Equal to Group II and III of ECE No.44



Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Seating position / Mass groups	Front passenger seat		Rear seat	
	Airbag manual on-off switch			
	ON	OFF	Outboard	Center
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	X Never put	U*1 L1*1	U L1	X
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	X Never put	U*1 L1*1	U L1	X
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	Rear-facing — X Never put Forward-facing — UF*1	U*1	U*2	X
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)	UF*1	U*1	U*2 L2*2	X

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 58 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

U: Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system approved for the use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category child restraint system approved for the use in this mass group.

L1: Suitable for “TOYOTA G 0^+, BABY SAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM” (0 to 13 kg [0 to 28 lb.]) approved for the use in this mass group.

L2: Suitable for “TOYOTA KIDFIX” (15 to 36 kg [34 to 79 lb.]) approved for the use in this mass group.

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group.

*1: Adjust the front seatback to the most upright position. Move the front seat cushion to the fully rearward.

Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.

Vehicles with a vertical height adjustment lever: Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.

Follow these procedures

- For installing a baby seat with support base
  If the baby seat interferes with the seatback when latching the baby seat into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- For installing a forward-facing child seat
  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.
- For installing a junior seat
  If the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback to the most comfortable position.
  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

*2: Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint system which is different from the system mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer concerned and the seller of those seats.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 59 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (with ISOFIX rigid anchors)

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Mass groups	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions	Recommended Child Restraint Systems
			Rear outboard	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	X	-
		(1)	X	-
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	IL	“TOYOTA MINI”, “TOYOTA MIDI”
		(1)	X	-
0^+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	E	ISO/R1	IL	“TOYOTA MINI”, “TOYOTA MIDI”
	D	ISO/R2	IL	
	C	ISO/R3	IL	
		(1)	X	-
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	
	B	ISO/F2	IUF*, IL*	“TOYOTA MIDI”, “TOYOTA DUO+”
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF*, IL*	
	A	ISO/F3	IUF*, IL*	
		(1)	X	-
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)		(1)	X	-

(1) For the child restraint system which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G), for the applicable mass group, the car manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child restraint system(s) recommended for each position.

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the categories for “specific vehicles”, “restricted”, or “semi-universal”, approved for use in this mass group.

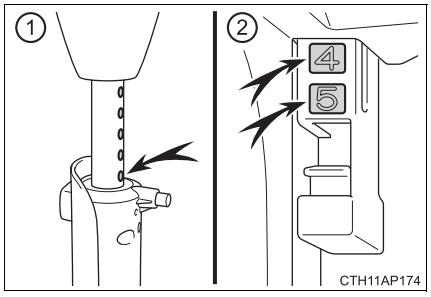
X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*: Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.

When using a “TOYOTA MINI” or “TOYOTA MIDI”, adjust the support leg and the ISOFIX connectors as follows:

① Lock the support leg where 5th hole can be seen.

② Lock the ISOFIX connectors where numbers 4 and 5 can be seen.



When using the right side seat for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center seat.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

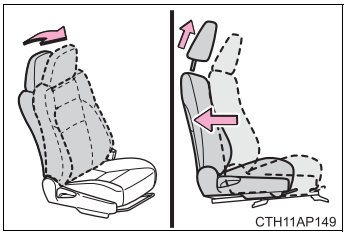
Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

■When installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat

When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The seatback to the most upright position.

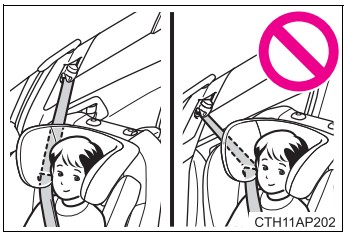
  If the child restraint system interferes with the seatback when latching the child restraint system into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.



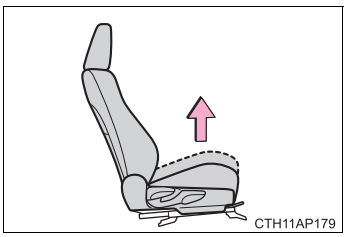
- Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.
- Move the seat as far back as possible.

  If the CRS cannot be installed properly, due to hitting part of the vehicle interior and so forth, adjust the position of the front seat and its seatback angle.

  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- Vehicles with a vertical height adjustment lever: Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.



■Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 38)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 62 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Using a child restraint system

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child. It may result in death or serious injury (in the event of sudden braking or an accident).

■Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Toyota strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 52)
  In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 63 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

When the child restraint system is not in use

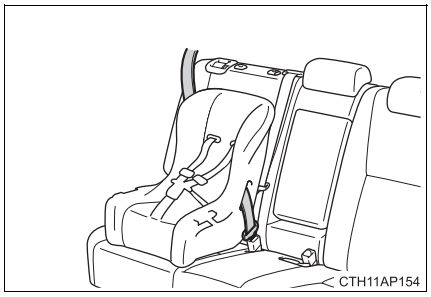
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. If a head restraint was removed when installing a child restraint system, always install the head restraint before driving. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 64 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Installing child restraints

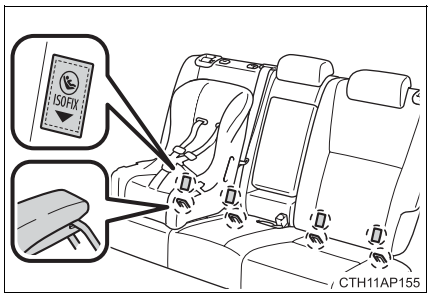
Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using a seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchors. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

Seat belts (An ELR belt requires a locking clip)



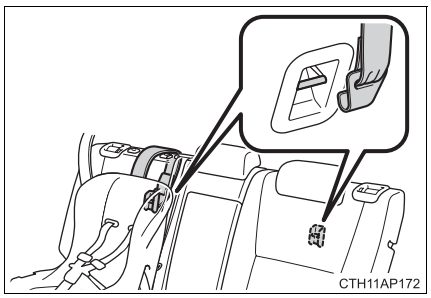
ISOFIX rigid anchors

Lower anchors are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Labels displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Anchor brackets (for top strap)

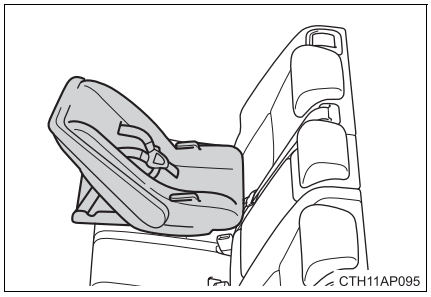
An anchor bracket is provided for each outer rear seat.



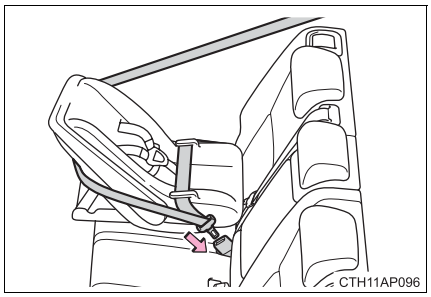
Installing child restraints using a seat belt

■ Rear-facing — Baby seat/child seat

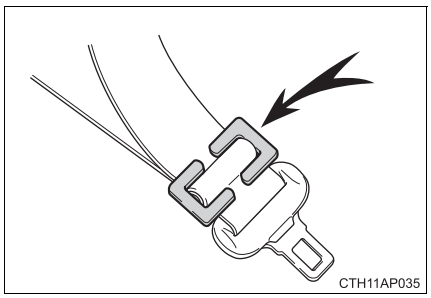
1 Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.



2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



3 Install a locking clip near the tab of the lap and shoulder belt by inserting the lap and shoulder webbing through the recesses of the locking clip. Buckle the belt again. If the belt has any slack, release the buckle and reinstall the locking clip.



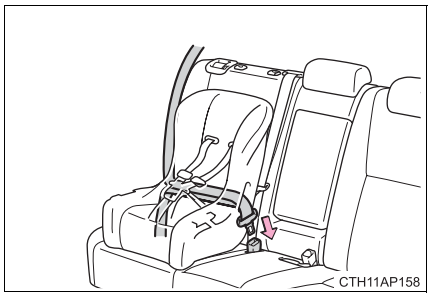
■ Forward-facing — Child seat

1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

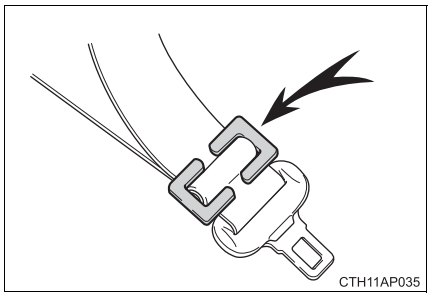
If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)



2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



3 Install a locking clip near the tab of the lap and shoulder belt by inserting the lap and shoulder webbing through the recesses of the locking clip. Buckle the belt again. If the belt has any slack, release the buckle and reinstall the locking clip.



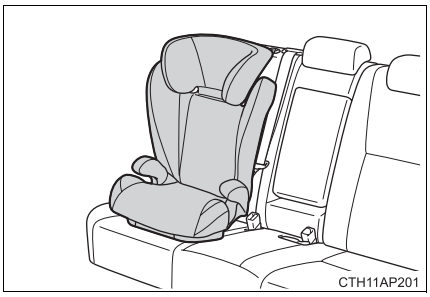
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 67 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Junior seat

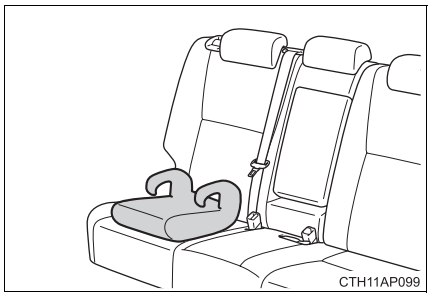
1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)

▶ High back type



▶ Booster type



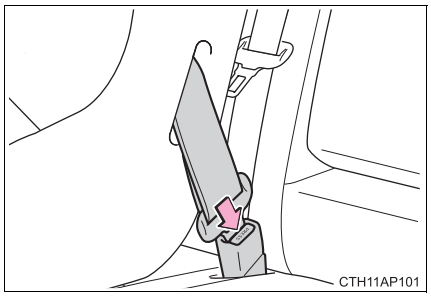
2 Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 38)

Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

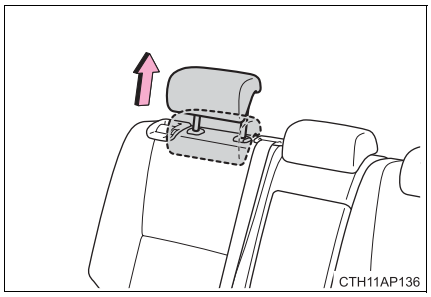


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 69 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchors

1 Adjust the head restraint to the uppermost position.

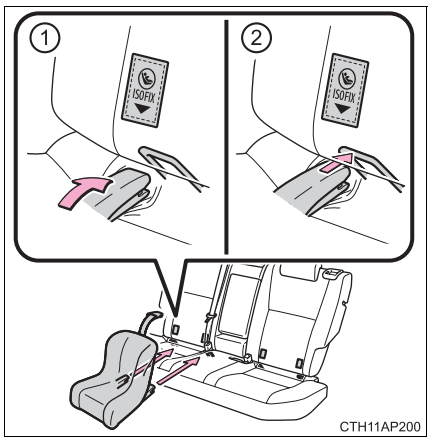
If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)



2 If the child restraint has a top strap, remove the luggage cover. (→P. 417)

3 Latch the buckles onto the exclusive fixing bars.

Insert the ISOFIX connectors into the gap until they latch onto the exclusive fixing bars.



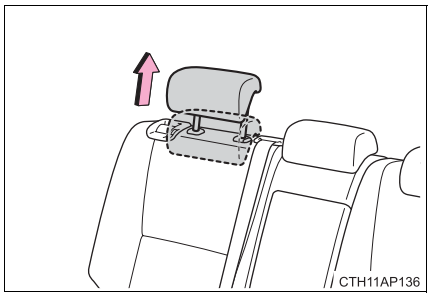
If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchor bracket.

Run the top strap under the head restraint.

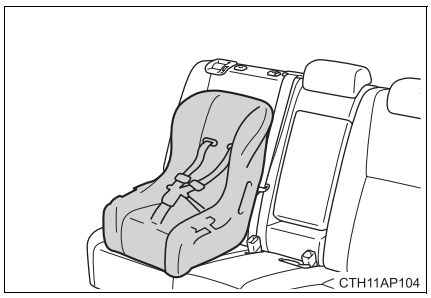
Child restraint systems with a top strap

1 Adjust the head restraint to the uppermost position.

If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)



2 Secure the child restraint system using the seat belt or ISO-FIX rigid anchors.

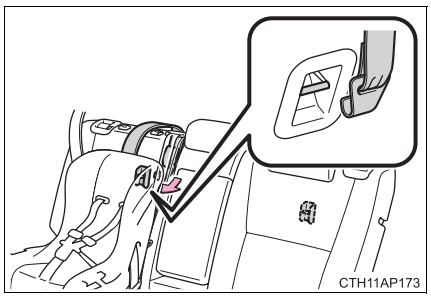


3 Remove the luggage cover. (→P. 417)

4 Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Run the top strap under the head restraint.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.



When installing a child restraint system

You need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional:

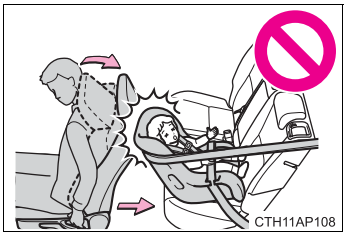
Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

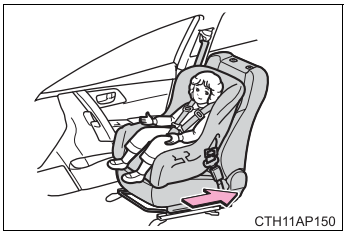
When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.


CTH11AP108

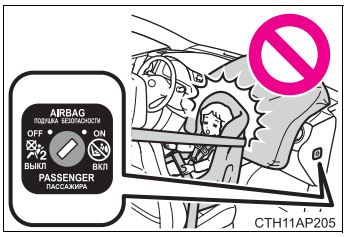
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable.
- When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and remove the head restraint.
  Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).


CTH11AP150

WARNING

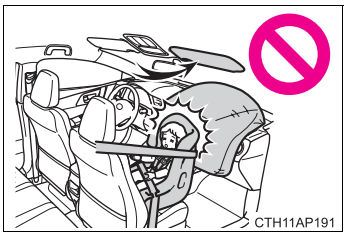
When installing a child restraint system

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 52)
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



CTH11AP205

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat.
  Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.


CTH11AP191



CTN17AG588

WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

When the child restraint system is not in use

If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. If a head restraint was removed when installing a child restraint system, always install the head restraint before driving. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ **Important points while driving**

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **When parking**

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine on for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ **Exhaust pipe**

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 75 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

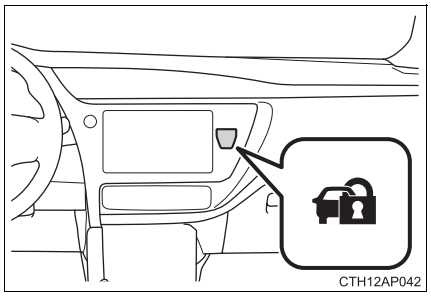
Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:

The indicator light flashes after the key has been removed from the engine switch to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the registered key has been inserted into the engine switch to indicate that the system has been canceled.



Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 76 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

■ Certification for the engine immobilizer system

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

Hereby, TRCZ s.r.o., declares that this RI-43BTY is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. vakuuttaa täten että RI-43BTY tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TRCZ s.r.o. dat het toestel RI-43BTY in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TRCZ s.r.o. déclare que l'appareil RI-43BTY est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TRCZ s.r.o. att denna RI-43BTY står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr RI-43BTY overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TRCZ s.r.o. dass sich das Gerät RI-43BTY in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TRCZ s.r.o. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ RI-43BTY ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TRCZ s.r.o. dichiara che questo RI-43BTY è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TRCZ s.r.o. declara que el RI-43BTY cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TRCZ s.r.o. declara que este RI-43BTY está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TRCZ s.r.o., jiddikjara li dan RI-43BTY jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TRCZ s.r.o. seadme RI-43BTY vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TRCZ s.r.o. nyilatkozom, hogy a RI-43BTY megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TRCZ s.r.o. týmto vyhlasuje, že RI-43BTY spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TRCZ s.r.o. tímto prohlašuje, že tento RI-43BTY je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

TRCZ s.r.o. izjavlja, da je ta RI-43BTY v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TRCZ s.r.o. deklaruoja, kad šis RI-43BTY atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TRCZ s.r.o. deklarē, ka RI-43BTY atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TRCZ s.r.o. oświadcza, że RI-43BTY jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TRCZ s.r.o. yfir því að RI-43BTY er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved at utstyret RI-43BTY er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TRCZ s.r.o., декларира, че RI-43BTY е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TRCZ s.r.o., declară că aparatul RI-43BTY este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da ovaj RI-43BTY je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TRCZ s.r.o., deklaroj qe ky RI-43BTY eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da je RI-43BTY u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., deklariše da je RI-43BTY u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:

http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc

CE

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: TMIMB-3
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: February 25, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 80 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMIMB-3 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMIMB-3 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMIMB-3 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMIMB-3 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMIMB-3 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMIMB-3 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMIMB-3 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMIMB-3 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMIMB-3 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMIMB-3 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMIMB-3 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMIMB-3 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMIMB-3 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMIMB-3 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMIMB-3 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMIMB-3 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMIMB-3 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMIMB-3 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMIMB-3 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMIMB-3 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMIMB-3 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMIMB-3 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMIMB-3 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMIMB-3 este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMIMB-3 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMIMB-3 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMIMB-3 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMIMB-3 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 82 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 83 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Alarm*

The alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

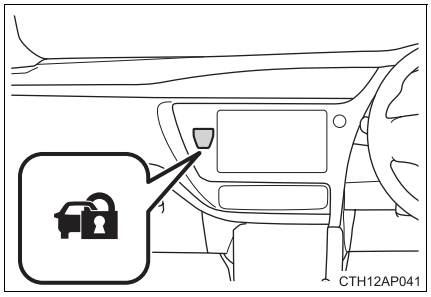
The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.

Setting the alarm system

Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 84 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

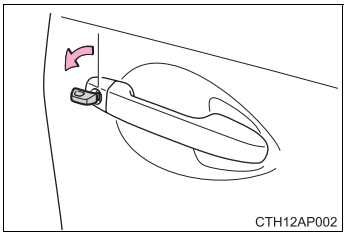
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 85 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

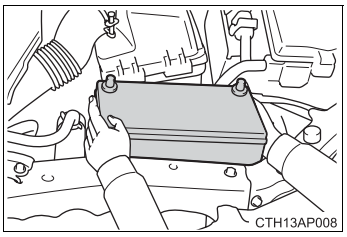
- The doors are unlocked using the key.


CTH12AP002

- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or the hood.


CTH12AP003

- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P. 576)


CTH13AP008

Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

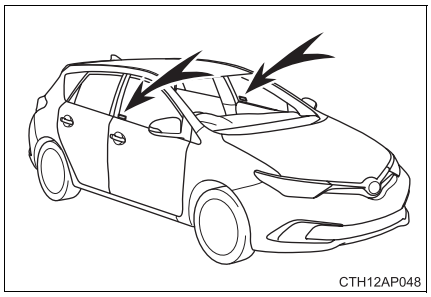
Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 86 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Double locking system (right-hand drive vehicles only)

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the window glass of both front doors.



Setting the double locking system

1 Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

2 Using the entry function (if equipped):
Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.
Using the wireless remote control:
Press twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function (if equipped): Hold the outside door handle.
Using the wireless remote control: Press .

WARNING

■ Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 87 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Instrument cluster 2

2. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators 88
Gauges and meters 94
Multi-information display (3-ring meter).....97
Multi-information display (2-ring meter).....102
Fuel consumption information.....113

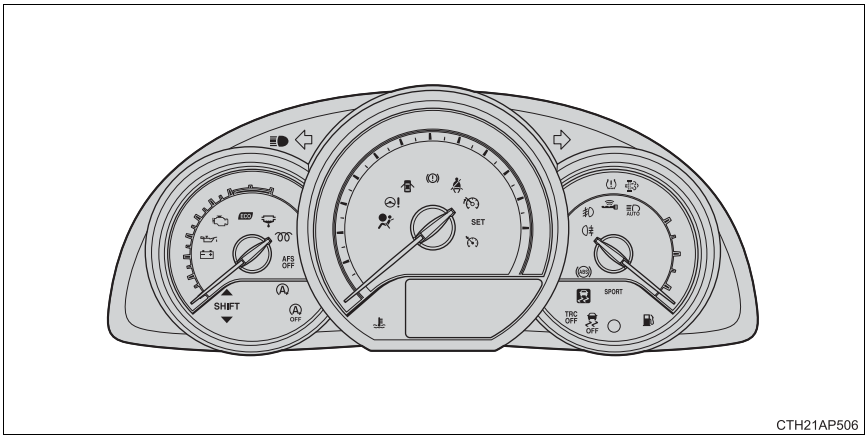
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 88 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

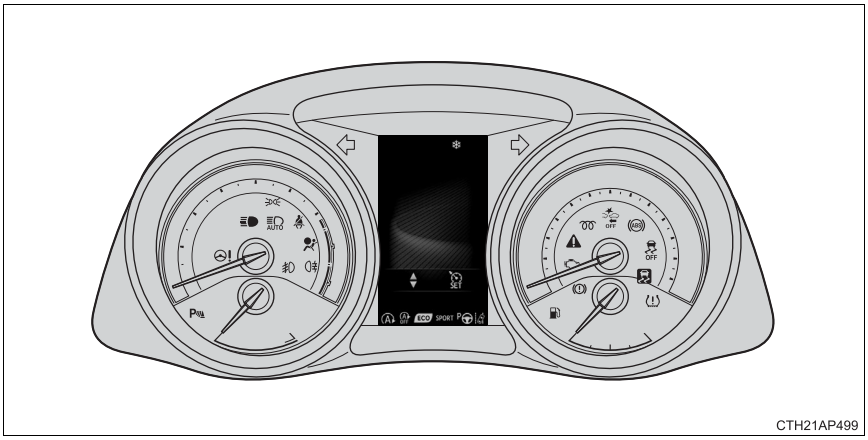
For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.

▶ 3-ring meter



CTH21AP506

▶ 2-ring meter



CTH21AP499

The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 89 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.

*1  Brake system warning light (→P. 519)

*1  (if equipped) Charging system warning light (→P. 519)

*1  (if equipped) Low engine oil pressure warning light (→P. 519)

*1  (if equipped) High engine coolant temperature warning light (→P. 519)

*1  Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 520)

*1  SRS warning light (→P. 520)

*1  ABS warning light (→P. 520)

*1  Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 520)

 (Yellow) (if equipped) Cruise control indicator (→P. 520)

 (Yellow) (if equipped) Speed limiter indicator (→P. 520)

*1  Slip indicator (→P. 521)

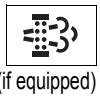
*1, 2  (if equipped) PCS warning light (→P. 521)

*1, 2  (if equipped) Stop & Start cancel indicator (→P. 521)

*1  (if equipped) Fuel filter warning light (→P. 522)

*1  (if equipped) Low engine oil level warning light (→P. 522)

*1  (if equipped) Engine oil change reminder light (→P. 522)

*1  (if equipped) DPF system warning light (→P. 522)

 (if equipped) Open door warning light (→P. 523)

*3



(Green)
(if equipped)

Smart entry & start system indicator (→P. 203)



(Yellow)
(if equipped)

Smart entry & start system indicator (→P. 523)



Low fuel level warning light (→P. 523)



Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P. 523)

*4



(if equipped)

Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (→P. 523)

*1



(if equipped)

Tire pressure warning light (→P. 524)

*1



(if equipped)

Master warning light (→P. 524)

*1: These lights, except those shown on the multi-information display, turn on when the engine switch is turned to the "ON" position (vehicles without a smart entry & start system) or IGNITION ON mode (vehicles with a smart entry & start system) to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

*3: The light flashes quickly to indicate that the steering lock has not been released.

*4: This light illuminates on the center panel.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 91 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 221)


(if equipped)
Tail light indicator (→P. 223)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 223)

*1

(if equipped)
Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 258)


(if equipped)
Front fog light indicator (→P. 229)


Rear fog light indicator (→P. 229)


(Green)
(if equipped)
Cruise control indicator (→P. 280)


(if equipped)
Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P. 280)


(Green)
(if equipped)
Speed limiter indicator (→P. 285)


(if equipped)
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) indicator (→P. 252)


(if equipped)
Toyota parking assist-sensor indicator (→P. 289)


(if equipped)
Simple-IPA indicator (→P. 296)

*1

(if equipped)
"TRC OFF" indicator (→P. 314)

*1, 2

Slip indicator (→P. 314)

*1

VSC OFF indicator (→P. 314)

*1

(if equipped)
PCS warning light (→P. 244)

*1

(if equipped)
Stop & Start indicator (→P. 267)

*1

(if equipped)
Stop & Start cancel indicator (→P. 267)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 92 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

*1, 3


(if equipped)

Gear Shift Indicator (→P. 219)

*4

(if equipped)

Gear Shift Indicator (→P. 219)

*1, 5


(if equipped)

Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 100, 110)

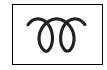
*6

Security indicator (→P. 75, 83)



(if equipped)

“SPORT” indicator (→P. 214)


(if equipped)

Engine preheating indicator (→P. 199, 203)


(Green)
(if equipped)

Smart entry & start system indicator (→P. 203)

*7

(if equipped)

Low outside temperature indicator (→P. 94)

*1, 6


“PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator (→P. 52)

*1: These lights, except those shown on the multi-information display, turn on when the engine switch is turned to the “ON” position (vehicles without a smart entry & start system) or IGNITION ON mode (vehicles with a smart entry & start system) to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

*4: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

*5: The light does not turn on when the system is disabled.

*6: This light illuminates on the center panel.

*7: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 93 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

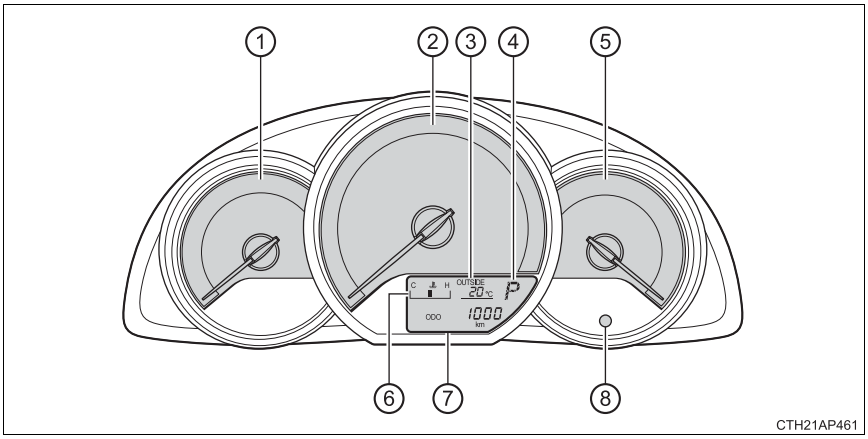
WARNING

■If a safety system warning light does not come on

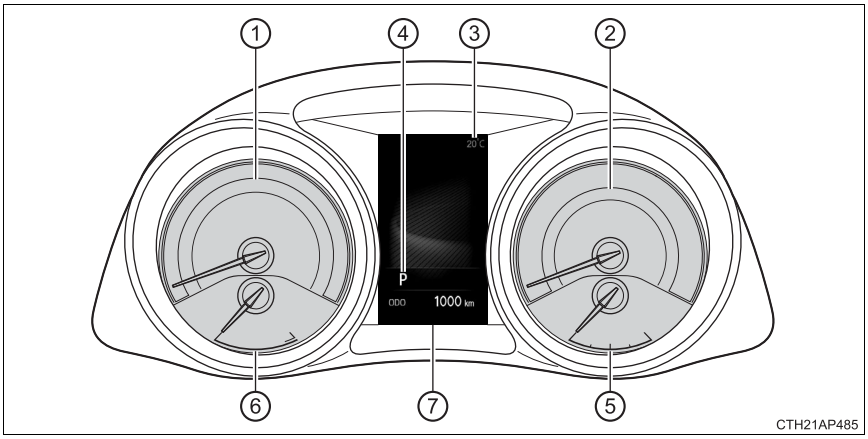
Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

Gauges and meters

▶ 3-ring meter



▶ 2-ring meter



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 95 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

① Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

② Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

③ Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F).

2-ring meter: Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

④ Shift position and gear position indicator (if equipped)

→P. 213

⑤ Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

⑥ Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

3-ring meter (vehicles with a Multidrive): When the average fuel economy is displayed, the Eco Driving Indicator zone display (→P. 100) will be displayed instead of the engine coolant temperature gauge.

⑦ Multi-information display

→P. 97, 102

⑧ Display change switch

Changes the item displayed on the multi-information display.
The “DISP” switch on the steering wheel can also be used to change the item displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in the “ON” position.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Outside temperature display**

● In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 15 km/h [9 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

● If “– –” is displayed continuously, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

● Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.

● In the following situations, the engine may be overheating. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 578)

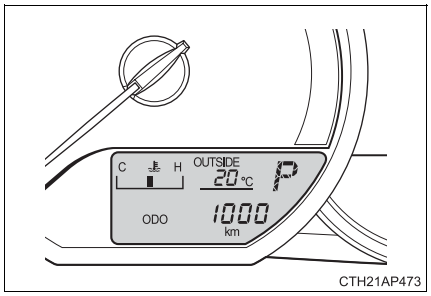
- 3-ring meter: The high engine coolant temperature warning light comes on
- 2-ring meter: The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 97 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Multi-information display (3-ring meter)

Display content

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, such as the current outside temperature.



- Engine coolant temperature gauge (→P. 94)
- Outside temperature (→P. 94)
- Shift position and gear position indicator (if equipped) (→P. 213)
- Trip information/Drive information/Meter light control (→P. 98)

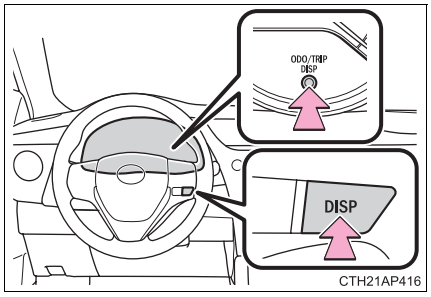
  Displays the following items:
  - Odometer
  - Trip meter
  - Stop & Start system operation time (if equipped)
  - Stop & Start system total operation time (if equipped)
  - Average fuel consumption
  - Driving range
  - Meter light control
- Eco Driving Indicator Light customization (if equipped) (→P. 100)

Trip information/Drive information/Meter light control

◆ Changing the display

To change the displayed item, press the display change switch or the “DISP” switch.

Each time the switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed.



◆ Display items

■ Odometer

“ ODO ” will be displayed.

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

■ Trip meter A/trip meter B

“TRIP A ”/“ TRIP B ” will be displayed.

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

To reset, display the desired trip meter and press and hold the display change switch or the “DISP” switch.

■ Stop & Start system operation time (if equipped)

“ ECO ” will be displayed.

Displays the amount of time the engine was stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system during the current trip (from when the engine was started until it is turned off).

■ Stop & Start system total operation time (if equipped)

“ ECO ODO ” will be displayed.

Displays the total amount of time that the engine has been stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system since the meter was last reset.

To reset, display the Stop & Start system total operation time and press and hold the display change switch or the “DISP” switch.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 99 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Average fuel consumption

“AVG.” will be displayed.

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

- To reset, display the average fuel consumption and press and hold the display change switch or the “DISP” switch.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: When the display is changed to the average fuel economy display, the Eco Driving Indicator zone display (→P. 100) will be displayed instead of the engine coolant temperature gauge.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ Driving range

“RANGE” will be displayed.

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
- When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

■ Meter light control display

Displays the meter light control display.

- The meter light control display can only be displayed when the tail lights are on.
- The brightness of the meters can only be adjusted when the tail lights are on.
- To adjust the brightness, display the meter light control display and press and hold the display change switch or the “DISP” switch.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 100 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

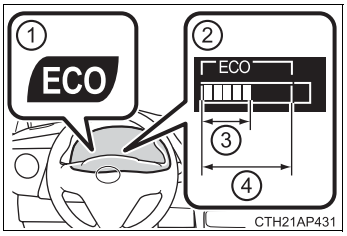
Eco Driving Indicator Light customization (if equipped)

Eco Driving Indicator Light can be activated or deactivated by pressing the display change switch on the meter or the “DISP” switch on the steering wheel when the Eco Driving Indicator Light customization display is displayed.

To change the Eco Driving Indicator Light customization display, display the odometer and press and hold the display change switch or the “DISP” switch until the display changes.

After customization, press the switch for more than 2 seconds to return to the odometer.

■ Eco Driving Indicator (if equipped)



① Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

② Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

③ Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display blinks and the Eco Driving Indicator light will turn off.

④ Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated.
- Sport mode is selected.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 101 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Brightness of the meters

When the tail lights are turned on, the brightness will be reduced slightly unless the meters are set to the maximum brightness level.

When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The following information data will be reset:

- Average fuel consumption
- Driving range

Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

⚠ WARNING

Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

The display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the display. At extremely low temperatures, the display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to down-shift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

Cautions during setting up the display

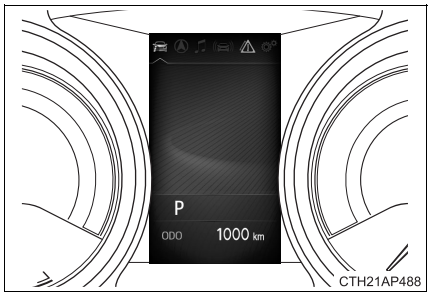
As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 102 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Multi-information display (2-ring meter)

Display content

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, such as the current outside temperature. The multi-information display can also be used to change the display settings and other settings.



- Outside temperature (→P. 94)
- Shift position and gear position indicator (if equipped) (→P. 213)
- Pop-up display

  In some situations a warning message or the operation status of a system will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display.

  On some models: Some pop-up displays can be set on/off. (→P. 108)
- Trip information/Distance until next engine oil change (→P. 104)

  Displays the following items:
  - Odometer
  - Trip meter
  - Distance until next engine oil change (if equipped)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 103 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● Menu icons (→P. 105)

Select a menu icon to display its content.

To display the menu icons, press the ❮ or ❯ switch on the steering wheel.

 Drive information (→P. 106)

Select to display various drive data.

 Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.
- Route guidance
- Compass display (north-up display/heading-up display)

 Audio system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the meter using the meter control switches.

 Driving assist system information (if equipped)

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) (→P. 252)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (→P. 262)

 Warning message display (→P. 531)

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected.

 Settings display (→P. 108)

Select to change the meter display settings and other settings.

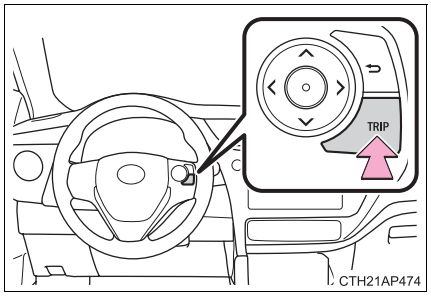
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 104 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Trip information/Distance until next engine oil change

◆ Changing the display

To change the displayed item, press the “TRIP” switch.

Each time the switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed.



◆ Display items

■ Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

■ Trip meter A/trip meter B

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

To reset, display the desired trip meter and press and hold the “TRIP” switch.

■ Distance until next engine oil change (if equipped)

Displays the distance the vehicle can be driven until an oil change is necessary.

The distance until the next engine oil change will also be displayed in the following situations:

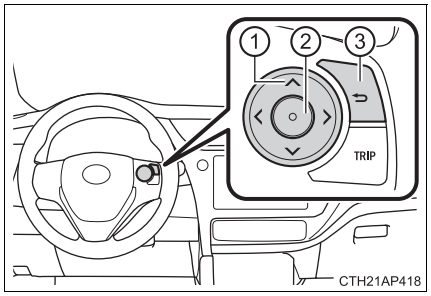
- When the engine switch is turned to the “ON” position (vehicles without a smart entry & start system) or IGNITION ON mode (vehicles with a smart entry & start system).
- When a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.
- Resetting: →P. 454

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 105 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Menu icons

◆ Operating the meter control switches

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



① ‹ › : Display the menu icons/select menu icons

^ v : Change displayed item, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor up/down

② Press: Enter/Set

Press and hold: Reset

③ Return to the previous screen

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 106 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

◆ Drive information

■ Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3

Displays drive information such as the following:

- Drive information 1
  - Current fuel consumption (gauge display)
  - Average fuel economy (after reset)
- Drive information 2
  - Distance (driving range)
  - Average vehicle speed (after reset)
- Drive information 3 (if equipped)
  - Stop & Start system operation time (after start)
  - Stop & Start system operation time (after reset)

Displayed items (listed below) can be changed on the settings display. (→P. 108)

Item		Content
	Current fuel consumption (gauge display)	Displays the current rate of fuel consumption on a gauge display
	Current fuel consumption (numeric display)	Displays the current rate of fuel consumption as a number
	Average fuel economy (after reset)	Displays average fuel consumption since display reset*2, 3
	Average fuel economy (after start)	Displays average fuel consumption since engine start*3
	Average fuel economy (after refuel)	Displays average fuel consumption since refuel*3, 4
	Stop & Start system operation time (after reset) *1	Displays the total amount of time the engine has been stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system since the system was last reset*2
	Stop & Start system operation time (after start)*1	Displays the amount of time the engine has been stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system since the engine was started

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 107 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Item		Content
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)	Displays average vehicle speed since display reset*2
	Average vehicle speed (after start)	Displays average vehicle speed since engine start
	Elapsed time (after reset)	Displays elapsed time since display reset*2
	Elapsed time (after start)	Displays elapsed time since engine start
	Distance (driving range)	Displays driving range with remaining fuel*4, 5
	Distance (after start)	Displays drive distance since vehicle start
	Blank	No item

*1: If equipped

*2: Values that can be reset will be displayed with a circle (●) in the upper right corner.
To reset, display the desired item and press and hold ⊙ switch. If both displayed items are resettable, a reset selection screen will appear.

*3: Use the displayed fuel consumption as a reference.

*4: When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

*5: This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

■ Eco Driving Indicator (if equipped)

→P. 110

■ Digital speedometer

Displays vehicle speed as a number.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 108 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

◆ Settings display

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert) warning sensitivity (if equipped)

LDA warning sensitivity can be set to 2 different levels.

■ Toyota parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

Select to activate/deactivate the Toyota parking assist-sensor system.

■ RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped)

Select to activate/deactivate the RSA system.

■ Meter light control

Select to adjust the brightness of the meters when in night mode*.

*: Night mode: →P. 111

■ Other settings

Select to change the following settings:

- RSA (Road Sign Assist) setting (if equipped)
  - Notification method (excess speed/other warnings)
    Select to change the notification method of the following warnings to no notification/display only/display and buzzer.
    Excess speed warning:
    Warns the driver if the vehicle exceeds the speed displayed on the speed limit sign on the multi-information display.
    Other warnings:
    Warns the driver if the system determines that the vehicle is overtaking when a no overtaking sign is displayed on the multi-information display.
  - Excess speed notification level
    Select to set the speed threshold over which the excess speed warning starts to operate when a speed limit sign is displayed on the multi-information display.
- Stop & Start system setting (if equipped)

  The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the “A/C” switch of the air conditioning system is on can be set to 2 different levels.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 109 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● Units

Select to change the units of measure displayed on the multi-information display.

● ECO Eco Driving Indicator Light (if equipped)

Select to activate/deactivate the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

● Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3

Select to select up to 2 items that will be displayed on the Drive information 1 screen, Drive information 2 screen and Drive information 3 screen (if equipped) respectively. (→P. 106)

● Pop-up display

Select to set the following pop-up displays on/off.

- Incoming call display of the hands-free phone system (if equipped)
- Route guidance display of the navigation system-linked system (if equipped)
- Stop & Start system (if equipped)

● Initialization

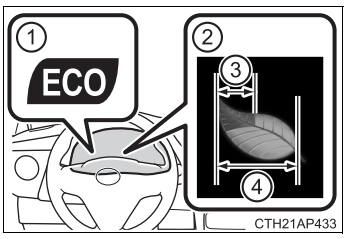
Select to reset the meter display settings. (→P. 609)

■ **Language**

Select to change the language on the display.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 110 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Eco Driving Indicator (if equipped)**



① Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

② Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

③ Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
The number of green segments displayed on the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display decreases/increases depending on the acceleration.
If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, all of the green segments will disappear and the Eco Driving Indicator light will turn off.

④ Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated.
- Sport mode is selected.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

■ **Stop & Start system information pop-up display (if equipped)**

In some situations the following Stop & Start system information will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display:

- Current Stop & Start system operation time
- Stop & Start operational status messages (→P. 275)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 111 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Brightness of the meters (day mode and night mode)**

- The brightness of the meters is changed between day mode and night mode.

  ▶ Vehicles without automatic light control system

  • Day mode: When the tail lights are off
  • Night mode: When the tail lights are on

  ▶ Vehicles with automatic light control system

  • Day mode: When the tail lights are off or when the tail lights are on but the surrounding area is bright
  • Night mode: When the tail lights are on and the surrounding area is dark
- When in night mode, the brightness will be reduced slightly unless the meters are set to the maximum brightness level.

■ **Suspension of the settings display**

- While driving, the multi-information display cannot be changed to setting mode. Before changing the settings, stop the vehicle in a safe place.
- In the following situations, operation of some of the settings display may be temporarily suspended.
  • When a warning message appears on the multi-information display
  • When the vehicle begins to move

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals**

The drive information data* will be reset.

*: Except Stop & Start system operation time

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ **Ending display**

When the engine switch is turned off, the following information about the current trip will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display.

- Elapsed time (after start)
- Distance (after start)
- Average fuel economy (after start)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 112 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

■The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to down-shift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

■Cautions during setting up the display

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■While setting up the display

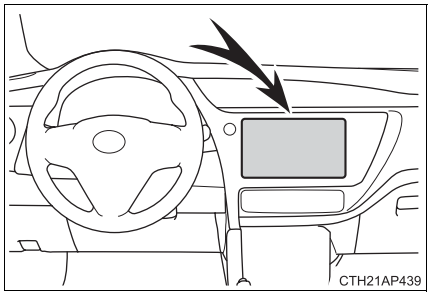
To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 113 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Fuel consumption information*

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the navigation/multimedia system.

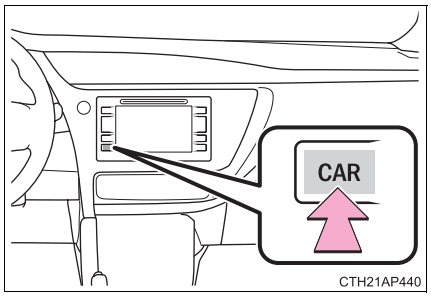
Navigation/multimedia system



*: If equipped

Trip information

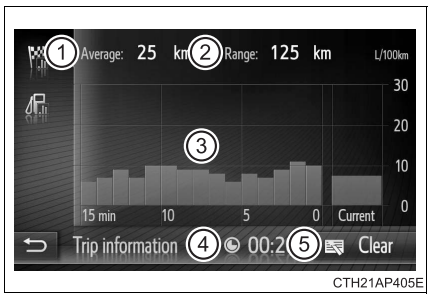
1 Press the “CAR” button on the navigation/multimedia system.



CTH21AP440

2 Select “Trip information”.

■ Trip information screen



CTH21AP405E

① Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

② Cruising range (→P. 115)

③ Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

④ Elapsed time since the engine was started.

⑤ Resetting the consumption data

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:

Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to the “ON” position. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:

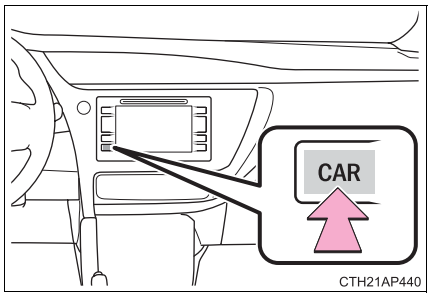
Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 115 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Past record

1 Press the “CAR” button on the navigation/multimedia system.



CTH21AP440

2 Select “Past record”.

■ **Past record screen**

① Best recorded fuel consumption

② Previous fuel consumption record

③ Average fuel consumption

④ Updating the average fuel consumption data

⑤ Resetting the past record data



CTH21AP406E

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only.

■ **Updating the past record data**

Update the average fuel consumption by selecting “Update” to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting “Clear”.

■ **Cruising range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 117 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Operation of each component 3

3-1. Key information
Keys.....118
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors.....130
Back door.....136
Smart entry & start system 141
3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats.....157
Rear seats 159
Head restraints 161
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel.....163
Inside rear view mirror 165
Outside rear view mirrors 167
3-5. Opening and closing the windows
Power windows.....170

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 118 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Keys

The keys

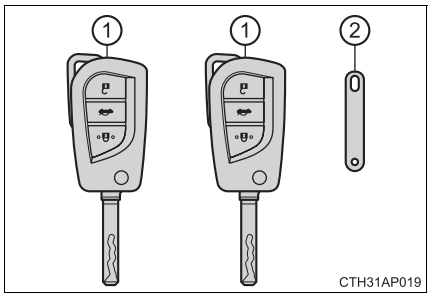
The following keys are provided with the vehicle.

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system (type A)

① Keys

Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 119)

② Key number plate



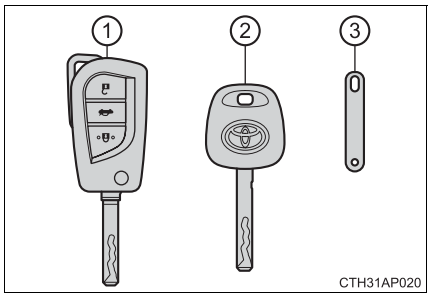
▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system (type B)

① Key (with a wireless remote control function)

Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 119)

② Key (without a wireless remote control function)

③ Key number plate



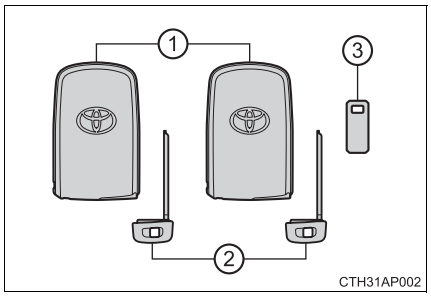
▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

① Electronic keys

- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 141)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 119)

② Mechanical keys

③ Key number plate

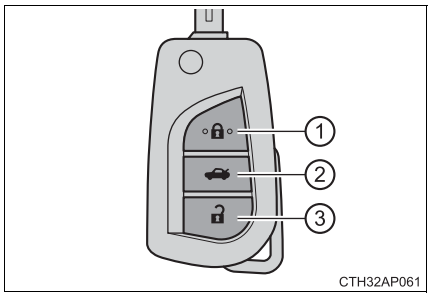


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 119 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Wireless remote control

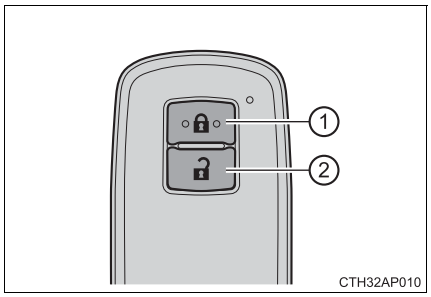
▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

① Locks all the doors (→P. 130)
② Unlocks the back door (→P. 136)
③ Unlocks all the doors (→P. 130)



▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

① Locks all the doors (→P. 130)
② Unlocks all the doors (→P. 130)



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 120 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

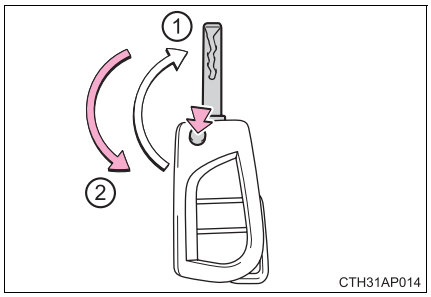
Using the key (vehicles without a smart entry & start system)

① Releasing

To release the key, press the button.

② Folding

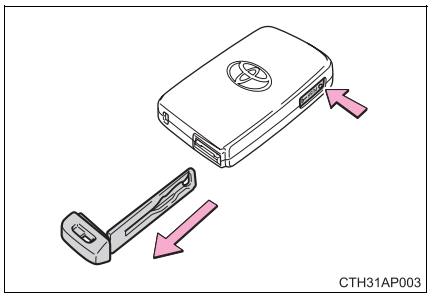
To stow the key, press the button then fold the key.



Using the mechanical key (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and reattempt to insert it.



After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 569)

If you lose your keys

New genuine keys can be made by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional using the other key (vehicles without a smart entry & start system) or mechanical key (vehicles with a smart entry & start system) and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 121 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **When riding in an aircraft**

When bringing a key with wireless remote control function onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying the key in your bag, etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

The wireless remote control function may not operate normally in the following situations:

- When the wireless key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, radio station, electric power plant, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone or other wireless communication devices
- When multiple wireless keys are in the vicinity
- When the wireless key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object
- When a wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When the wireless key has been left near an electrical appliance such as a personal computer
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

→P. 145

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 122 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Key battery depletion**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

If the wireless remote control function does not operate, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 483)

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 525)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 483)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers

■ **When the key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 483

■ **Confirmation of the registered key number (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)**

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

■ **If a wrong key is used (except left-hand drive vehicles without a smart entry & start system)**

The key cylinder rotates freely, isolated from the internal mechanism.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. wireless remote control system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 608)

■ **Certification for the wireless remote control**

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

→P. 148

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Systems

Declaration of Conformity

in accordance with 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

We,

Manufacturer: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance
Address: 76, rue Auguste Perret
F-94046 Créteil - Cedex
France

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:
Product name: RF Transmitter (Jack Knife Key)
Model No.: **A03TAA**

to which this declaration relates, complies with the essential protection requirements of R&TTE Directive (1999/5/ EC).
The product is compliant with the following standards and/or normative documents:

- Efficient use of radio spectrum:	EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02), EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)
- Electromagnetic compatibility:	EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04), EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)
- Electrical Safety:	EN 60950-1: 2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010

CE marking: CE 0682

Créteil, October the 21th of 2014

Jérôme Hugot
Certification & Regulation

VALEO COMFORT AND DRIVING ASSISTANCE - 76 Rue Auguste Perret - ZI Europarc - 94046 Créteil Cedex - France
Tel. +33 (0)1 48 84 54 00 - Fax +33 (0)1 48 84 54 53
S.A.S. au capital de 13 387 965 Euros – 438 809 667 RCS Créteil
www.valeo.com

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 124 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Česky [Czech]	Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance tímto prohlašuje, že tento A03TAA je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Hrvatski [Croatian]	Ovime, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance izjavljuje da je model A03TAA je u skladu sa osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Valeo Sécurité Habitacle erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr A03TAA overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Valeo Sécurité Habitacle , dass sich das Model A03TAA in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Valeo Sécurité Habitacle seadme A03TAA vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Valeo Sécurité Habitacle declares that the model A03TAA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Valeo Sécurité Habitacle declara que A03TAA cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρουσα Valeo Sécurité Habitacle δηλωνει οτι A03TAA συμμορφωνεται προσ τισ ουσιωδεισ απαιτησεισ και τισ λουτεσ σχετικεσ διαταξεισ τησ οδηγιασ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Valeo Sécurité Habitacle déclare que les appareils modèle A03TAA sont conformes aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Valeo Sécurité Habitacle dichiara che questo A03TAA è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Valeo Sécurité Habitacle deklarē, ka A03TAA atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Valeo Sécurité Habitacle deklaruoja, kad šis A03TAA atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Valeo Sécurité Habitacle dat het toestel A03TAA in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Valeo Sécurité Habitacle , jiddikjara li dan A03TAA jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott, Valeo Sécurité Habitacle nyilatkozom, hogy a A03TAA megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Valeo Sécurité Habitacle oświadcza, że A03TAA jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle declara que este A03TAA está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle izjavlja, da je ta A03TAA v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle týmto vyhlasuje, že A03TAA spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle vakuuttaa täten että A03TAA tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Valeo Sécurité Habitacle att denna A03TAA står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Valeo Sécurité Habitacle yfir því að A03TAA er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle erklærer herved at utstyret A03TAA er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Crnogorski jezik [Montenegrin]	Ovime, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance izjavljuje da je model A03TAA je u skladu sa osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
српски [Serbian]	Овиме, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance изјављује да је A03TAA модел је у складу са основним захтевима и другим релевантним одредбама Директиве 1999/5/ЕЦ.

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Systems

Declaration of Conformity

in accordance with 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

We,

Manufacturer: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance
Address: 76, rue Auguste Perret
F-94046 Créteil - Cedex
France

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:
Product name: RF Receiver
Model No.: **A03RAA**

to which this declaration relates, complies with the essential protection requirements of R&TTE Directive (1999/5/ EC).
The product is compliant with the following standards and/or normative documents:

- Efficient use of radio spectrum:	EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02), EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)
- Electromagnetic compatibility:	EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04), EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)
- Electrical Safety:	EN 60950-1: 2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010

CE marking: CE

Créteil, October the 21th of 2014

Jérôme Hugot
Certification & Regulation

VALEO COMFORT AND DRIVING ASSISTANCE - 76 Rue Auguste Perret - ZI Europarc - 94046 Créteil Cedex - France
Tel. +33 (0)1 48 84 54 00 - Fax +33 (0)1 48 84 54 53
S.A.S. au capital de 13 387 965 Euros – 438 809 667 RCS Créteil
www.valeo.com

Česky [Czech]	Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance tímto prohlašuje, že tento A03RAA je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Hrvatski [Croatian]	Ovime, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance izjavljuje da je model A03RAA je u skladu sa osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Valeo Sécurité Habitacle erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr A03RAA overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Valeo Sécurité Habitacle , dass sich das Model A03RAA in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Valeo Sécurité Habitacle seadme A03RAA vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Valeo Sécurité Habitacle declares that the model A03RAA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Valeo Sécurité Habitacle declara que A03RAA cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρουσα Valeo Sécurité Habitacle δηλωνει οτι A03RAA συμμορφωνεται προσ τισ ουσιωδεισ απαιτησεισ και τισ λοιπεσ σχετικεσ διαταξεισ τησ οδηγιασ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Valeo Sécurité Habitacle déclare que les appareils modèle A03RAA sont conformes aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Valeo Sécurité Habitacle dichiara che questo A03RAA è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Valeo Sécurité Habitacle deklarē, ka A03RAA atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Valeo Sécurité Habitacle deklaruoja, kad šis A03RAA atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Valeo Sécurité Habitacle dat het toestel A03RAA in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Valeo Sécurité Habitacle , jiddikjara li dan A03RAA jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott, Valeo Sécurité Habitacle nyilatkozom, hogy a A03RAA megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Valeo Sécurité Habitacle oświadcza, że A03RAA jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle declara que este A03RAA está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle izjavlja, da je ta A03RAA v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle týmto vyhlasuje, že A03RAA spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle vakuuttaa täten että A03RAA tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Valeo Sécurité Habitacle att denna A03RAA står ! överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Valeo Sécurité Habitacle yfir því að A03RAA er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru i tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Valeo Sécurité Habitacle erklærer herved at utstyret A03RAA er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 128 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Crnogorski jezik [Montenegrin]	Ovime, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance izjavljuje da je model A03RAA je u skladu sa osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
српски [Serbian]	Овиме, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance изјављује да је A03RAA модел је у складу са основним захтевима и другим релевантним одредбама Директиве 1999/5/ЕЦ.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 129 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key and key (with a wireless remote control function).
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

Carrying the electronic key on your person (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

When an electronic key is lost (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately with all remaining electronic keys that was provided with your vehicle.

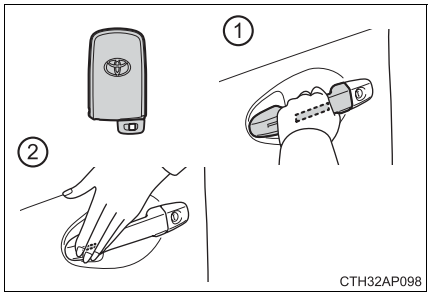
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 130 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Side doors

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

◆ Entry function (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



① Grip the front door handle to unlock all the doors.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

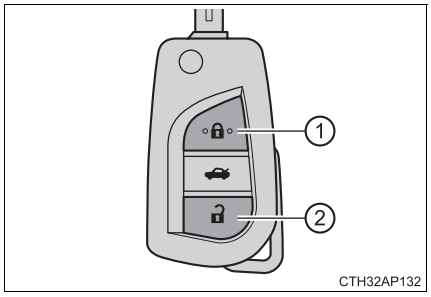
The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

② Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the side of the front door handle) to lock all the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

◆ Wireless remote control

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system



① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks all the doors

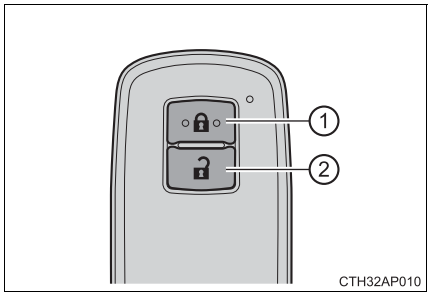
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 131 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks all the doors



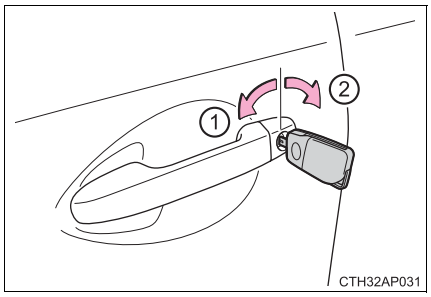
◆ Key

Turning the key operates the doors as follows:

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

① Locks all the doors

② Unlocks all the doors



▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 569)

■ Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 132 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Security feature**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

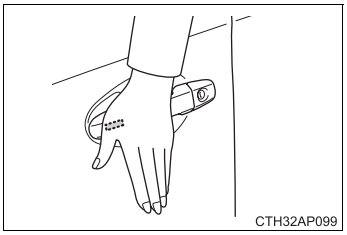
If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked using the wireless remote control, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again. (However, depending on the location of the electronic key, the key may be detected as being in the vehicle. In this case, vehicle may be unlocked.)

■ **When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the front door handle (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)**

Use your palm to touch the lock sensor.



■ **Door lock buzzer (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)**

If an attempt to lock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer will sound continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the doors again.

■ **Alarm (if equipped)**

Using the entry function or wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 83)

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P. 569)

Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P. 483)

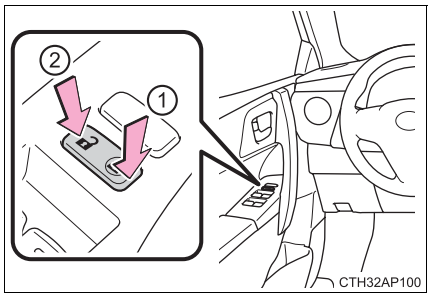
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 133 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

◆ Door lock switch

① Locks all the doors

② Unlocks all the doors

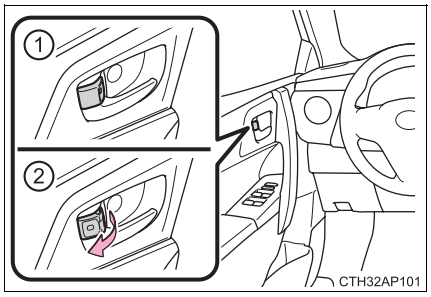


◆ Inside lock buttons

① Locks the door

② Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.



Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

The door cannot be locked if the key is in the engine switch.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 134 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

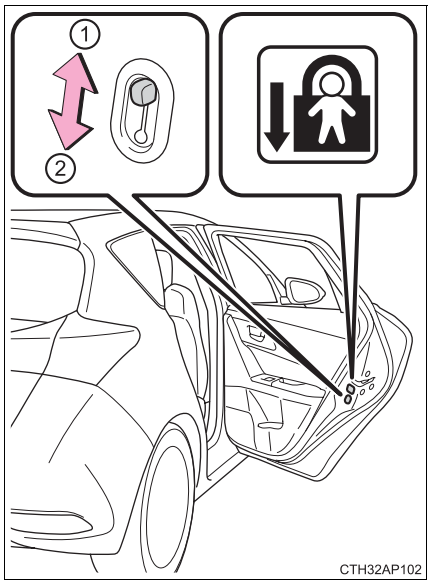
Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

① Unlock

② Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.



■ Open door warning buzzer

If a door or the back door is not fully closed, a buzzer will sound when the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph).

Vehicles with a 2-ring meter only: The open door(s) or back door is indicated on the multi-information display.

■ Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

→P. 121

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

→P. 145

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 135 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant throwing out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  Be especially careful for the driver's door and passenger's door, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in the locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 136 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Back door

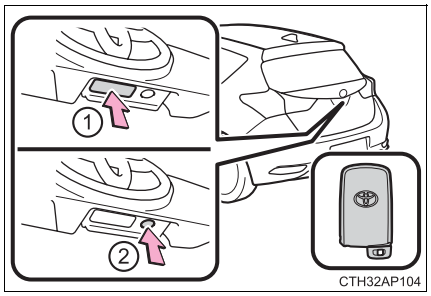
The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened by the following procedures.

Unlocking and locking the back door

■ Door lock switch

→P. 133

■ Entry function (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)



① Press the button to unlock the back door.

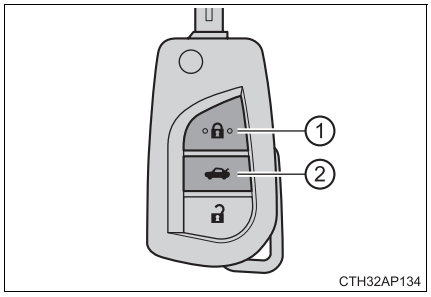
The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

② Press the button to lock the back door.

Check that the door is securely locked.

■ Wireless remote control

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system



① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks the back door

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

→P. 130

■ Key

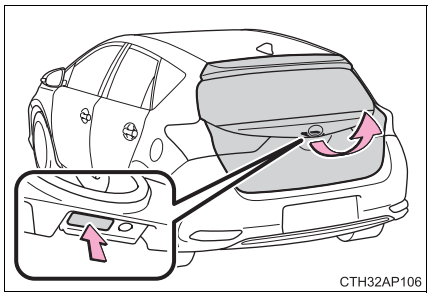
→P. 131

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 137 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Opening the back door

Raise the back door while pushing up the back door opener switch.

The back door cannot be closed immediately after the back door opener switch is pushed.



Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Open door warning buzzer

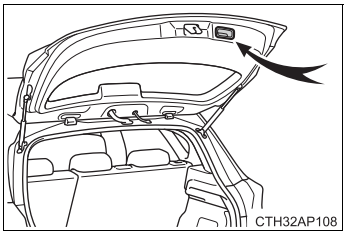
If a door or the back door is not fully closed, a buzzer will sound when the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph).

Vehicles with a 2-ring meter only: The open door(s) or back door is indicated on the multi-information display.

When closing the back door

Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.

Be careful not to pull the back door sideways when closing the back door with the handle.



Luggage compartment light

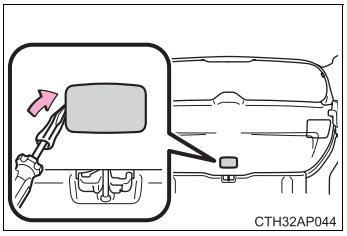
The luggage compartment light turns on when the back door is opened.

If the back door opener is inoperative

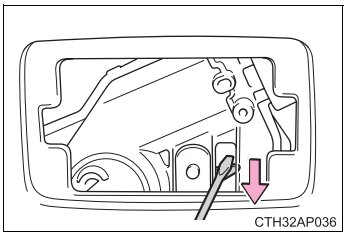
The back door can be operated from the inside.

1 Using a screwdriver, remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and the cover as shown in the illustration.



2 Move the lever.



WARNING

Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 139 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■When children are in the vehicle

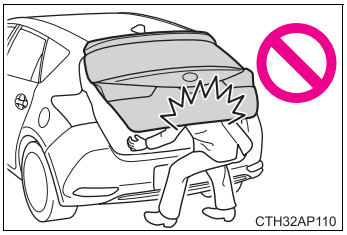
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

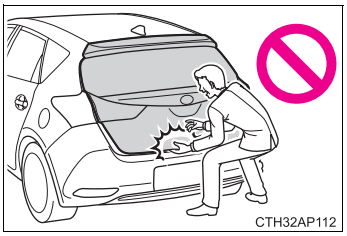
■Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.



⚠ WARNING



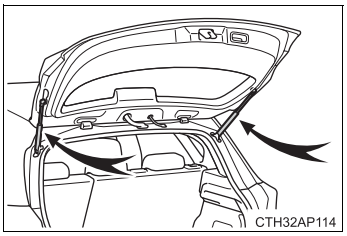
- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not pull on the back door damper stay to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Toyota part is recommended.

⚠ NOTICE

Back door damper stays

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Toyota parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 141 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Smart entry & start system*

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 130)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (→P. 136)
- Starts the engine (→P. 203)

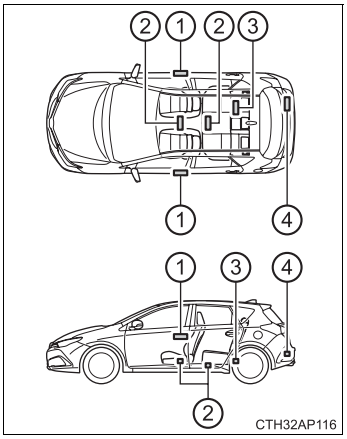
Antenna location

① Antennas outside the cabin

② Antennas inside the cabin

③ Antenna inside the luggage compartment

④ Antenna outside the luggage compartment

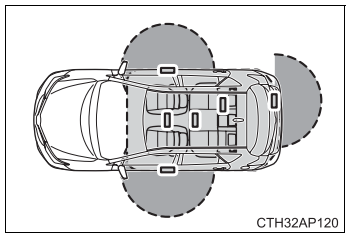


*: If equipped

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**

When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside front door handle and the back door. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)



When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **Alarms and warning indicators**

Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: A combination of exterior and interior buzzers as well as warning lights are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures for the warning light that comes on. (→P. 525)

Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: A combination of exterior and interior buzzers as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures based on the displayed message. (→P. 531)

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior buzzer sounds once for 5 seconds	Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.
	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior buzzer sounds continuously	The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 143 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: Interior buzzer sounds once and exterior buzzer sounds once for 5 seconds	An attempt was made to lock either front door by opening a door and moving the inside lock button to the lock position, then closing the door by pulling on the outside door handle with the electronic key still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.
Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: Interior buzzer sounds continuously*	The driver's door was opened with the shift lever in any position other than P and the engine switch not turned off.	Shift the shift lever to P.

*: Vehicles with a Multidrive

■ **When the smart entry & start system indicator flashes in yellow (vehicles with a 3-ring meter) or "Check entry & start system." is displayed on the multi-information display (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the vehicle battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not operated for a long time.

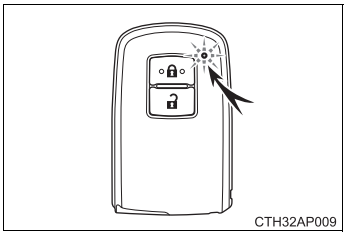
- In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
  - The electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
  - The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked from any door except the driver's door. In this case, hold the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or mechanical key to unlock the doors.

■ **Electronic key battery-saving function**

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.


CTH32AP009

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 145 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly.
(Ways of coping: →P. 569)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 146 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Note for the entry function**

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- Touching the door lock or unlock sensor while wearing gloves may prevent lock or unlock operation.
- When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 144)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 147 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

- Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.
- A sudden handle operation or a handle operation immediately after entering the effective range may prevent the doors from being unlocked. Touch the door unlock sensor and check that the doors are unlocked before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 608)

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

■ If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 569)
- Starting the engine: →P. 570

■ Customization

Settings (e. g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 608)

■ If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting

- Locking and unlocking the doors:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P. 130, 569)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P. 570
- Stopping the engine: →P. 205

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 148 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Certification for the smart entry & start system

Hereby, TRCZ s.r.o., declares that this BA7EQ is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. vakuuttaa täten että BA7EQ tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TRCZ s.r.o. dat het toestel BA7EQ in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TRCZ s.r.o. déclare que l'appareil BA7EQ est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TRCZ s.r.o. att denna BA7EQ står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BA7EQ overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TRCZ s.r.o., dass sich das Gerät BA7EQ in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TRCZ s.r.o. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BA7EQ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TRCZ s.r.o. dichiara che questo BA7EQ è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TRCZ s.r.o. declara que el BA7EQ cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TRCZ s.r.o. declara que este BA7EQ está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TRCZ s.r.o., jiddikjara li dan BA7EQ jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TRCZ s.r.o. seadme BA7EQ vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TRCZ s.r.o. nyilatkozom, hogy a BA7EQ megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
TRCZ s.r.o. týmto vyhlasuje, že BA7EQ spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TRCZ s.r.o. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BA7EQ je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

TRCZ s.r.o. izjavlja, da je ta BA7EQ v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TRCZ s.r.o. deklaruoja, kad šis BA7EQ atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TRCZ s.r.o. deklarē, ka BA7EQ atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TRCZ s.r.o. oświadcza, że BA7EQ jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TRCZ s.r.o. yfir því að BA7EQ er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved at utstyret BA7EQ er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TRCZ s.r.o., декларира, че BA7EQ е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TRCZ s.r.o., declară că aparatul BA7EQ este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da ovaj BA7EQ je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TRCZ s.r.o., deklaroj qe ky BA7EQ eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da je BA7EQ u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., deklariše da je BA7EQ u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:

http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

Hereby, TRCZ s.r.o., declares that this B94UM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. vakuuttaa täten että B94UM tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TRCZ s.r.o. dat het toestel B94UM in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TRCZ s.r.o. déclare que l'appareil B94UM est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TRCZ s.r.o. att denna B94UM står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr B94UM overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TRCZ s.r.o., dass sich das Gerät B94UM in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TRCZ s.r.o. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ B94UM ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TRCZ s.r.o. dichiara che questo B94UM è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TRCZ s.r.o. declara que el B94UM cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TRCZ s.r.o. declara que este B94UM está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TRCZ s.r.o., jiddikjara li dan B94UM jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TRCZ s.r.o. seadme B94UM vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TRCZ s.r.o. nyilatkozom, hogy a B94UM megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TRCZ s.r.o. týmto vyhlasuje, že B94UM spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TRCZ s.r.o. tímto prohlašuje, že tento B94UM je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 151 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

TRCZ s.r.o. izjavlja, da je ta B94UM v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TRCZ s.r.o. deklaruoja, kad šis B94UM atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TRCZ s.r.o. deklarē, ka B94UM atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TRCZ s.r.o. oświadcza, że B94UM jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TRCZ s.r.o. yfir því að B94UM er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved at utstyret B94UM er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TRCZ s.r.o., декларира, че B94UM е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TRCZ s.r.o., declară că aparatul B94UM este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da ovaj B94UM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TRCZ s.r.o., deklaroj qe ky B94UM eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da je B94UM u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., deklariše da je B94UM u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:

http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 152 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF10-51
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: January 9, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMLF10-51 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMLF10-51 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMLF10-51 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMLF10-51 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMLF10-51 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF10-51 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMLF10-51 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMLF10-51 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMLF10-51 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMLF10-51 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMLF10-51 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMLF10-51 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMLF10-51 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF10-51 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMLF10-51 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF10-51 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMLF10-51 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF10-51 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMLF10-51 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMLF10-51 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMLF10-51 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF10-51 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMLF10-51 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMLF10-51 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF10-51 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMLF10-51 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 155 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMLF10-51 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMLF10-51 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 156 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 141)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details on disabling the entry function.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 157 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Front seats

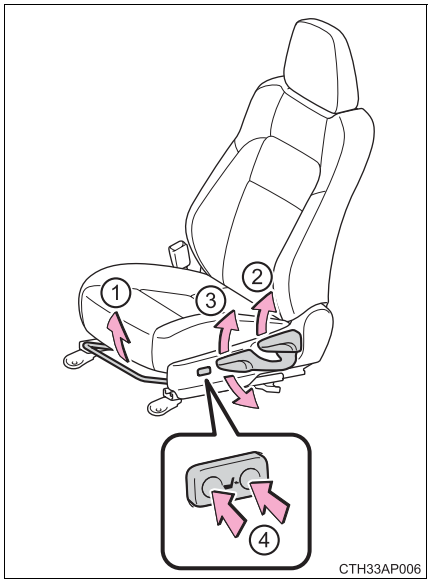
Adjustment procedure

① Seat position adjustment lever

② Seatback angle adjustment lever

③ Vertical height adjustment lever (if equipped)

④ Lumbar support adjustment switch (if equipped)



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 158 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

■Seat adjustment

- Be careful that the seat does not hit passengers or luggage.
- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
  Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- After adjusting the seat, make sure that the seat is locked in position.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 159 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Rear seats*

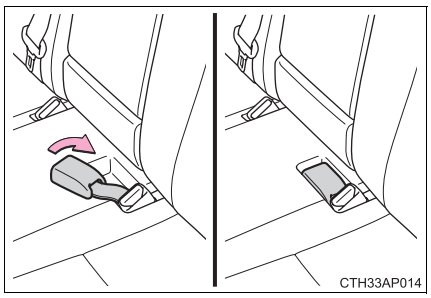
The seatbacks of the rear seats can be folded down.

Folding down the rear seatbacks

1 Move the front seats forward. (→P. 157)

2 Stow the rear armrest. (if equipped) (→P. 422)

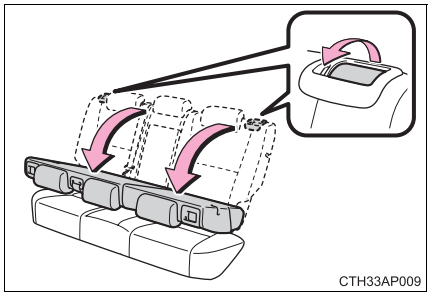
3 Stow the rear center seat belt buckle.



4 Lower the head restraints to the lowest position. (→P. 161)

5 Pull the seatback lock release lever and fold the seatback down.

Each seatback may be folded separately.



*: If equipped

⚠ WARNING

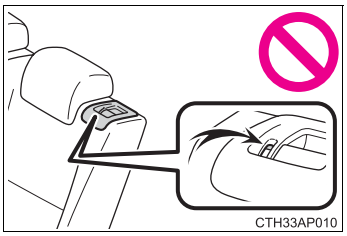
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■When folding the rear seatbacks down

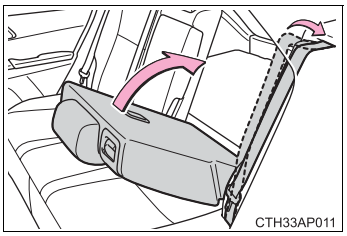
- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (Multidrive) or N (manual transmission).
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on the rear center seat if the rear right seat is folded down, as the seat belt buckle for the rear center seat belt is then concealed under the folded seat and cannot be used.
- Be careful not to get your hand caught when folding the rear seatbacks.
- Adjust the position of the front seats before folding down the rear seatbacks so that the front seats do not interfere with the rear seatbacks when folding down the rear seatbacks.

■After returning the rear seatback to the upright position

- Make sure that the seatback is securely locked in position by lightly pushing it back and forth.
  If the seatback is not securely locked, the red marking will be visible on the seatback lock release lever. Make sure that the red marking is not visible.


CTH33AP010

- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.
  If the seat belt gets caught between the seatback's securing hook and latch, it may damage the seat belt.


CTH33AP011

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 161 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

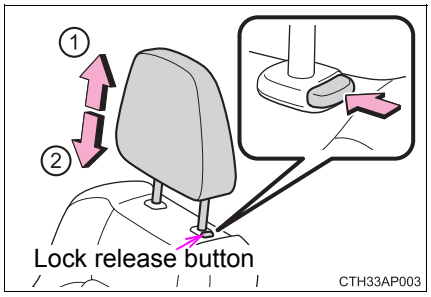
Vertical adjustment

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

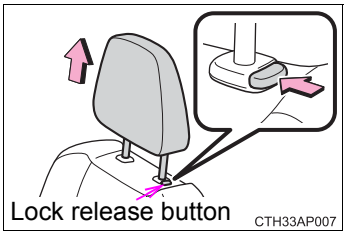
② Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



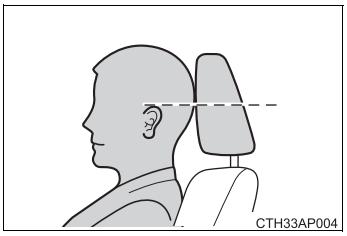
■ Removing the head restraints

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.



■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



■ Adjusting the rear seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 162 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

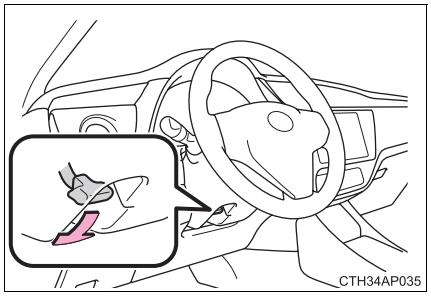
- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 163 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Steering wheel

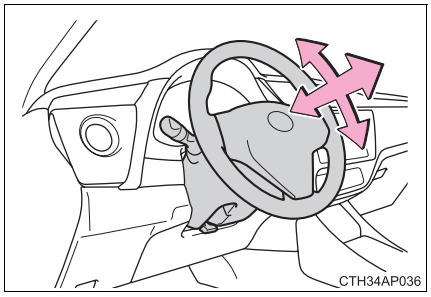
Adjustment procedure

1 Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.



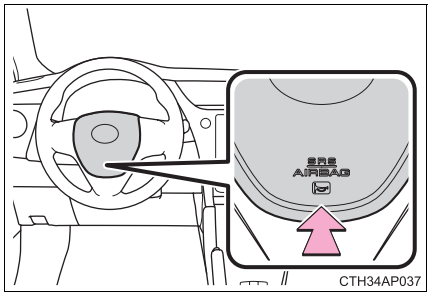
2 Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel horizontally and vertically.

After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.



Horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 164 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **After adjusting the steering wheel**

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.
Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, and resulting in death or serious injury. Also, the horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 165 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

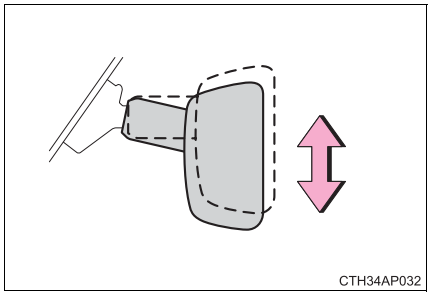
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror (auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror only)

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

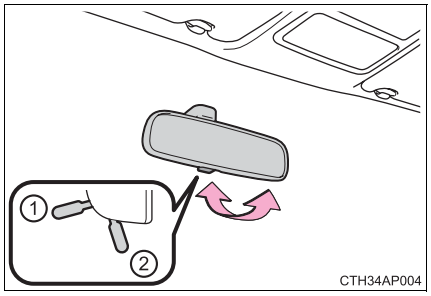


Anti-glare function

▶ Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.

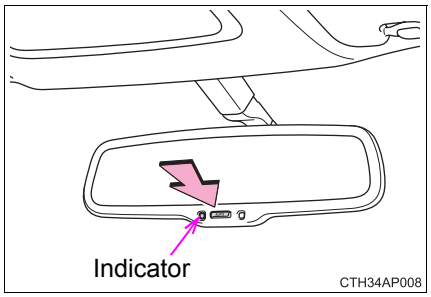
① Normal position
② Anti-glare position



▶ Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Changing automatic anti-glare function mode



On/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in on mode, the indicator illuminates.

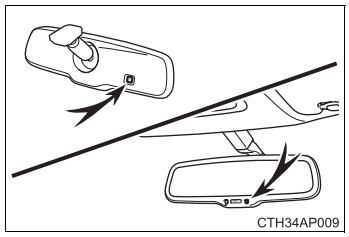
Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: The function will be set to on mode each time the engine switch is turned to the “ON” position.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: The function will be set to on mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to off mode. (The indicator also turns off.)

■ To prevent sensor error (vehicles with an auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

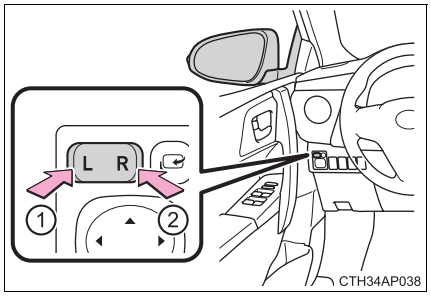
Outside rear view mirrors

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

① Left

② Right



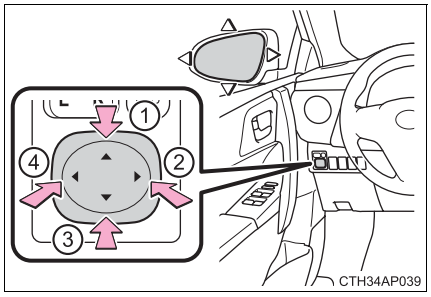
2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

① Up

② Right

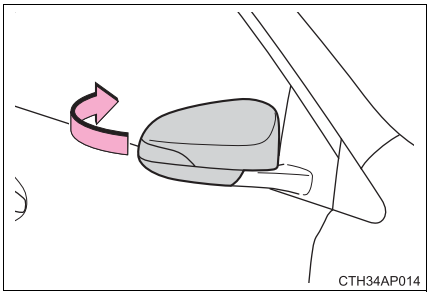
③ Down

④ Left



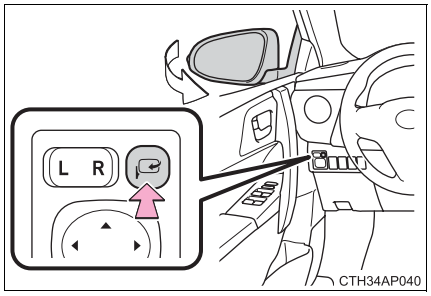
Manually folding the mirrors

▶ Manual type



Push the mirror back in the direction of the rear of the vehicle.

▶ Power type



Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 168 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Automatically folding and extending the mirrors (if equipped)

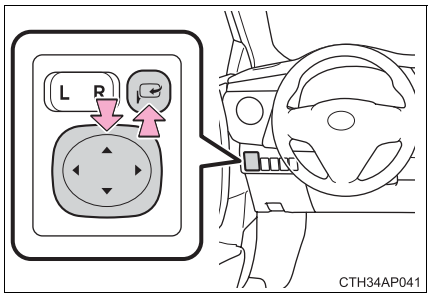
The automatic folding/extending mirror function allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Automatic operation can be disabled by performing the following.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Press and hold the mirror fold switch and ▲ of the mirror angle adjustment switch at the same time for more than 2 seconds.

Performing the above procedure again will enable automatic operation.



■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
The engine switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals (vehicles with an automatic folding/extending mirror function)

The automatic folding/extending mirror function will return to on as default. To turn the function off, press the switch again to select off.

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 388, 395)

■ Using the automatic folding/extending mirror function in cold weather (if equipped)

When the automatic folding/extending mirror function is used in cold weather, the outside rear view mirrors could freeze up and automatic folding and extension may not be possible. In this event, remove any ice and snow from the outside rear view mirror, then operate the mirror manually by using the mirror fold switch or moving the mirror by hand.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 169 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ **Important points while driving**

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ **When a mirror is moving**

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ **When the mirror defoggers are operating**

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Power windows*

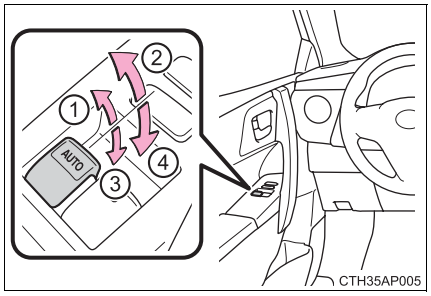
Opening and closing procedures

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches. Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:

▶ One-touch opening/closing on driver's window only type

① Closing
② One-touch closing (driver's window only)*
③ Opening
④ One-touch opening (driver's window only)*

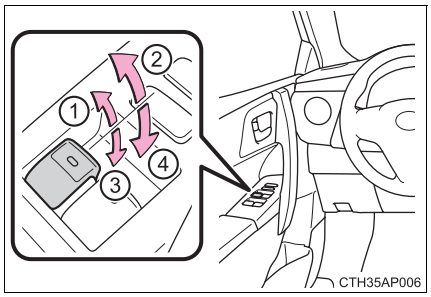
*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.



▶ One-touch opening/closing on all windows type

① Closing
② One-touch closing*
③ Opening
④ One-touch opening*

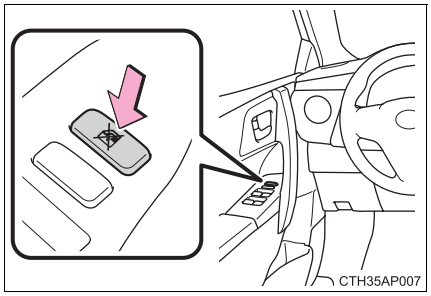
*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.



Window lock switch

Press the switch to lock the passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.



*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 171 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
The engine switch is in the “ON” position.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the engine off**

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function (windows with one-touch closing function only)**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 172 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **When the power window does not close normally (windows with one-touch closing function only)**

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the engine switch is turned to the “ON” position.

  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation as explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

1. Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.
2. Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.
3. Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 173 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Closing the windows**

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 170)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ **Jam protection function (windows with one-touch closing function only)**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 174 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 175 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Driving 4

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 176
Cargo and luggage 188
Trailer towing 189

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch (vehicles without a smart entry & start system).....199
Engine (ignition) switch (vehicles with a smart entry & start system).....203
Multidrive 213
Manual transmission.....218
Turn signal lever 221
Parking brake 222

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 223
Fog light switch.....229
Windshield wipers and washer.....231
Rear window wiper and washer.....235

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap.....237

4-5. Toyota Safety Sense

Toyota Safety Sense 240
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system).....244
LDA (Lane Departure Alert).....252
Automatic High Beam.....258
RSA (Road Sign Assist).....262

4-6. Using the driving support systems

Stop & Start system (Smart Stop) 267
Cruise control.....280
Speed limiter.....285
Toyota parking assist-sensor 289
Simple-IPA (Simple-Intelligent Parking Assist).....296
Diesel particulate filter system 311
Driving assist systems 313

4-7. Driving tips

Winter driving tips 319

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 176 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the engine

→P. 199, 203

Driving

▶ Multidrive

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 213)

2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 222)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

▶ Manual transmission

1 While depressing the clutch pedal, shift the shift lever to 1. (→P. 218)

2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 222)

3 Gradually release the clutch pedal. At the same time, gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 177 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Stopping

▶ Multidrive

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

Vehicles with a Stop & Start system: If the Stop & Start system is enabled, depressing the brake pedal will stop the engine.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 213)

▶ Manual transmission

1 While depressing the clutch pedal, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to N. (→P. 218)

Vehicles with a Stop & Start system: If the Stop & Start system is enabled, shifting the shift lever to N and releasing the clutch pedal will stop the engine. (→P. 218)

Parking the vehicle

▶ Multidrive

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 222)

3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 213)

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

4 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to the “LOCK” position to stop the engine.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.

▶ Manual transmission

1 While depressing the clutch pedal, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 222)

3 Shift the shift lever to N. (→P. 218)

If parking on a hill, shift the shift lever to 1 or R and block the wheels as needed.

4 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to the “LOCK” position to stop the engine.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 179 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Starting off on a steep uphill

▶ Multidrive

1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

3 Release the parking brake.

▶ Manual transmission

1 With the parking brake firmly set and the clutch pedal fully depressed, shift the shift lever to 1.

2 Lightly depress the accelerator pedal at the same time as gradually releasing the clutch pedal.

3 Release the parking brake.

■ When starting off on an uphill

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P. 313)

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Engine speed while driving (vehicles with a Multidrive)

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while sport mode is selected

■ **Breaking in your new Toyota**

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (186 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 1000 km (621 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 592)

■ **Idling time before engine stop**

To prevent damage to the turbocharger, allow the engine to idle immediately after high-speed driving or hill climbing.

▶ 8NR-FTS engine

Driving condition		Idling time
Normal city driving		Not necessary
High-speed driving	Constant speed of approx. 100 km/h (62 mph)	Approximately 1 minute
Steep hill driving or continuous driving at 100 km/h (62 mph) or more (race track driving etc.) or towing a trailer		Approximately 2 minutes

▶ 1ND-TV and 1WW engines

Driving condition		Idling time
Normal city driving		Not necessary
High-speed driving	Constant speed of approx. 80 km/h (50 mph)	Approximately 20 seconds
	Constant speed of approx. 100 km/h (62 mph)	Approximately 1 minute
Steep hill driving or continuous driving at 100 km/h (62 mph) or more (race track driving etc.)		Approximately 2 minutes

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 181 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When starting the vehicle (vehicles with a Multidrive)

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 509
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 213, 218)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 182 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When shifting the shift lever

- Vehicles with a Multidrive: Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R. Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 183 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)**

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P (Multidrive) or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 184 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 185 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the brake booster does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  Have your brakes fixed immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle (vehicles with a Multidrive)

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the engine output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 186 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■When driving the vehicle (vehicles with a manual transmission)

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the engine output.
- Do not shift gears unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed. After shifting, do not release the clutch pedal abruptly. Doing so may damage the clutch, transmission and gears.
- Observe the following to prevent the clutch from being damaged.
  - Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving.
    Doing so may cause clutch trouble.
  - Do not use any gear other than the 1st gear when starting off and moving forward.
    Doing so may damage the clutch.
  - Do not use the clutch to hold the vehicle when stopping on an uphill grade.
    Doing so may damage the clutch.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R when the vehicle is still moving. Doing so may damage the clutch, transmission and gears.

■When parking the vehicle (vehicles with a Multidrive)

Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- 8NR-FTS, 1ND-TV and 1WW engines: Make sure to idle the engine immediately after high-speed driving or hill climbing. Stop the engine only after the turbocharger has cooled down.
  Failure to do so may cause damage to the turbocharger.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 187 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 537, 551)

■When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 188 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

⚠ WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.
  Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 189 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. Your safety and satisfaction depend on the proper use of correct equipment and cautious driving habits. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

Toyota warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Ask your local authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details before towing, as there are additional legal requirements in some countries.

◆ Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible drawbar load before towing. (→P. 586)

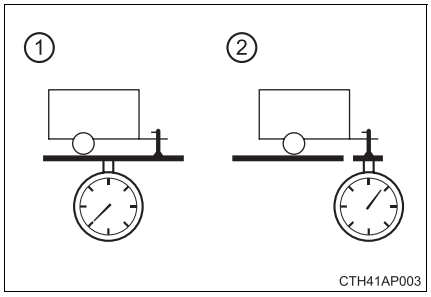
◆ Towing hitch/bracket

Toyota recommends the use of the Toyota hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 190 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Important points regarding trailer loads

■ Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load



① Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P. 586)

When towing a trailer, use a friction coupler or friction stabilizer (sway control device).

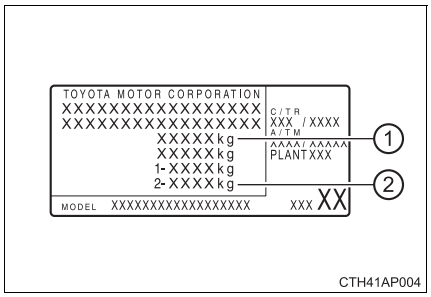
② Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P. 586)

■ Information tag (manufacturer's label)

① Gross vehicle mass

② Maximum permissible rear axle capacity



■ Gross vehicle mass

▶ Vehicle category M1 models*

The combined weight of the driver, passengers, luggage, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

▶ Vehicle category N1 models*

The combined weight of the driver, passengers, cargo, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load must not exceed the gross vehicle mass. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

■ Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

▶ Vehicle category M1 models*

The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

▶ Vehicle category N1 models*

The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 192 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■ **Vehicle category M1 models*: When the gross vehicle mass limit or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded**

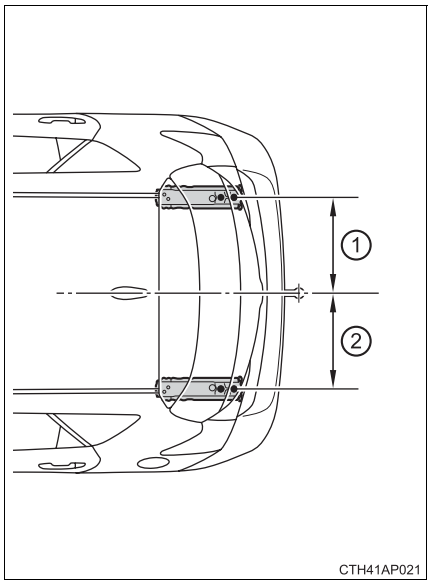
Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is the lower.

Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

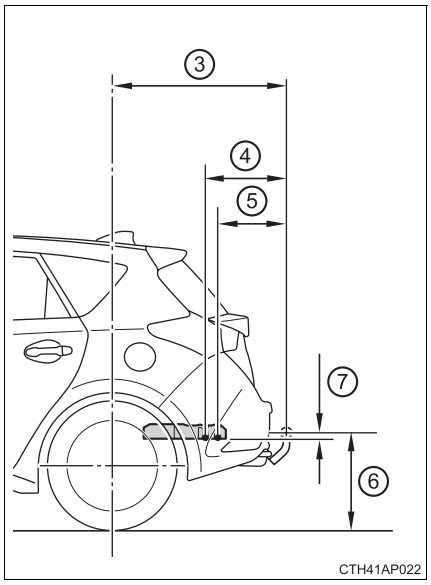
*: To distinguish the vehicle category, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Installation positions for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball

① 461 mm (18.1 in.)
② 461 mm (18.1 in.)



③ 838 mm (33.0 in.)
④ 374 mm (14.7 in.)
⑤ 308 mm (12.1 in.)
⑥ 371 mm (14.6 in.)
⑦ 35 mm (1.4 in.)



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 194 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Tire information**

- Increase the tire inflation pressure to 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) greater than the recommended value when towing. (→P. 603)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ **Trailer lights**

Please consult at any authorized dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

■ **Break-in schedule**

Toyota recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ **Safety checks before towing**

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that the total load exerted on the vehicle is within the range of the weight limits. (→P. 190)
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ **Maintenance**

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 195 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

When the rear bumper strengthening material is aluminum

Ensure the steel bracket part does not come directly in contact with that area.

When steel and aluminum come into contact, there is a reaction similar to corrosion, which will weaken the section concerned and may result in damage. Apply a rust inhibitor to parts that will come in contact when attaching a steel bracket.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 196 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

■ Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

■ Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

■ Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

■ Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

■ Important points regarding turning

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 197 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Important points regarding stability**

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong crosswinds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

■ **Passing other vehicles**

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

■ **Transmission information**

▶ Multidrive

To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance when using engine braking, do not use the transmission in D, must be in M and select gear step 4 or lower. (→P. 216)

▶ Manual transmission

Refrain from driving in 6th gear to maintain the effectiveness of engine braking and to maintain charging system performance.

■ **If the engine overheats**

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P. 578)

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (Multidrive) and 1 or R (manual transmission).

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 198 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Follow all the instructions described in this section. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Trailer towing precautions**

When towing, make sure that none of the weight limits are exceeded. (→P. 190)

■ **Vehicle speed in towing**

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ **Before descending hills or long declines**

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

■ **Operation of the brake pedal**

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time. Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

■ **To avoid accident or injury**

- Vehicles with a cruise control: Do not use cruise control when you are towing.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow a trailer when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: Do not tow the vehicle when the tire installed is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Do not directly splice trailer lights**

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle’s electrical system and cause a malfunction.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 199 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Engine (ignition) switch (vehicles without a smart entry & start system)

Starting the engine

▶ Multidrive

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

3 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

4 Turn the engine switch to the "START" position and start the engine.

▶ Manual transmission (gasoline engine)

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is set in N.

3 Firmly depress the clutch pedal.

4 Turn the engine switch to the "START" position and start the engine.

▶ Manual transmission (diesel engine)

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is set in N.

3 Firmly depress the clutch pedal.

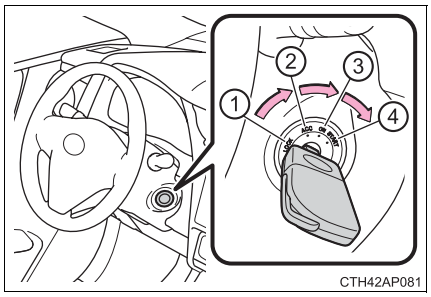
4 Turn the engine switch to the "ON" position.

turns on.

5 After goes out, turn the engine switch to the "START" position and start the engine.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 200 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Changing the engine switch positions



① “LOCK”

The steering wheel is locked and the key can be removed. (vehicles with a Multidrive: The key can be removed only when the shift lever is in P.)

② “ACC”

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

③ “ON”

All electrical components can be used.

④ “START”

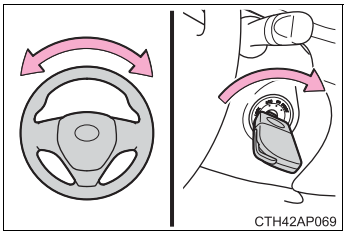
For starting the engine.

If the engine does not start

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 75)
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

When the steering lock cannot be released

When starting the engine, the engine switch may seem stuck in the “LOCK” position. To free it, turn the key while turning the steering wheel slightly left and right.



Key reminder function

A buzzer sounds if the driver’s door is opened while the engine switch is in the “LOCK” or “ACC” position to remind you to remove the key.

WARNING

When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver’s seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Caution when driving

Do not turn the engine switch to the “LOCK” position while driving. If, in an emergency, you must turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving, turn the engine switch only to the “ACC” position to stop the engine. An accident may result if the engine is stopped while driving. (→P. 509)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 202 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the engine switch in the “ACC” or “ON” position for long periods of time without the engine running.

When starting the engine

- Do not crank the engine for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring system.
- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 203 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Engine (ignition) switch (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is set in P (Multidrive) or N (manual transmission).

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

3 Multidrive: Firmly depress the brake pedal.

Manual transmission: Firmly depress the clutch pedal.

The smart entry & start system indicator light (green) will turn on. If the indicator light does not turn on, the engine cannot be started.

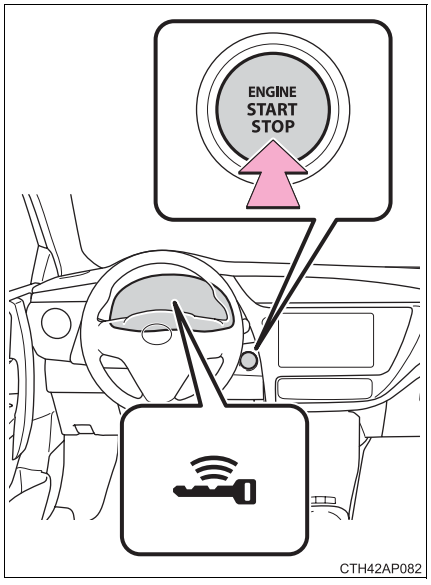
4 Press the engine switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) until the engine is completely started.

Diesel model: turns on. The engine begins starting after goes out.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 204 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

3 Multidrive: Firmly depress the brake pedal.

Manual transmission: Firmly depress the clutch pedal.

 will be displayed on the multi-information display.

If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

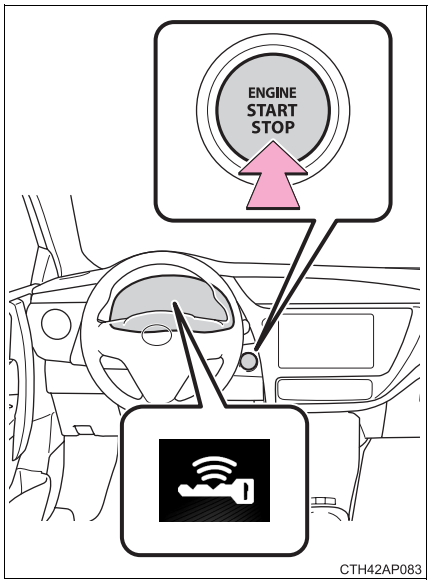
4 Press the engine switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) until the engine is completely started.

Diesel model: turns on. The engine begins starting after goes out.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 205 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Stopping the engine

1 Multidrive: Stop the vehicle.
Manual transmission: While depressing the clutch pedal, stop the vehicle.

2 Multidrive: Shift the shift lever to P.

Manual transmission: Shift the shift lever to N.

3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 222)

4 Press the engine switch.

5 Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: Release the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and check that the smart entry & start system indicator light (green) is off.

Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: Release the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and check that “Power ON.” on the multi-information display is off.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 206 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

The smart entry & start system indicator light (green) is off.

ACCESSORY mode

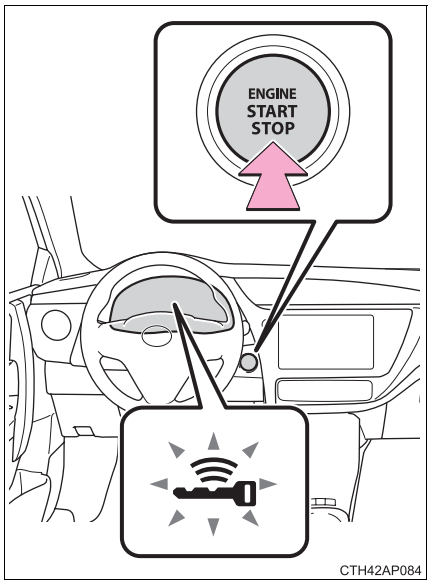
Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The smart entry & start system indicator light (green) flashes slowly.

IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The smart entry & start system indicator light (green) flashes slowly.



*: Vehicles with a Multidrive: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 207 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

The multi-information display will not be displayed.

ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

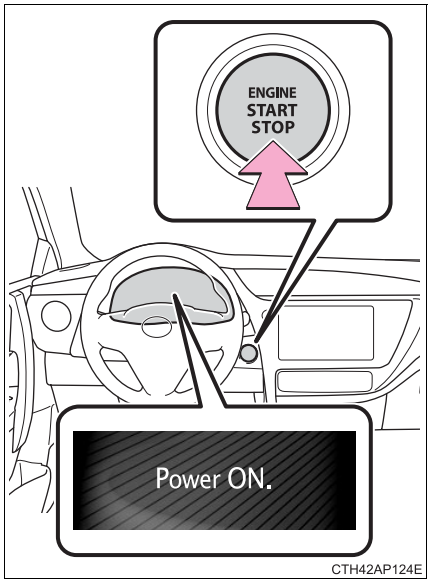
“Power ON.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

“Power ON.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

*: Vehicles with a Multidrive: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 208 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P (vehicles with a Multidrive)

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

3 Check that the smart entry & start system indicator light (green) flashes slowly and then press the engine switch once.

4 Check that the smart entry & start system indicator light (green) is off.

▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

3 Check that “Power ON.” and “Turn power OFF.” are displayed alternately on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.

4 Check that “Power ON.” and “Turn power OFF.” on the multi-information display are off.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 209 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Auto power off function**

Vehicles with a Multidrive: If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off.

Vehicles with a manual transmission: If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour, the engine switch will automatically turn off.

However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ **Key battery depletion**

→P. 122

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 145

■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P. 146

■ **If the engine does not start**

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 75) Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P.

  ▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

  The smart entry & start system indicator light (green) will flash quickly.

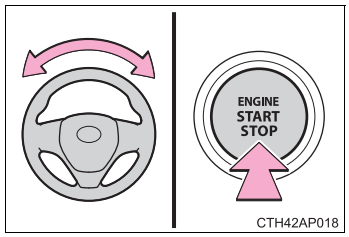
  ▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

  “Shift to P position to start.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Steering lock**

After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**



Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: The smart entry & start system indicator light (green) will flash quickly.

Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: “Steering lock active.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Check that the shift lever is set in P (Multi-drive). Press the engine switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **When the smart entry & start system indicator flashes in yellow (vehicles with a 3-ring meter) or “Check entry & start system.” is displayed on the multi-information display (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **If the key battery is depleted**

→P. 483

■ **Operation of the engine switch**

- When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the engine switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ **If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting**

→P. 569

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 211 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 509)

However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 212 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: If the smart entry & start system indicator light (green) is illuminated, the engine switch is not off. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the engine switch is off.
- Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: If “Power ON.” is displayed on the multi-information display, the engine switch is not off. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the engine switch is off.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

When starting the engine

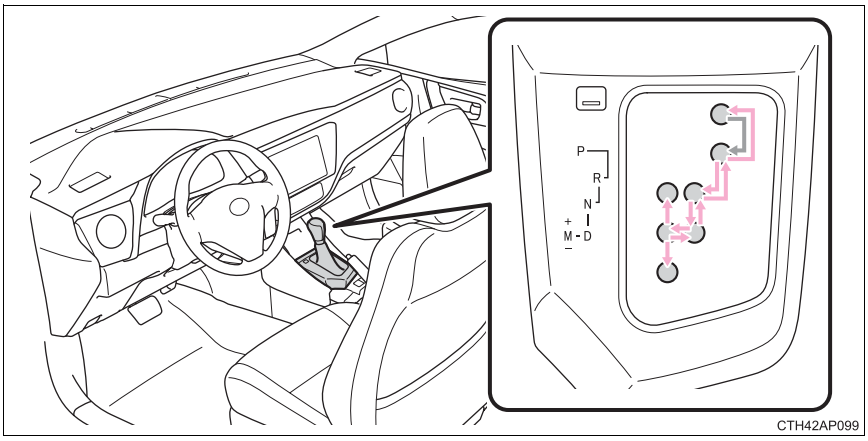
- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Multidrive*

Shifting the shift lever



Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:

While the engine switch is in the “ON” position, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:

While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

*: If equipped

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
M	7-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode driving*2 (→P. 216)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift lever in D for normal driving.

*2: Selecting gear step using the M position achieves suitable engine braking forces by operating the shift lever.

Sport mode

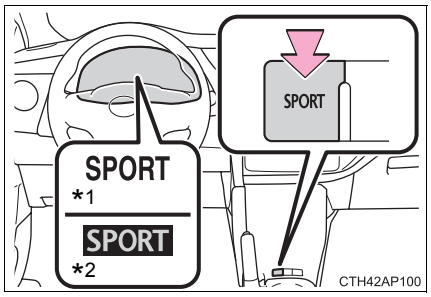
Press the switch.

For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

Press the switch again to return to normal mode.

*1: Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

*2: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 215 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Temporally gear steps selection mode in the D position (vehicles with a paddle shift switch)

To drive in temporary gear steps selection mode, operate the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches. The gear steps can then be selected by operating the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches. By selecting gear step using paddle shift switches, you can control engine braking forces.

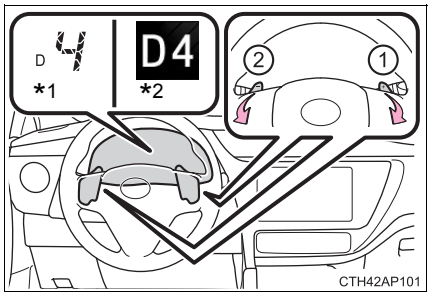
① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The selected gear step, from D1 to D7, will be displayed in the meter.

*1: Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

*2: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 216 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Changing gear steps in the M position

To enter 7-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode, shift the shift lever to M position. Gear steps can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches (vehicles with a paddle shift switch), allowing you to drive in the gear step of your choosing.

① Upshifting

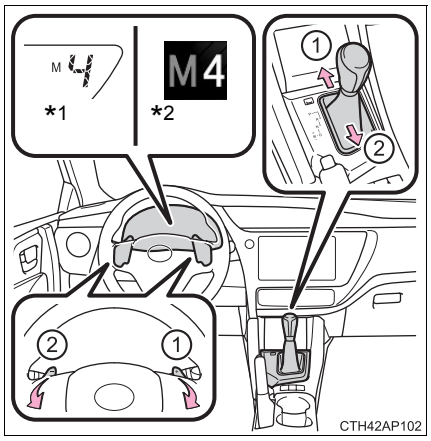
② Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear step, from M1 to M7, will be displayed in the meter.

*1: Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

*2: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter



However, even when in the M position, the gear steps will be automatically changed if the engine speed is too high, or too low.

■ Gear step functions

- You can choose from 7 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower gear step will provide greater engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine speed will also increase.

■ If the 7-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to M

This may indicate a malfunction in the Multidrive system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

■ When the vehicle comes to a stop with the shift lever in the M position

- The transmission will automatically downshift to M1 once the vehicle is stopped.
- After a stop, the vehicle will start off in M1.
- When the vehicle is stopped, the transmission is set at M1.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 217 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Automatic deactivation of gear steps selection in the D position (vehicles with a paddle shift switch)**

Temporally gear steps selection mode in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time in one gear step
- When the shift lever is shifted to other than D
- When the "+" paddle shift switch is held down for a period of time

■ **When driving with cruise control activated (if equipped)**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control will not be canceled.

- While driving in D or 7-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode, downshifting to 6, 5 or 4. (→P. 280)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P. 214)

■ **Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **Sport mode automatic deactivation**

Sport mode is automatically deactivated if the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

→P. 568

■ **G AI-SHIFT**

G AI-SHIFT automatically selects a suitable gear for sporty driving according to driver's input and driving conditions. G AI-SHIFT operates automatically when the shift lever is in D and sport mode is selected for the driving mode. (Selecting normal mode or shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels this function.)

⚠ WARNING

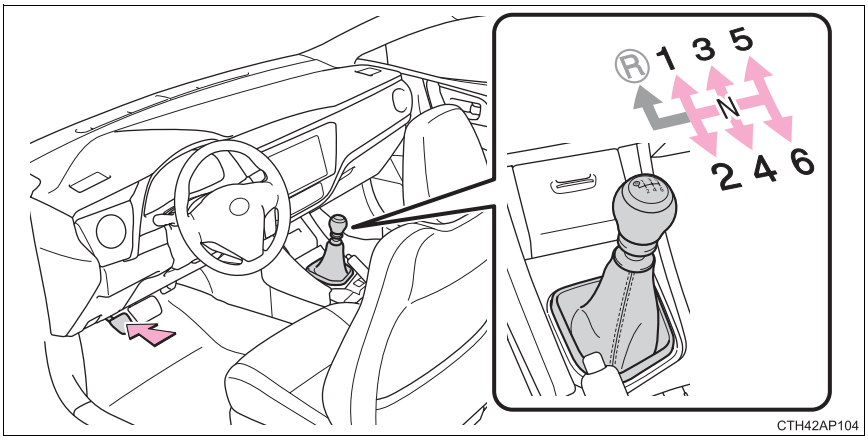
■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 218 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Manual transmission*

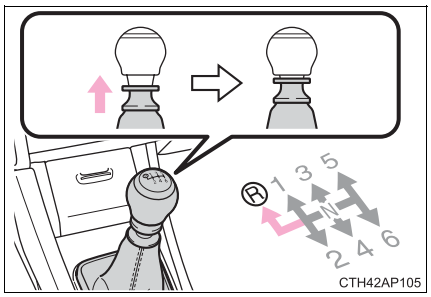
Shifting the shift lever



Fully depress the clutch pedal before operating the shift lever, and then release it slowly.

Shifting the shift lever to R

Shift the shift lever to R while lifting up the ring section.



*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 219 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Gear Shift Indicator

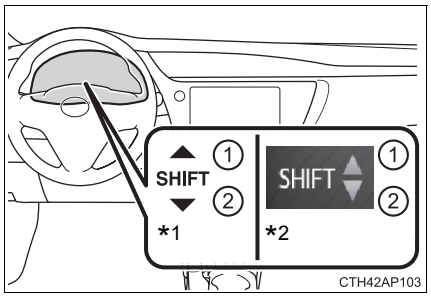
Gear Shift Indicator is a guide to help the driver achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions within limits of engine performance.

① Upshifting

② Downshifting

*1: Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

*2: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter



■ Gear Shift Indicator display

Gear Shift Indicator may not be displayed when your foot is placed on the clutch pedal.

■ Maximum allowable speeds

Observe the following maximum allowable speeds in each gear when maximum acceleration is necessary.

▶ Gasoline engine

km/h (mph)

Shift position	Maximum speed		
	1NR-FE engine	1ZR-FAE engine	8NR-FTS engine
1	44 (27)	50 (31)	43 (27)
2	82 (50)	94 (58)	79 (49)
3	112 (69)	137 (85)	124 (77)
4	152 (94)	185 (114)	168 (104)
5	179 (111)	—	—

▶ Diesel engine

km/h (mph)

Shift position	Maximum speed	
	1ND-TV engine	1WW engine
1	42 (26)	42 (26)
2	79 (49)	85 (53)
3	122 (75)	133 (83)
4	165 (102)	189 (117)
5	—	—

WARNING

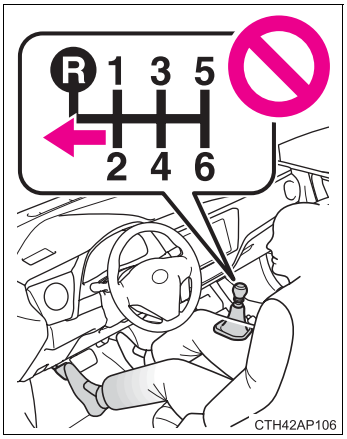
■ Gear Shift Indicator display

For safety, the driver should not look only at the display. Refer to the display when it is safe to do so while considering actual traffic and road conditions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the transmission

- Do not shift the shift lever to R without depressing the clutch pedal.



- Do not lift up the ring section except when shifting the lever to R.
- Shift the shift lever to R only when the vehicle is stationary.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 221 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

① Right turn

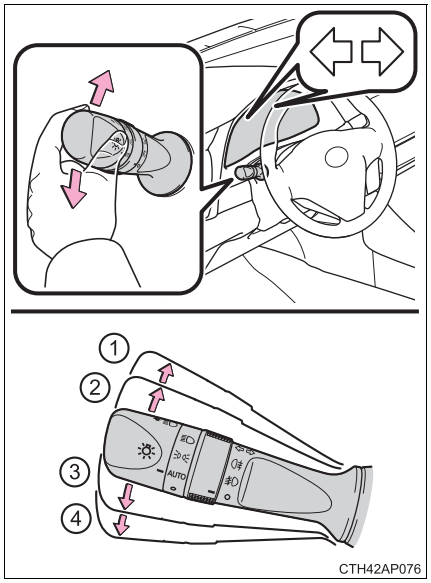
② Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

③ Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

④ Left turn



■ Turn signals can be operated when

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in the “ON” position.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ Customization

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable feature →P. 608)

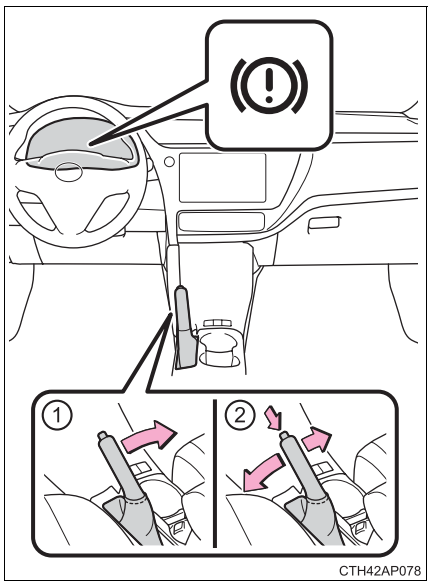
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 222 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Parking brake

Operating instructions

① To set the parking brake, fully pull the parking brake lever while depressing the brake pedal.

② To release the parking brake, slightly raise the lever and lower it completely while pressing the button.



■ Parking brake engaged warning buzzer

If the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) or more with the parking brake engaged, a buzzer will sound.

Vehicles with a 2-ring meter only: “Release parking brake.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

■ Usage in winter time

→P. 319

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:

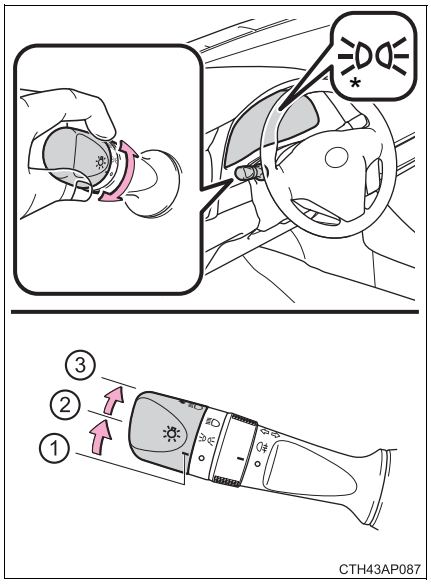
▶ Type A

① The daytime running lights turn on. (→P. 227)

② The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

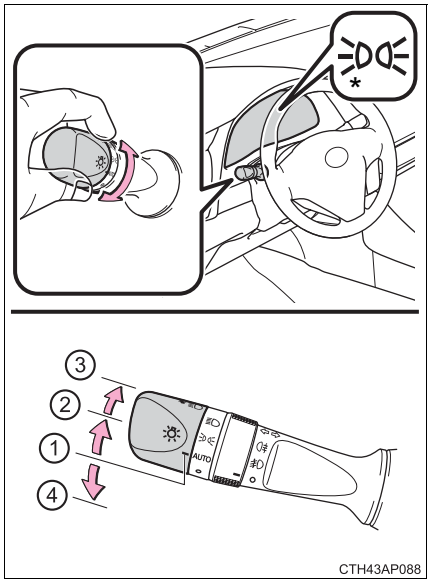
③ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

*: If equipped



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 224 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ Type B



① **AUTO** The headlights, daytime running lights (→P. 227) and all the lights listed below turn on and off automatically.
(Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: When the engine switch is in the “ON” position)
(Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode)

② The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

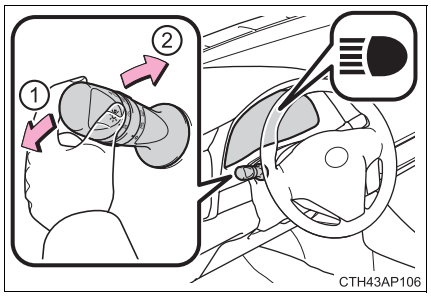
③ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

④ The daytime running lights turn on. (→P. 227)

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 225 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Turning on the high beam headlights



① With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

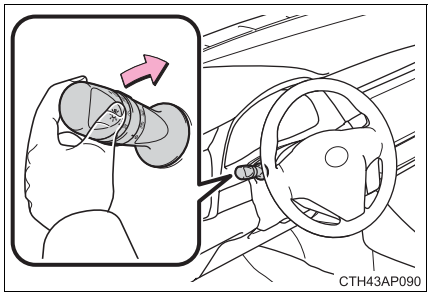
Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

② Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Follow me home system

This system allows the headlights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is turned off.



Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch in AUTO (if equipped) or O after turning the engine switch off.

The lights are turned off in the following situations.

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: The engine switch is turned to the “ON” position. Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: The engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- The light switch is turned on.
- The light switch is pulled toward you and then released.

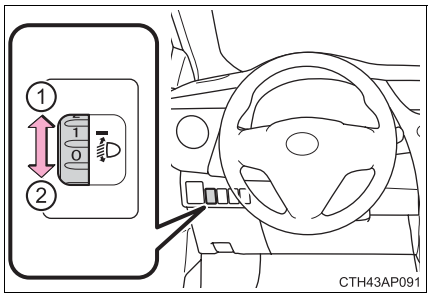
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 226 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Manual headlight leveling dial (vehicles with halogen headlights)

The level of the headlights can be adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle.

① Raises the level of the headlights

② Lowers the level of the headlights



■ Guide to dial settings

Occupancy and luggage load conditions		Dial position
Occupants	Luggage load	
Driver	None	0
Driver and front passenger	None	0
All seats occupied	None	1.5
All seats occupied	Full luggage loading	2.5
Driver	Full luggage loading	3.5

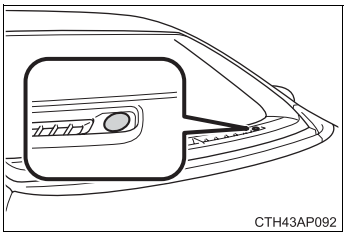
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 227 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Daytime running light system**

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch off or in the AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor (if equipped)**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.


CTH43AP092

■ **Automatic light off system**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

When the light switch is in or : The headlights and front fog lights (if equipped) turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned off.

When the light switch is in AUTO : All lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to the “ON” position, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

When the light switch is in or : The headlights and front fog lights (if equipped) turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned off.

When the light switch is in AUTO : All lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to the “ACC” position and the driver’s door is opened while the lights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver’s door is opened while the lights are turned on.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 228 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system (vehicles with LED headlights)**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Battery-saving function**

In the following conditions, the remaining lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes in order to prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged:

- The headlights and/or tail lights are on.
- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: The engine switch is turned to the “ACC” position or turned off.
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: The engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.
- The light switch is in ≡D or AUTO.

This function will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: When the engine switch is turned to the “ON” position.
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- When the light switch is operated.
- When a door is opened or closed.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 608)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 229 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Fog light switch

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

▶ Rear fog light switch

① O Turns the rear fog light off

② Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to O.

Operating the switch ring again turns the rear fog light off.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 230 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ Front and rear fog light switch

① O Turns the front and rear fog lights off

② Turns the front fog lights on

③ Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog light off.



■ **Fog lights can be used when**

▶ Vehicles with a rear fog light switch

The headlights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with a front and rear fog light switch

Front fog lights: The headlights or the front position lights are turned on.
Rear fog light: The front fog lights are turned on.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the wiper lever

▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster

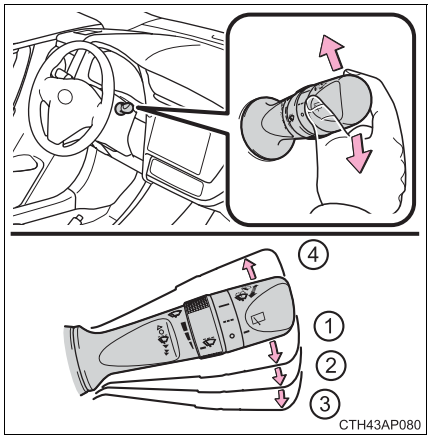
The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows. When intermittent windshield wiper operation is selected, the wiper interval can be also adjusted.

① Intermittent windshield wiper operation

② ▼ Low speed windshield wiper operation

③ ▼▼ High speed windshield wiper operation

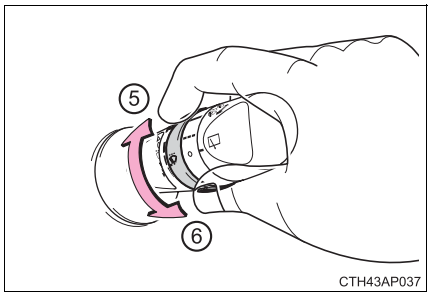
④ △ Temporary operation



Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.

⑤ Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

⑥ Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

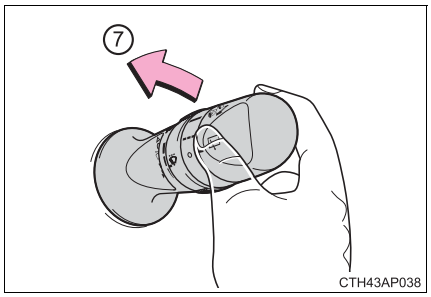


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 232 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⑦ Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

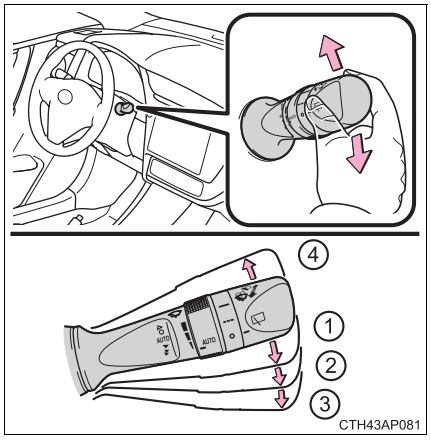
When “AUTO” is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

① AUTO Rain-sensing windshield wiper operation

② ▼ Low speed windshield wiper operation

③ ▼▼ High speed windshield wiper operation

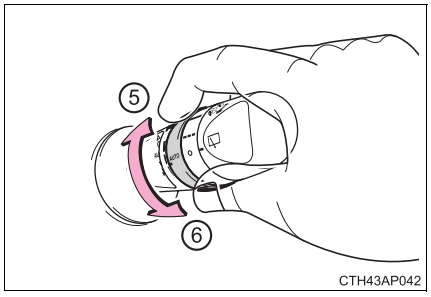
④ △ Temporary operation



When “AUTO” is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted as follows by turning the switch ring.

⑤ Increases the rain-sensing windshield wiper sensitivity

⑥ Decreases the rain-sensing windshield wiper sensitivity

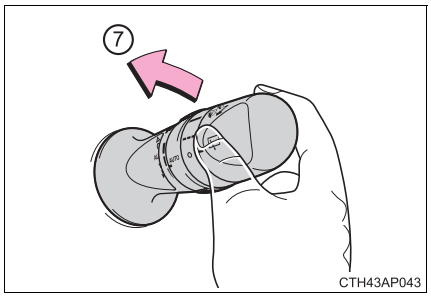


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 233 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⑦ Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



■ **The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in the “ON” position.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

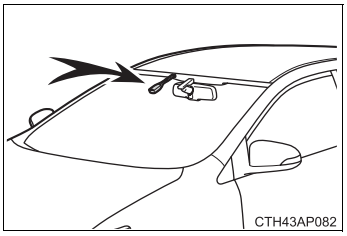
■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Even when the wipers are not in “AUTO” mode, wiper operation varies depending on vehicle speed when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs).

■ **Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper switch is turned to the “AUTO” position while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wiper will operate once to show that “AUTO” mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than “AUTO”.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 234 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in “AUTO” mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in “AUTO” mode. Take care that your fingers etc. do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 235 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

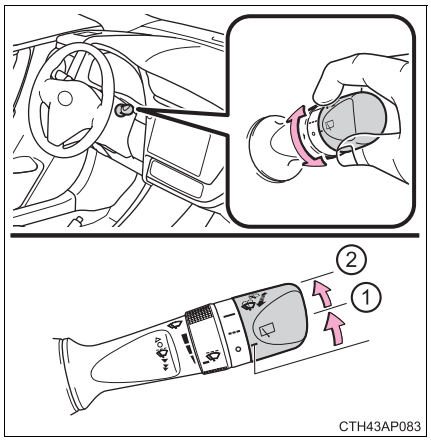
Rear window wiper and washer

Operating instructions

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows:

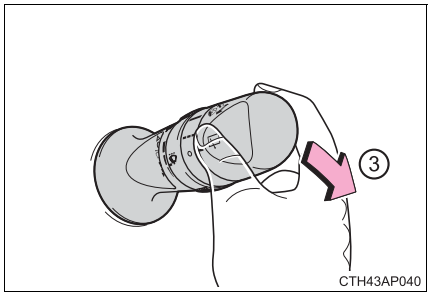
① ▬▬ Intermittent window wiper operation

② ▬ Normal window wiper operation



③ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wiper will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



■ The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in the “ON” position.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 236 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

When the rear window is dry

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 237 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the engine switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

▶ Gasoline engine

EU area:
Unleaded gasoline confirming to European standard EN228, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher

Except EU area:
Unleaded gasoline, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher

▶ Diesel engine

EU area:
Diesel fuel conforming to European standard EN590

Except EU area:
Diesel fuel that contains 50 ppm or less of sulfur and has a cetane number of 48 or higher

Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Toyota allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 238 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

⚠ NOTICE

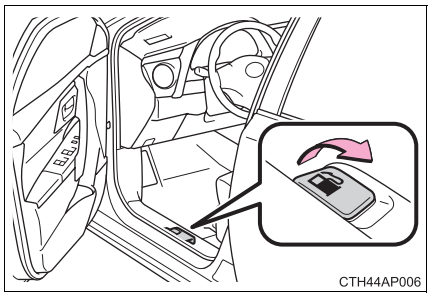
■Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

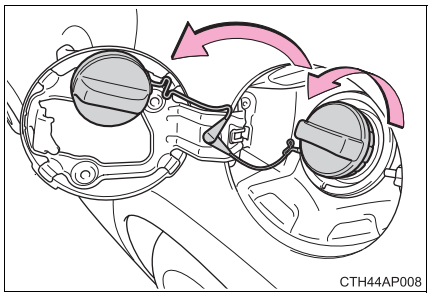
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 239 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Opening the fuel tank cap

1 Pull up the opener to open the fuel filler door.

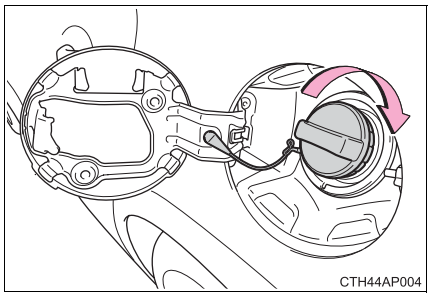


2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to remove it and hang it on the back of the fuel filler door.



Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Toyota fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 240 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Toyota Safety Sense*

The Toyota Safety Sense system consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience.

◆ PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)

→P. 244

◆ LDA (Lane Departure Alert)

→P. 252

◆ Automatic High Beam

→P. 258

◆ RSA (Road Sign Assist)

→P. 262

*: If equipped

Vehicle data recordings

The pre-crash safety system is equipped with a sophisticated computer that will record certain data, such as:

- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the pre-crash safety system functions
- Information (such as the distance and relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead or another object)

The pre-crash safety system does not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

● Data usage

Toyota may use the data recorded in these computers to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Toyota will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

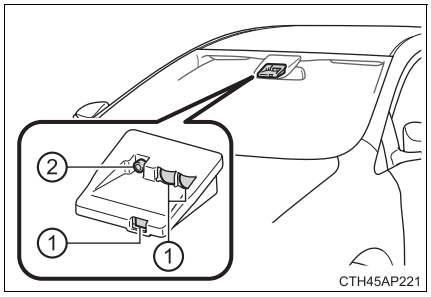
- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Toyota in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Front sensor

The front sensor is located on the upper side of the windshield. It consists of 2 types of sensors, each of which detects information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.

① Laser sensors

② Monocular camera sensor



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 242 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Front sensor

→P. 639

NOTICE

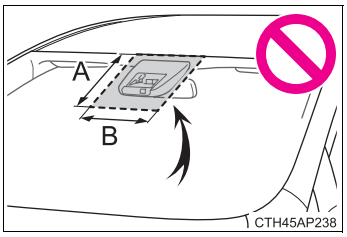
■Front sensor

Observe the following to ensure that the sensor operates correctly:

- Do not attach stickers, including transparent stickers, or other items to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front sensor (shaded area in the illustration).

  A: From the top of the windshield to approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) below the bottom of the front sensor

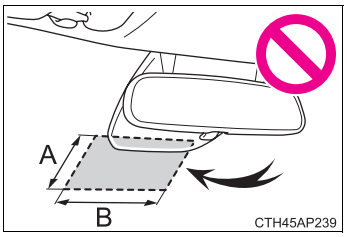
  B: Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) to the right and left from the center of the front sensor)



- Do not install or attach anything to the inner side of the windshield under the front sensor (shaded area in the illustration).

  A: Approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) (Starting from the bottom of the front sensor)

  B: Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) to the right and left from the center of the front sensor)



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 243 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.
- If the part of the windshield in front of the front sensor is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice.
- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  The pre-crash safety system may not function properly if the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc.
  If the inner side of the windshield where the front sensor is installed is dirty, do not attempt to remove the front sensor. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not install an antenna in front of the sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the sensor.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the sensor.
- Do not damage or let the lenses of the front sensor get dirty.
  When cleaning the inner side of the windshield, do not let glass cleaner contact the lenses. Also, do not touch the lenses.
  For proper care of the lenses of the front sensor, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the sensor or remove it. The direction of the sensor is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the sensor to strong impact or disassemble it.
- Do not install an electronic device or device that emits strong electric waves near the front sensor.
- Do not place reflective objects on top of the instrument panel.

PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)*

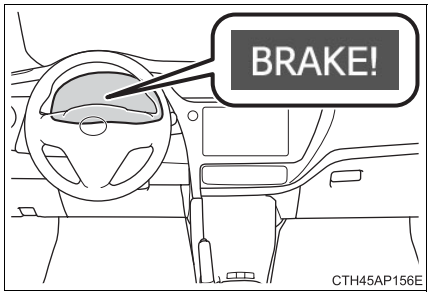
The pre-crash safety system uses the front sensor to detect vehicles in front of your vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, pre-crash warning urges the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure will be increased to help the driver avoid the collision.

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact to the vehicle occupants and the vehicle in the collision.

The pre-crash warning timing can be changed or the system can be enabled/disabled, as necessary, by operating the switch. (→P. 245)

◆ Pre-crash warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



◆ Pre-crash brake assist

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 245 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

◆ Pre-crash braking

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, the system warns the driver. If the system determines that the possibility of a collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the collision speed.

Changing the pre-crash safety system

■ Changing the pre-crash warning timing

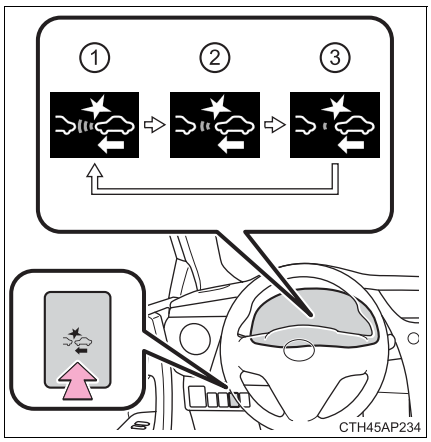
Each time the PCS switch is pressed, the warning timing changes as follows:

① Far (operation starts earlier)

② Middle (default setting)

③ Near (operation starts later)

When the PCS switch is pressed to turn the system on, the current warning timing will be displayed on the multi-information display.



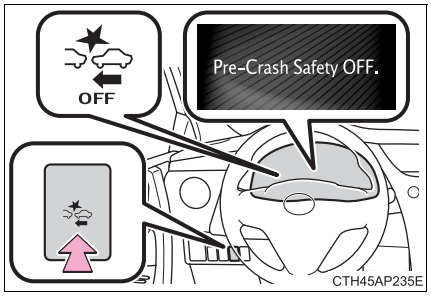
■ Disabling the pre-crash safety system

Press the PCS switch for 3 seconds or more.

The PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

To enable the system, press the PCS switch again.

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: The system is enabled each time the engine switch is turned to the “ON” position.



Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: The system is enabled each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 246 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Operational conditions**

The pre-crash safety system is enabled and determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle (except motorcycles and bicycles) is high.

● Pre-crash warning:

- Vehicle speed is approximately 15 to 140 km/h (10 to 86 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is greater than approximately 15 km/h (10 mph).

● Pre-crash brake assist:

- Vehicle speed is approximately 30 to 80 km/h (19 to 49 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is greater than approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

● Pre-crash braking:

- Vehicle speed is approximately 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 49 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is greater than approximately 10 km/h (7 mph).

The system may not operate in the following situations:

● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time

● If VSC is disabled (only the pre-crash warning function will be operational)

● If the PCS warning light is flashing or illuminated

■ **Cancelation of the pre-crash braking**

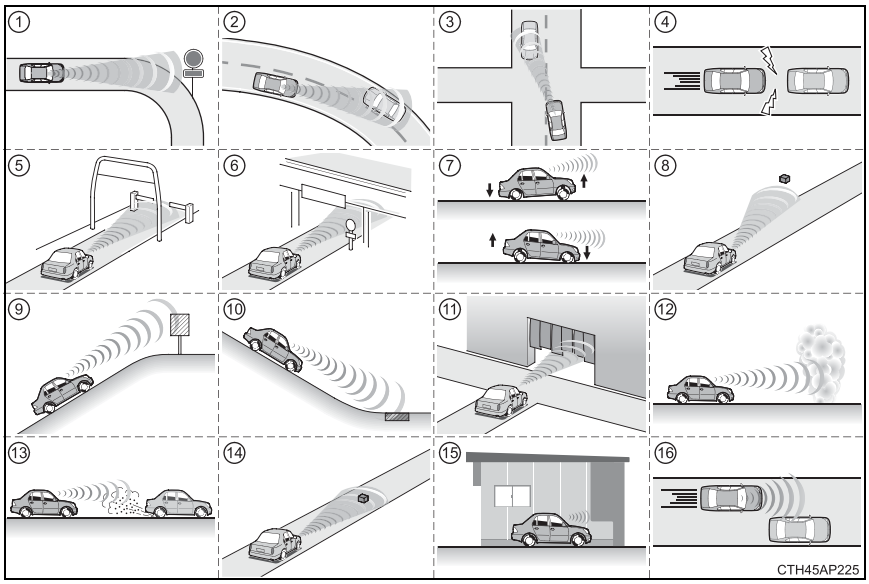
● If either of the following situations occur while the pre-crash braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

● If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-crash braking function, the operation of the pre-crash braking function will be canceled after the vehicle has been stopped for approximately 2 seconds.

■ **Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

In the following situations the sensor may detect an object, causing the system to determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.



① When there is an object (traffic sign, guard rail, etc.) by the roadside at the entrance of a curve

② When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve

③ When passing an oncoming vehicle while making a left or right turn

④ When rapidly closing on a preceding vehicle

⑤ When rapidly closing on an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes

⑥ When approaching an overpass, traffic sign, billboard, etc.

⑦ When the front part of the vehicle is raised or lowered

⑧ When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.

⑨ When there is a structural object (billboard, street light, etc.) at the top of an uphill road

⑩ When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.) at the bottom of a downhill road

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 248 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⑪ When approaching a low hanging object that may contact the vehicle, such as a banner or tree branches

⑫ When driving through dense fog or smoke

⑬ When the vehicle is hit by water or snow from a preceding vehicle, etc.

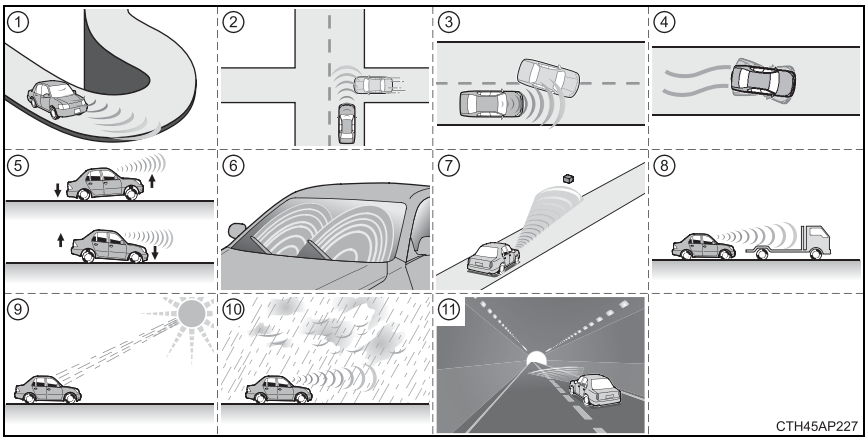
⑭ When there is a reflective object, bump, protrusion, etc. on the road surface

⑮ When the vehicle is being parked in a place where there is a low hanging object at the height of the front sensor

⑯ When passing extremely close to an object (stopped vehicle, guardrail, etc.)

■ Situations in which the pre-crash safety system may not function properly

The system may not function properly in the following situations:



① When driving on roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces

② If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection

③ If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle

④ If your vehicle is skidding

⑤ When the front part of the vehicle is raised or lowered

⑥ When the windshield is dirty or covered with raindrops, condensation, ice, snow, etc.

⑦ When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.

⑧ When a preceding vehicle is a poor reflector of laser (the rear part of the vehicle lowered, very dirty, etc.)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 249 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⑨ When a very bright light, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front sensor

⑩ When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sand storm

⑪ When the surrounding area is dark, such as while in a tunnel or during nighttime

■ **If the PCS warning light flashes and a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

The pre-crash safety system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

- In the following situations, the warning light and message will be cleared and the system will become operational when normal operating conditions return:
  - When the area around the front sensor is hot, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun
  - When the windshield is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice
  - If the area in front of the front sensor is obstructed, such as when the hood is open
- If the PCS warning light continues to flash or the warning message is not cleared, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **If TRC and VSC are disabled**

- If TRC and VSC are disabled (→P. 315), the pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking functions are also disabled. However, the pre-crash warning function will still operate.
- The PCS warning light illuminates and “Pre-Crash Brake is disabled due to VSC OFF.” is displayed on the multi-information display.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 250 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ **Limitations of the pre-crash safety system**

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

  Do not use the pre-crash safety system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen damage or injuries in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

  Although this system is designed to help avoid and reduce the impact of a collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions (→P. 246). As a result, the system may not always provide the same level of performance.

- The pre-crash braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-crash braking function from operating.
- In some situations, while the pre-crash braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- A large amount of braking force is applied while the pre-crash braking function is operating. Additionally, as the vehicle may creep after the pre-crash braking function has operated, the driver should depress the brake pedal as necessary.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 251 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Cautions regarding the assist functions of the system

By means of warnings and brake control, the pre-crash safety system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-crash safety system is only able to detect vehicles directly in front of your vehicle, and only within a limited range. It does not allow for careless or inattentive driving, and is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgement
  When attempting to estimate the possibility of a collision, the only data available to the pre-crash safety system is that from vehicles it has detected directly in front of your vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking functions are designed to help avoid a collision or reduce the severity of a collision, as such they only operate when the system has determined that the possibility of a collision is high. This system is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely, without appropriate operations being performed by the driver. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

NOTICE

■To avoid malfunction of the system

In the following situations, disable the pre-crash safety system. The system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision.

- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When transporting the vehicle via boat, truck, or similar means of transportation
- When the front part of the vehicle is raised or lowered, such as if tires of a different size than specified are used or if the suspension components are modified
- When the vehicle is being towed

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 252 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

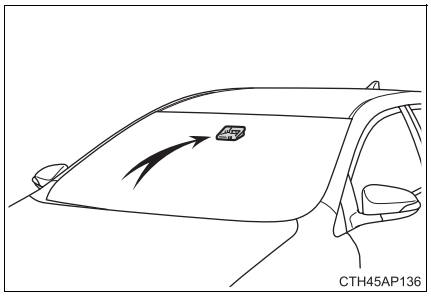
LDA (Lane Departure Alert)*

Summary of function

While driving on a road that has lane markers, this system recognizes the lane markers using a camera as a sensor to alert the driver when the vehicle deviates from its lane.

If the system judges that the vehicle has deviated from its lane, it alerts the driver using a buzzer and indications on the multi-information display.

Front sensor


CTH45AP136

Lane departure alert function

When the system judges that the vehicle is deviating from the current lane, an alert buzzer will sound and the lane line on the side the vehicle is deviating from will flash on the multi-information display.


CTH45AP203

When the alert buzzer sounds, check the surrounding conditions and operate the steering wheel to safely center the vehicle between the white (yellow) lane markers.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 253 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

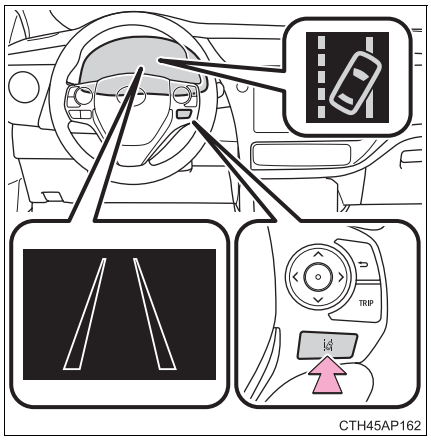
Turning the LDA system on

Press the LDA switch to activate the system.

The LDA indicator will come on.

Press the switch again to turn the LDA system off.

The LDA system will remain on or off even if the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



Operating conditions

- When the vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more
- When the lane width is more than approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.)
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 150 m (492 ft.)

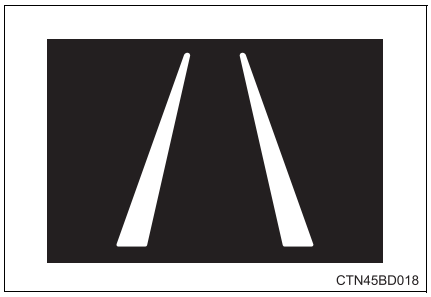
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 254 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Indication on the multi-information display

When the inside of both lane lines turn white:

Indicates that both right and left lane markers are recognized.

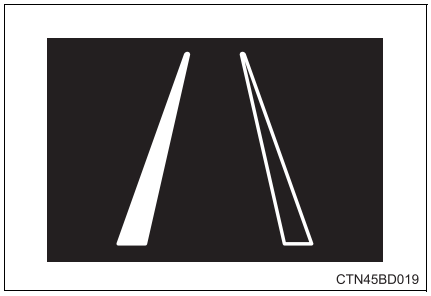
If the vehicle deviates from the lane, the lane line on the side the vehicle has deviated from will flash in yellow.


CTN45BD018

When the inside of either lane line turns white:

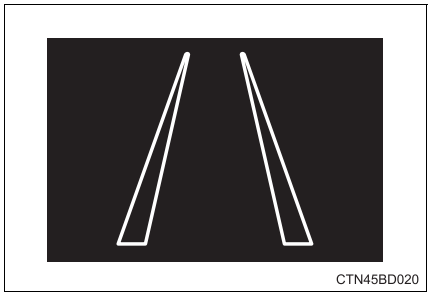
Indicates that the lane marker on the white-marked side is recognized.

If the vehicle deviates from the side of a lane with recognized lane markers, the lane line will flash in yellow.


CTN45BD019

When the inside of both lane lines are black:

Indicates that no lane markers are recognized or the LDA system is temporarily canceled.


CTN45BD020

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 255 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If "Check LDA system." is displayed on the multi-information display**

If the LDA indicator does not come on when the LDA switch is pressed to turn the system on, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Temporary cancelation of the LDA system functions**

If any of the following occurs, the LDA system functions will be temporarily canceled. The functions will resume after the necessary operating conditions have returned.

- The turn signal lever is operated.
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LDA system functions.
- When the lane lines cannot be recognized while driving.
- When the lane departure warning sounds.
  The lane departure warning function will not operate again for a several seconds after it has been activated, even if the vehicle leaves the lane again.

■ **The lane departure warning**

Depending on the audio system sound level or air conditioning fan noise while the audio system or air conditioning system is in use, it may be difficult to hear the warning sound.

■ **After the vehicle has been parked in the sun**

The LDA system may not be available and a warning message may be displayed for a while after starting off. When the temperature in the cabin decreases and the temperature around the front sensor (→P. 252) becomes suitable for its operation, the system will begin to operate.

■ **If there are lane markers on only one side of the vehicle**

The lane departure warning will not operate for the side on which lane markers could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly**

In the following situations, the front sensor may be unable to recognize lane markers causing the lane departure warning function to operate incorrectly. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- When driving through an area, such as a tollbooth, a crossing or before a ticket checkpoint
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When lane markers are extremely narrow or extremely wide
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short
- When the lane markers are yellow (These may be more difficult for the system to recognize compared to white markers.)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 256 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

- When the lane markers are broken, Botts' dots (raised pavement markers) or stones
- When the lane markers are on a curb etc.
- When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the front sensor
- When driving on roads that are branching or merging
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement
- When headlight brightness at nighttime is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are uneven
- When driving on rough or unpaved roads

■ **When changing the tires**

Depending on the tires used, sufficient performance may not be maintainable.

■ **Warning messages for the LDA system**

Warning messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving.

WARNING

■ Before using the LDA system

Do not rely solely on the LDA system. The LDA system does not drive the vehicle automatically, nor does it reduce the amount of care you need to take. As such, the driver must always assume full responsibility for understanding his/her surroundings, for operating the steering wheel to correct the driving line, and for driving safely.

Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an accident.

■ To avoid operating the LDA by mistake

Switch the LDA system off using the LDA switch when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for LDA system

Do not use the LDA system in any of the following situations.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with tire chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers (such as guardrails, a curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- When driving on snowy roads
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, sand, dirt, etc.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to or incorrect operation of the LDA system

- Do not modify the headlights or attach stickers to the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension. If your suspension needs repairs, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or the grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 258 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

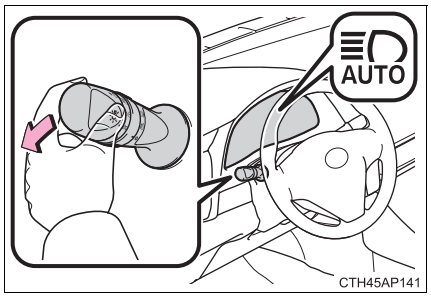
Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle front sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in **AUTO** position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.



High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on:

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 259 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

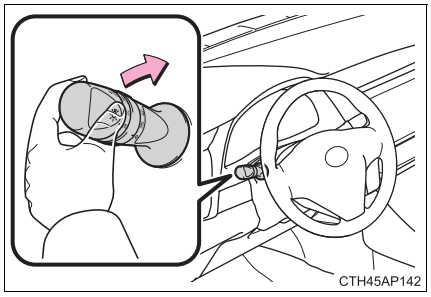
Turning the high beam on/off manually

■ Switching to low beam

Pull the lever to original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

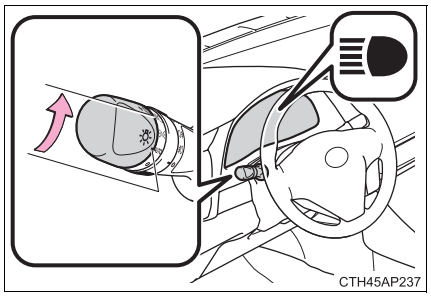
Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



■ Switching to high beam

Turn the light switch to position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.



■ The Automatic High Beam can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Front sensor detection information

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another
  - When oncoming or preceding vehicles are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 260 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - The movement and direction of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle only has operational lights on one side
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.
- In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.
  - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
  - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
  - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
  - The front sensor is deformed or dirty.
  - The front sensor temperature is extremely high.
  - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
  - Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or are not aimed properly.
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
  - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks, etc.).
  - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
  - There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
  - The back of a vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
  - The vehicle’s headlights are damaged or dirty.
  - The vehicle is listing or titling, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
  - The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

WARNING

Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

NOTICE

Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.

RSA (Road Sign Assist)*

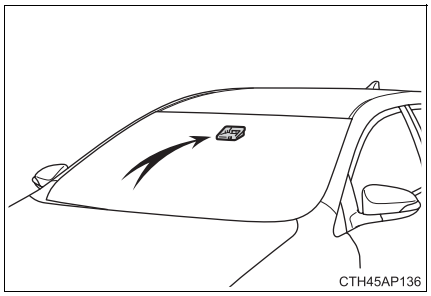
Summary of function

RSA recognizes specific road signs using the front sensor and provides information to the driver via the multi-information display.

If the system judges that the vehicle is being driven over the speed limit, performing prohibited actions, etc., in relation to the recognized road signs, it alerts the driver using a warning display and warning buzzer*.

*: This setting needs to be customized.

Front sensor



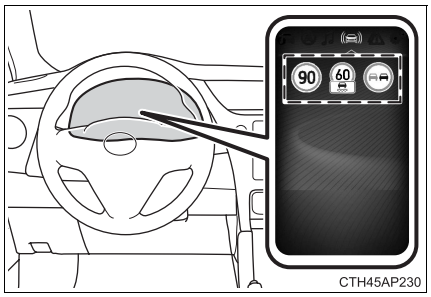
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 263 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Indication on the multi-information display

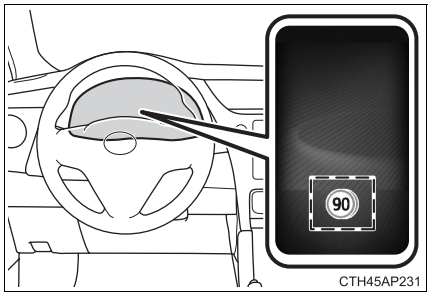
After the front sensor recognizes a sign, it is displayed on the multi-information display when the vehicle passes the sign.

- When the driving assist system information is selected, a maximum of 3 signs can be displayed. (→P. 102)



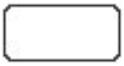
- When other than the driving assist system information is selected, a speed limit sign or an all canceled sign can be displayed. (→P. 102)

  A no overtaking sign and a speed limit sign with supplemental mark are not displayed. However, if signs other than speed limit signs are recognized, they are mentioned in a stack under the current speed limit sign.



Types of recognized road signs

The following types of road signs, including electronic signs and blinking signs, are recognized.

Type		Multi-information display
Speed limit begins/ends		
Speed limit with supplemental mark (Displayed simultaneously with speed limit)  (Display example)	Rain	
	Ice	
	On/off ramp*	
	Supplemental mark exists (Contents not recognized)	
No overtaking begins/ends		
All canceled (All restrictions canceled. Returns to default road regulation.)		

*: If the turn signal indicator is not operated when changing lanes, the mark does not display.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 265 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Warning display

In the following situations, the RSA system alerts the driver using a warning display.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds the speed warning threshold applied to the speed limit of the sign displayed on the multi-information display, the sign color becomes inverted.
- If it is detected that your vehicle is overtaking when a no overtaking sign is displayed on the multi-information display, the sign flashes.

Automatic turn-off of RSA sign display

One or more signs automatically turn off in the following situations.

- A new sign is not recognized for a certain distance.
- The road changes due to a left or right turn, etc.

Conditions in which the function may not operate or detect correctly

In the following situations, RSA does not operate normally and may not recognize signs, display the incorrect sign, etc. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- The front sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.
- Dirt, snow, stickers, etc., are on the windshield near the front sensor.
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- Light from an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc., enters the front sensor.
- The sign is small, dirty, faded, tilted or bent, and if an electronic sign, the contrast is poor.
- All or part of the sign is hidden by the leaves of a tree, a pole, etc.
- The sign is only visible to the front sensor for a short amount of time.
- The driving scene (turning, lane change, etc.) is judged incorrectly.
- Even if it is a sign not appropriate for the currently traveled lane, such a sign exists directly after a freeway branches, or in an adjacent lane just before merging.
- Stickers are attached to the rear of the preceding vehicle.
- A sign resembling a system compatible sign is recognized.
- The vehicle is driven in a country with a different direction of traffic.
- Side road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the front sensor) while the vehicle is traveling on the main road.
- Roundabout exit road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the front sensor) while traveling on a roundabout.
- The speed information displayed on the meter and that displayed on the Navigation system (if equipped) may be different due to the Navigation system using map data.

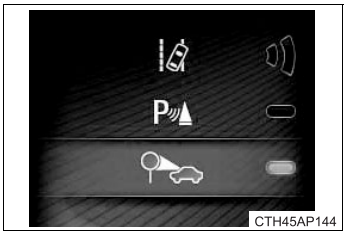
■ **When driving vehicle in country with different speed unit**

Since RSA recognizes signs based on the set unit of the meter, it is necessary to change the set unit of the meter. Adjust the set unit of the meter to the speed unit of signs in the current location. (→P. 608)

■ **Turning the system on/off**

1 Select on the settings display (→P. 108)

2 Press the enter/set switch on the meter control switches.



■ **Speed limit sign display**

If the engine switch was last turned off while a speed limit sign was displayed on the multi-information display, the same sign displays again when the engine switch is turned to “ON” position (vehicles without smart entry & start system) or IGNITION ON mode (vehicles with smart entry & start system).

■ **When “Check RSA system.” is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Customization**

The settings for warning display, warning buzzer*, speeding warning threshold, etc., can be changed. (Customizable feature: →P. 608)

*: If a speed limit with supplemental mark is exceeded, the warning buzzer does not operate.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Before using the RSA**

Do not rely solely upon the RSA system. RSA is a system which supports the driver by providing information, but it is not a replacement for a driver’s own vision and awareness. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to the traffic rules.

Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an unexpected accident.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 267 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Stop & Start system (Smart Stop)*

The Stop & Start system stops and restarts the engine according to the brake pedal or shift lever operation (vehicles with a Multidrive), or clutch pedal operation (vehicles with a manual transmission) when the vehicle is stopped.

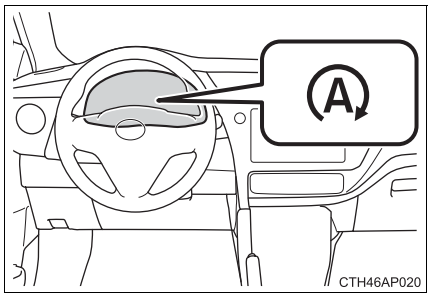
Stop & Start system operation (vehicles with a Multidrive)

◆ When the shift lever is in D or M

■ Stopping the engine

While driving with the shift lever in D or M, depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.



■ Restarting the engine

Release the brake pedal.

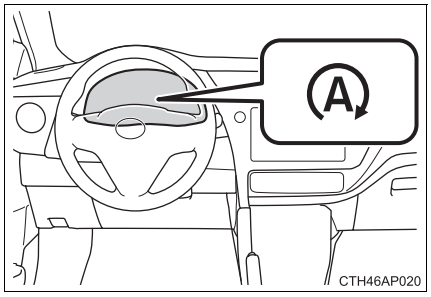
The Stop & Start indicator will turn off.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 268 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

◆ When the shift lever is shifted to P or N

■ Stopping the engine



1 Depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 213)

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.

If the shift lever is shifted to P or N from D or M while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will remain stopped.

■ Restarting the engine

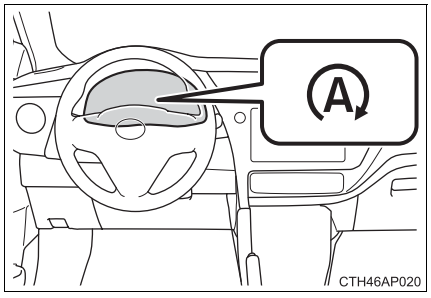
Shift the shift lever to D, M, or R. (→P. 213)

Depress the brake pedal while shifting the shift lever.

The Stop & Start indicator will turn off.

Stop & Start system operation (vehicles with a manual transmission)

■ Stopping the engine



1 With the clutch pedal fully depressed, depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N (→P. 218), and release the clutch pedal.

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.

■ Restarting the engine

Check that the shift lever is in N and depress the clutch pedal.

The Stop & Start indicator will turn off.

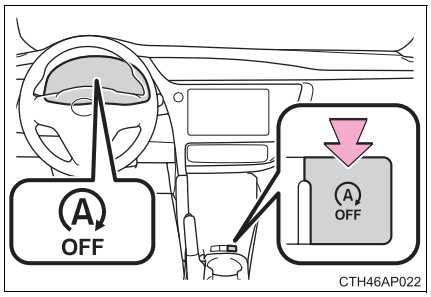
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 269 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Disabling the Stop & Start system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on.

Pressing the switch again will enable the Stop & Start system and the Stop & Start cancel indicator will turn off.



■ Automatic reactivation of the Stop & Start system

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

Even if the Stop & Start system is disabled by the Stop & Start cancel switch, it will be automatically re-enabled once the engine switch is turned to the “LOCK” position then to the “START” position.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

Even if the Stop & Start system is disabled by the Stop & Start cancel switch, it will be automatically re-enabled once the engine switch is turned off, and then the engine is started.

■ If the Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed while the vehicle is stopped

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will restart the engine.
  From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after Stop & Start system has been turned off), the engine will not be stopped.
- With the Stop & Start system disabled, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will re-enable the system but not stop the engine.
  From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after Stop & Start system has been turned on), the engine will be stopped.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 270 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Hill-start assist control (vehicles with a Multidrive)

After the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system when the vehicle is on an incline, brake force is temporarily maintained to prevent rolling backwards until the engine is restarted and drive force is generated.

When drive force is generated, the maintained brake force is automatically canceled.

- This function operates on flat surfaces as well as steep inclines.
- Sound may be generated from the brakes, but this is not a malfunction.
- Brake pedal response may change and vibration may occur, but these are not malfunctions.

Operating conditions

- The Stop & Start system is operational when all of the following conditions are met:
  - Vehicles with a Multidrive: The brake pedal is being depressed firmly.
  - Vehicles with a Multidrive: The shift lever is in a position other than R.
  -  is off.
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened.
  - The engine is adequately warmed up.
  - The driver's door is closed.
  - Vehicles with a Multidrive: The accelerator pedal is not being depressed.
  - Vehicles with a manual transmission: The clutch pedal is not being depressed.
  - The outside temperature is -5°C (23°F) or higher.
  - Vehicles with a manual transmission: The shift lever is in N.
  - The hood is closed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 271 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● In the following situations the engine may not be stopped by the Stop & Start system. This is not a malfunction of the Stop & Start system.

- The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.
- The battery is not sufficiently charged or is undergoing a periodic recharge.
- The brake booster vacuum is low.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The steering wheel is being operated.
- Due to traffic or other circumstances the vehicle is stopped repeatedly.
- The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.
- Engine coolant temperature or transmission fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- The battery fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- The battery was recently replaced or the battery terminals were recently disconnected.
- Vehicles with a power heater: The power heater is being used.

● In the following situations, the engine will restart automatically if the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system. (To enable stopping of the engine by the Stop & Start system, drive the vehicle.)

- The air conditioning system is turned on.
-  is turned on.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: The shift lever is shifted to R from D or M.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: The shift lever is shifted to D, M or R from P or N.
- The driver’s seat belt is unfastened.
- The driver’s door is opened.
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed.
- The vehicle starts to roll on an incline.
- Vehicles with a power heater: The power heater is turned on.

● In the following situations, the engine may restart automatically if the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system. (To enable stopping of the engine by the Stop & Start system, drive the vehicle.)

- The brake pedal is pumped or strongly depressed.
- The air conditioning system is being used.
- The battery is not sufficiently charged.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 272 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Hood**

- Vehicles with a Multidrive: If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system with the shift lever in D or M, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P. 199, 203)
- Vehicles with a Multidrive: If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system with the shift lever in P or N, the engine will be restarted automatically.
- Vehicles with a manual transmission: If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P. 199, 203)
- If the hood is closed after the engine is started with the hood open, the Stop & Start system will not operate. Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

■ **When to use the Stop & Start system**

- Vehicles with a manual transmission: If the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system and the shift lever is shifted into a position other than N with the clutch pedal released, a buzzer will sound and Stop & Start indicator will flash. This indicates that the engine is only stopped by the Stop & Start system, not that the engine has been turned off completely.
- Use the Stop & Start system when stopping the vehicle temporarily at red lights, intersections, etc. When stopping the vehicle for a longer period of time, stop the engine completely.
- When the system does not operate, is canceled, or is malfunctioning, warning messages (vehicles with a 2-ring meter only) and a warning buzzer are used to inform the driver. (→P. 275)
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: If the engine switch is pressed when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P. 199, 203)
- When the engine is restarted by the Stop & Start system, the power outlet may be temporarily unusable, but this is not a malfunction.
- Installation and removal of electrical components and wireless devices may affect the Stop & Start system. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 273 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If the windshield is fogged up while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

Turn  on. (The engine will start due to the automatic engine start function.): →P. 395

If the windshield fogs up frequently, press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the system.

■ **Air conditioning system while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

While the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the air conditioning system (cooling, heating and dehumidifying functions) is canceled and will only blow air or will stop blowing air. In order to prevent the air conditioning system from being canceled, disable the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch.

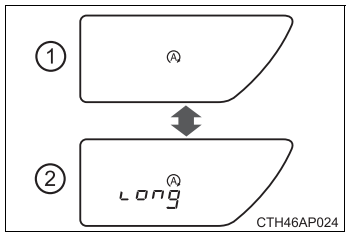
■ **Changing the idling stop time with the air conditioning system on**

The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is on can be changed by performing the following operation. (The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is off cannot be changed.)

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

● Setting by pressing and holding the Stop & Start cancel switch

Each time the Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed and held for 3 seconds or more, the length of the operation time will be changed. The current setting will be displayed on the multi-information display.



① Standard

② Extended

▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

● Setting by pressing and holding the Stop & Start cancel switch
Each time the Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed and held for 3 seconds or more, the system switches between standard and extended. The system status can be confirmed on the multi-information display  (Settings display) screen. (→P. 108)

● Settings from the  (Settings display) screen of the multi-information display
→P. 108

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 274 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **The Stop & Start system protection function**

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: When an excessively loud sound is being projected by the audio system, the audio system may be automatically cut off in order to reduce battery consumption. If it occurs, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or longer and then turn it to “ACC” or “ON” position to re-enable the audio system.
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: When an excessively loud sound is being projected by the audio system, the audio system may be automatically cut off in order to reduce battery consumption. If it occurs, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or longer and then turn it to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode to re-enable the audio system.
- The audio system may not be activated when the battery terminals are disconnected and then reconnected. If it occurs, turn the engine switch off and then repeat the following operation twice to activate the audio system normally.
  - Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to “ON” position and then to OFF.
  - Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then to OFF.

■ **Replacing the battery**

→P. 576

■ **Displaying the Stop & Start system status**

→P. 106

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 275 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Multi-information display messages (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)**

If the following situations,  and a message may be displayed on the multi-information display.

●When the engine cannot be stopped by the Stop & Start system

Message	Details
 “Depress brake firmly to activate.”	**The brake pedal is not depressed enough.** If the brake pedal is depressed further, the system will operate.
 “For climate control.”	• **The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.** If the difference between the set temperature and cabin temperature is small, the system will be enabled. •  **is ON.**

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 276 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Message	Details
 “Battery charging.”	• **The battery charge amount may be low.** Engine stop is temporarily prohibited to prioritize charging of the battery, but if the engine is operated for a short while, engine stop is allowed. • **A refresh charge may be occurring (Examples: A short time after replacing the battery, removing battery terminals, etc.)** After a refresh charge of approximately 5 to 40 minutes completes, the system can be operated. • **The engine may have been started with the hood opened.** Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait for a short while, and then start the engine. • **The battery may be cold.** Operating the engine for a short while allows the system to recover due to the temperature increase in the engine compartment. • **The battery may be extremely hot.** If the engine is stopped and the engine compartment is allowed to cool sufficiently, the system recovers.
 “For brake system.”	• **The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.** • **The brake booster vacuum is low.** When the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level, the system will be enabled.
 “Bonnet open.”	**The engine has been started with the hood opened.** To enable the system, close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait for a short while, and then start the engine.
 “Driver seat belt unbuckled.”	**The driver seat belt is not fastened.**

Message	Details
 “Non-dedicated battery.” (8NR-FTS engine only)	**A non-dedicated battery for the Stop & Start system may have been installed.** The Stop & Start system does not operate. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

● When the engine automatically restarts while stopped by the Stop & Start system

Message	Details
 “For climate control.”	• **The air conditioning system has been turned on or is being used.** •  **has been turned on.**
 “For brake system.”	**The brake pedal has been depressed further or pumped.** The system will be enabled after the engine runs and the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level.
 “Battery charging.”	**The battery charge amount may be low.** The engine is restarted to prioritize battery charging. Operating the engine for a short while allows the system to recover.
 “Steering wheel turned.”	**The steering wheel was operated.**
 “Bonnet open.”	**The hood has been opened.**
 “Driver seat belt unbuckled.”	**The driver seat belt has been unfastened.**

● Vehicles with a manual transmission: When the engine cannot be restarted by the Stop & Start system

Message	Details
 “Stop & Start system active. Shift to N and depress clutch to restart.”	**The shift lever has been shifted from N to another position with the clutch pedal released.** To restart the engine, shift the shift lever to N and then depress the clutch pedal.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 278 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If “Stop & Start system malfunction. Inspect at dealer.” is displayed on the multi-information display (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If the Stop & Start cancel indicator continues to flash**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the Stop & Start system is operating**

- Vehicles with a Multidrive: Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when necessary while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on).
- Vehicles with a manual transmission: Keep the shift lever in N and depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on).
- Do not allow anyone to leave the vehicle while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on).
  An accident may occur due to the automatic engine start function.
- Ensure that the engine is not stopped by the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area. The engine may restart due to the automatic engine start function, causing exhaust gases to collect and enter the vehicle, possibly resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 279 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■To ensure the system operates correctly

If any of the following situations occur, the Stop & Start system may not operate correctly. Have your vehicle checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- While the driver's seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light flashes.
- Even though the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light does not illuminate.
- Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: Even though the driver's door is closed, the open door warning light is illuminated or the interior light is illuminated when the interior light switch is in the door position.
- Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: Even though the driver's door is closed, the open door warning is displayed on the multi-information display or the interior light is illuminated when the interior light switch is in the door position.
- Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: Even though the driver's door is open, the open door warning light does not illuminate or the interior light does not illuminate when the interior light switch is in the door position.
- Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: Even though the driver's door is open, the open door warning is not displayed on the multi-information display or the interior light does not illuminate when the interior light switch is in the door position.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 280 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

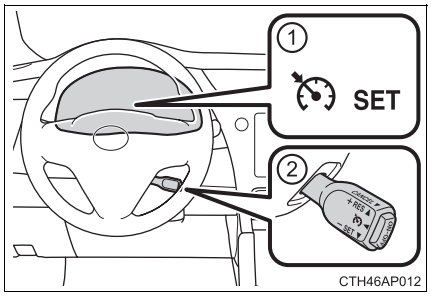
Cruise control*

Summary of functions

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without operating the accelerator pedal.

① Indicators

② Cruise control switch



*: If equipped

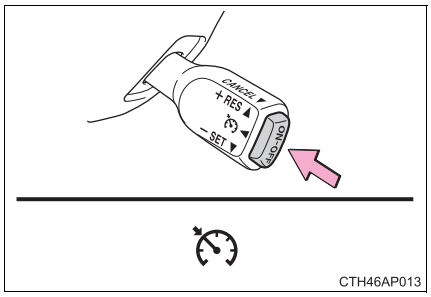
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 281 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

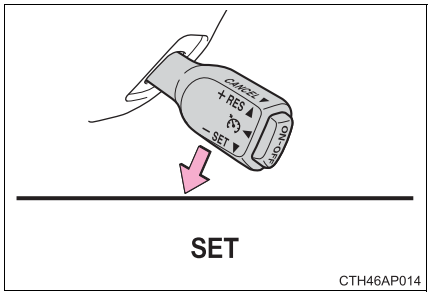


CTH46AP013

2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control “SET” indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



CTH46AP014

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 282 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Adjusting the set speed

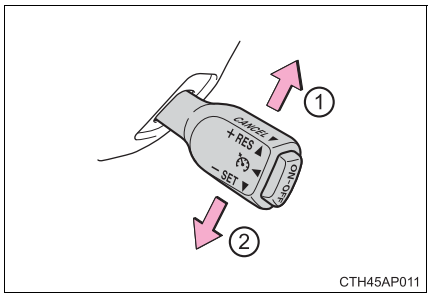
To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.

① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.



CTH45AP011

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated.

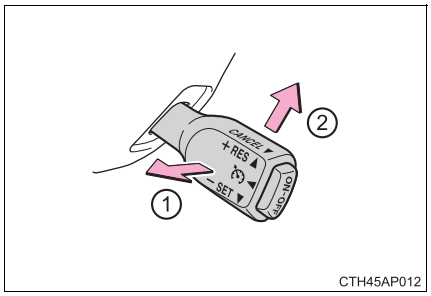
Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal or clutch pedal (manual transmission only) is depressed.

② Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.



CTH45AP012

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 283 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

▶ Vehicles with a Multidrive

- The shift lever is in the D or range 4 or higher of M has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

▶ Vehicles with a manual transmission

Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated by operating accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- Speed limiter is activated. (if equipped)

■ **If the cruise control indicator light comes on in yellow (vehicles with a 3-ring meter) or "Check cruise control system." is displayed on the multi-information display (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)**

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 284 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

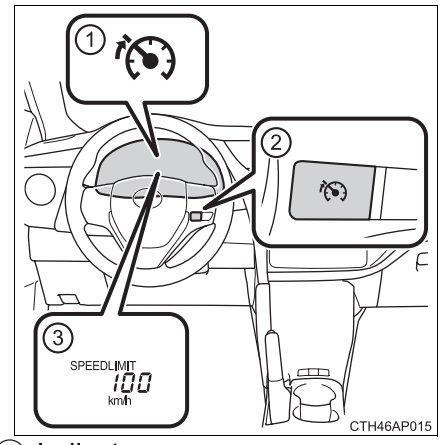
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Speed limiter*

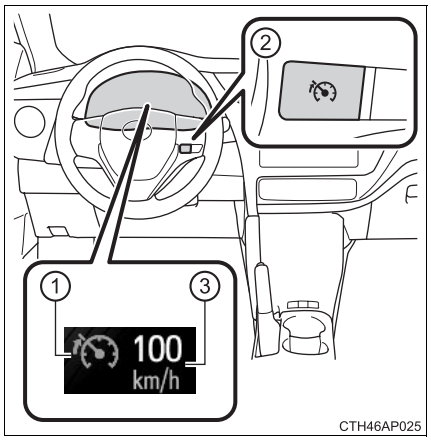
Summary of functions

A desired maximum speed can be set using the cruise control switch. The speed limiter prevents vehicle speed from exceeding the set speed.

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter



▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter



① Indicator
② Speed limiter switch
③ Set speed

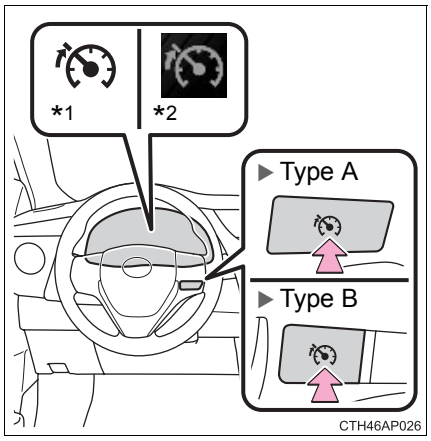
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 286 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Setting the vehicle speed

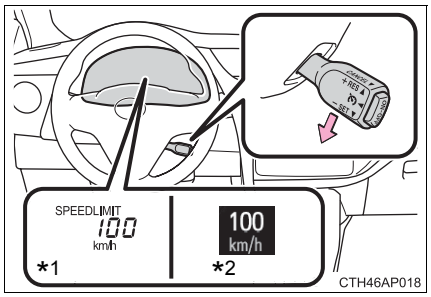
1 Turn the speed limiter switch on.

Press the switch once more to deactivate the speed limiter.



2 Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and push the lever down to set the desired maximum speed.

If the lever is pushed down while the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h (20 mph), the set speed will be 30 km/h (20 mph).



*1: Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

*2: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

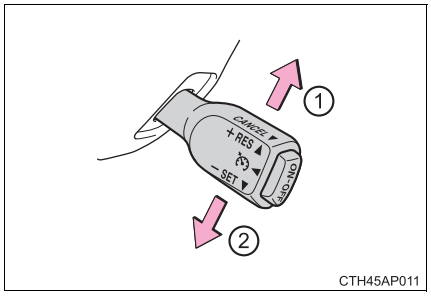
Adjusting the set speed

① Increase speed

② Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.

Fine adjustment of the set speed can be made by lightly pushing the lever up or down and releasing it.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 287 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

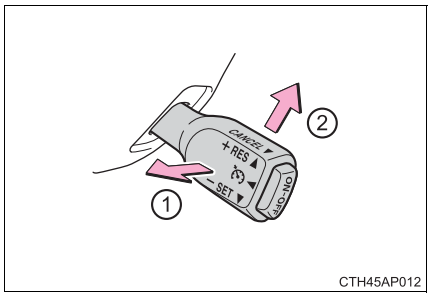
Canceling and resuming the speed limiter

① Cancel

Pull the lever towards you to cancel the speed limiter.

② Resume

To resume use of the speed limiter, push the lever up.



CTH45AP012

■ Exceeding the set speed

In the following situations, the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed and display characters will flash:

- When fully depressing the accelerator pedal
- When driving down a slope

■ Automatic speed limiter cancelation

The speed limiter is automatically canceled in any of the following situations:

- Cruise control is activated.
- 8NR-FTS engine only: When the VSC system and/or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

■ If the speed limiter indicator comes on in yellow (vehicles with a 3-ring meter) or “Check speed limiter system.” is displayed on the multi-information display (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)

Stop the engine and then restart the engine. After restarting the engine, set the speed limiter. If the speed limiter cannot be set, there may be a malfunction in the speed limiter. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 288 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■ **To avoid operating the speed limiter by mistake**

Keep the speed limiter button off when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for speed limiter**

Do not use speed limiter in either of the following situations.
Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer

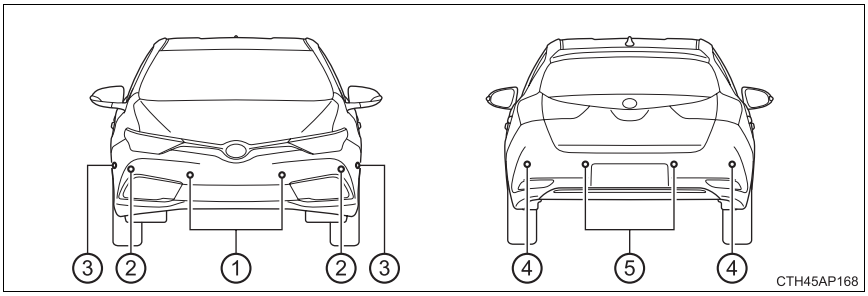
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 289 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Toyota parking assist-sensor*

Vehicles without a navigation/multimedia system:
The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system:
Refer to the “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

■ Types of sensors



① Front center sensors
② Front corner sensors
③ Front side sensors
④ Rear corner sensors
⑤ Rear center sensors

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 290 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

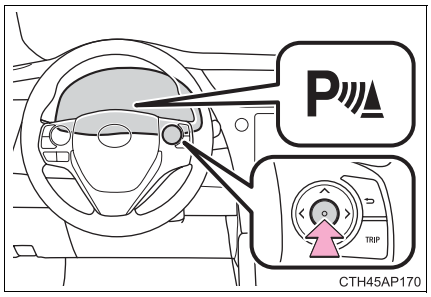
■ **Enabling/disabling the Toyota parking assist-sensor system**

This system can be enabled/disabled on the multi-information display.

1 Display the settings display (→P. 102), and then press ∧ / ∨ on the meter control switch to select P.

2 Press ⊙ on the meter control switch to enable/disable the system.

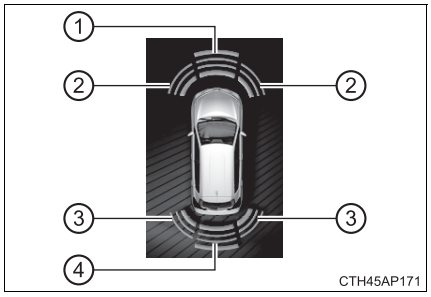
When enabled, the Toyota parking assist-sensor indicator will illuminate.



Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi information display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

① Front center sensor operation
② Front corner sensor and front side sensor operation
③ Rear corner sensor operation
④ Rear center sensor operation



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 291 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

■ Corner sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Buzzer
50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.)		Medium
37.5 to 25 cm (1.2 to 0.8 ft.)		Fast
Less than 25 cm (0.8 ft.)		Continuous

■ **Front side sensors**

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Buzzer
Less than 25 cm (0.8 ft.)		Continuous

■ **Center sensors**

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Buzzer
Front: 100 to 55 cm (3.3 to 1.8 ft.) Rear: 150 to 55 cm (4.9 to 1.8 ft.)		Slow
55 to 42.5 cm (1.8 to 1.4 ft.)		Medium
42.5 to 30 cm (1.4 to 1.0 ft.)		Fast
Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.)		Continuous

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 293 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Detection range of the sensors

① Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

② Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

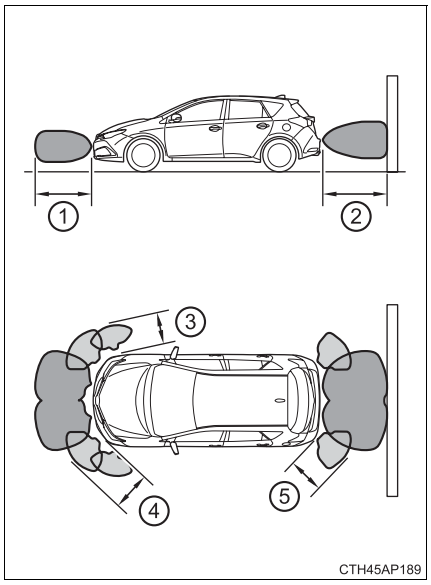
③ Approximately 25 cm (0.8 ft.)

④ Approximately 50 cm (1.6 ft.)

⑤ Approximately 50 cm (1.6 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 294 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **The Toyota parking assist-sensor can be operated when**

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
The engine switch is in the “ON” position.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

● Front sensors:

- Vehicles with a Multidrive:
  The shift lever is in a position other than P.
- Vehicles with a manual transmission:
  The parking brake is not applied.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
  (At any speed when the shift lever is in R)

● Rear sensors:
The shift lever is in R.

■ **Sensor detection information**

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor.
- A sensor is frozen.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelet is installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- A non-genuine Toyota suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 295 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

■ If “Clean sonar.” is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In this case, clean the sensor and the system should return to normal.

If a sensor is frozen due to low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or an obstacle may not be detected. When the sensor thaws out, the system should return to normal.

■ If “Check sonar system.” is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may not operate due to the malfunction of a sensor.

Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution when using the Toyota parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

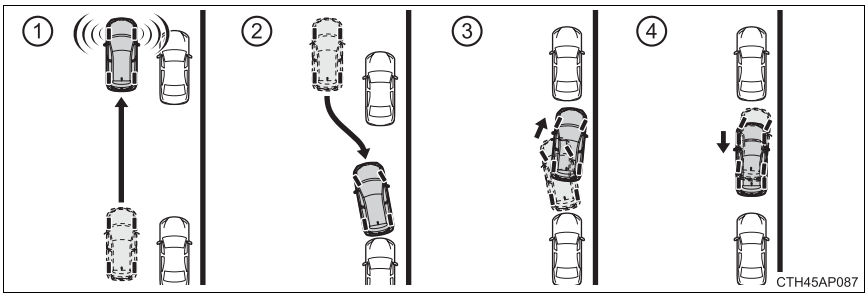
⚠ NOTICE

■ Notes on the Toyota parking assist-sensor

- Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
  Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.
- If your vehicle is involved in an accident, it will affect the sensors and may result in a system failure.
  Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Simple-IPA (Simple-Intelligent Parking Assist)*

Simple-IPA is a system that assists parallel parking operations. When parking between two parked vehicles or in the space behind one parked vehicle, the sensors installed on the sides of the front bumper are utilized and a space which the vehicle can be parked in is detected. Parking operations are then assisted by automatic operation of the steering wheel.

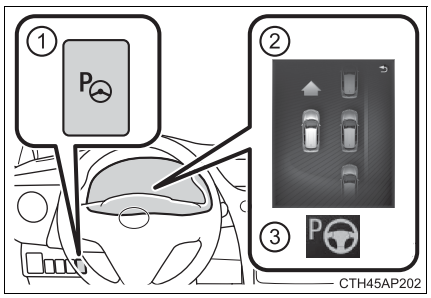


① Detecting allowable parking space
② Parking the vehicle in a detected parking space*
③ Turning the steering wheel to park in the target parking space*
④ Parking in the target parking space is complete*

*: The steering wheel is operated automatically.

Simple-IPA switch and multi-information display

① Simple-IPA switch
② Display
③ Indicator



*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 297 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

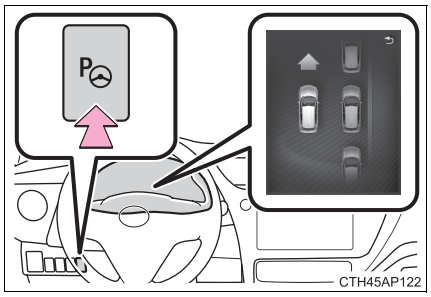
Operating Simple-IPA

Operate Simple-IPA according to the multi-information display and the buzzer.

The system detects parking spaces on the front passenger's side of the vehicle and assists with parking in a detected space.
When parking in a space on the driver's side of the vehicle, move the turn signal lever to indicate turning on the driver's seat side. Leave the turn signal lever in that position until automatic steering begins.

1 Turn the Simple-IPA switch on with the vehicle driving at 30 km/h (18 mph) or less.

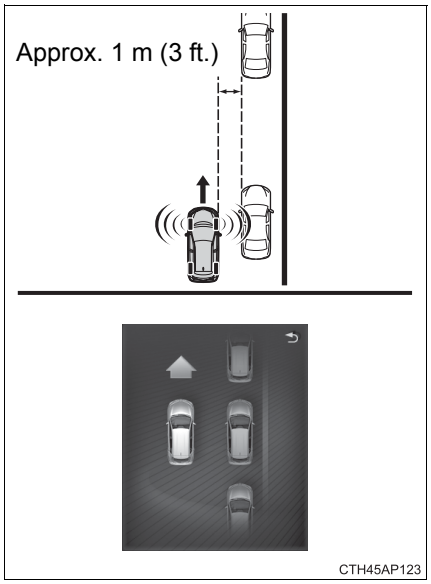
The multi-information display changes to the parking space detection screen when the system is operating.



2 Drive the vehicle while maintaining a distance of approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the parked vehicles.

Drive the vehicle as parallel to the parked vehicles and curb as possible.
Lower vehicle speeds allow the system to assist in parking the vehicle more parallel to the parked vehicles and curb, and in a more proper position between vehicles at the front and rear of a parking space.

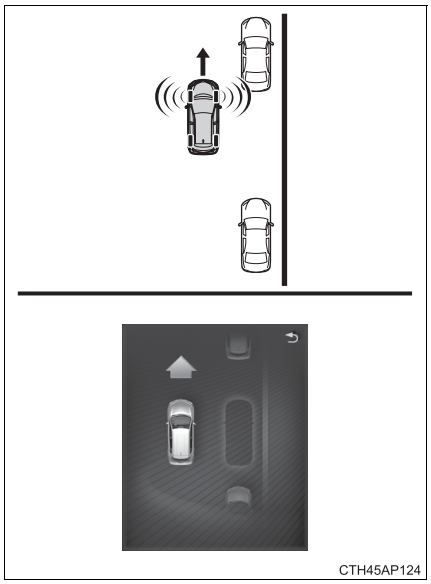
The required length for a parking space to be detected is the total vehicle length plus approximately 1 m (3 ft.).



Maintain a vehicle speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) or less.

3 When the multi-information display changes, reduce the vehicle speed.

Move the vehicle forward slowly until the buzzer sounds.

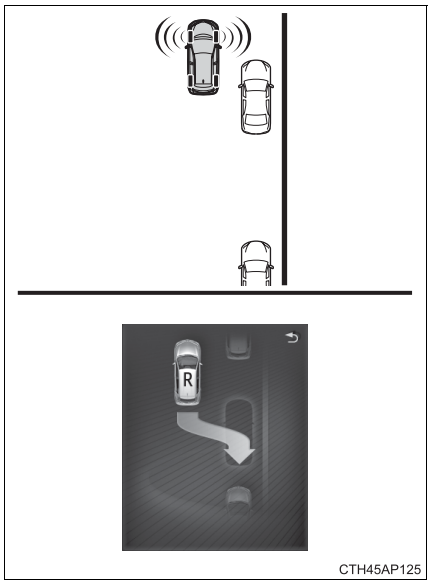


CTH45AP124

4 Stop the vehicle when the buzzer sounds.

The multi-information display will change.
Visually check that the detected space is safe for parking.

If the vehicle moves 10 m (32 ft.) or more after the buzzer sounds, detection of a new parking space will begin.



CTH45AP125

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 299 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

5 Shift the shift lever to R.

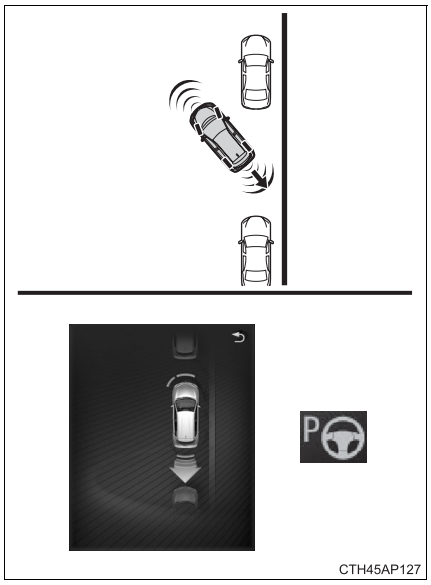
The multi-information display will change, Simple-IPA indicator will come on and automatic steering will begin. While taking care not to catch your hands on the steering wheel and checking the safety of the surrounding area, reverse the vehicle slowly by operating the accelerator and brake pedals. During automatic steering, maintain a vehicle speed of 6 km/h (3 mph) or less.



CTH45AP232E

6 When the multi-information display changes, reduce the vehicle speed.

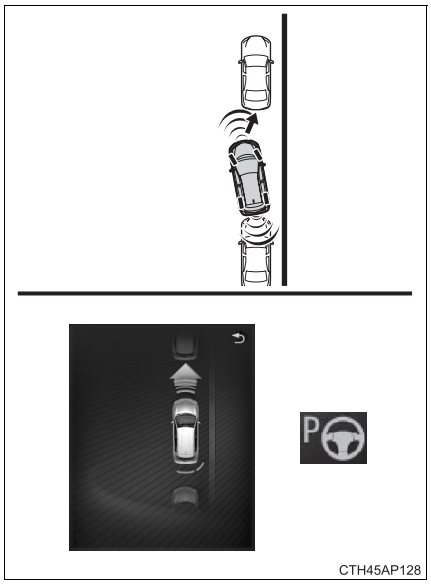
While checking the safety of the area behind the vehicle, reverse the vehicle slowly.



CTH45AP127

7 When the rear Toyota parking assist-sensor's warning buzzer sounds continuously, completely stop the vehicle immediately.

The multi-information display will change when the warning buzzer starts sounding continuously.



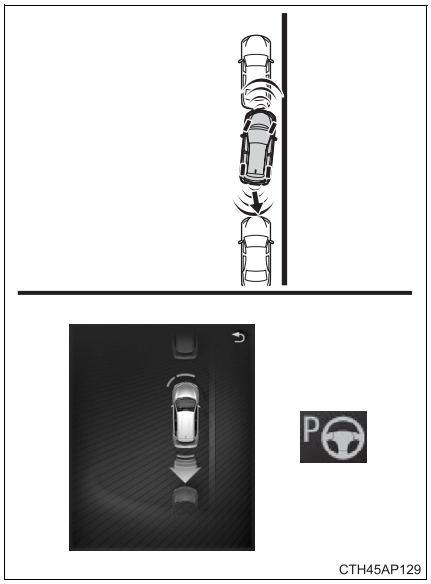
CTH45AP128

8 Shift the shift lever to D (Multidrive) or 1 (manual transmission).

While the steering wheel is turning, keep the vehicle at a complete stop. When the steering wheel stops turning, move the vehicle forward slowly while checking the safety of the area in front of the vehicle.

9 When the front Toyota parking assist-sensor's warning buzzer sounds continuously, completely stop the vehicle immediately.

The multi-information display will change when the warning buzzer starts sounding continuously.



CTH45AP129

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 301 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

10 Shift the shift lever to R.

While the steering wheel is turning, keep the vehicle at a complete stop. When the steering wheel stops turning, reverse the vehicle slowly while checking the safety of the area behind the vehicle.

11 Repeat steps 7 through 10 until the parking assist operation has completed.

When the parking assist operation has completed, the buzzer sounds, the Simple-IPA indicator turns off and the multi-information display changes.
Adjust the vehicle position and/or angle as necessary to complete parking the vehicle.



CTH45AP233E

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 302 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

When a message is shown on the multi-information display

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA slot not detected, speed too high.”	The vehicle speed exceeded 30 km/h (18 mph).	Reduce vehicle speed to 30 km/h (18 mph) or less.
“IPA cancelled, take over.”	The Simple-IPA switch was turned off.	Turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
	The Simple-IPA switch was turned on while reversing.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	The shift lever was shifted to R during detection of a parking space.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	The shift lever was shifted to a position other than R after the automatic steering began and before the vehicle enters a parking space.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 303 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA cancelled, take over.”	The steering wheel could not be turned sufficiently due to reasons such as low tire pressure, tire wear, the influence of road conditions, being on a slope, etc., therefore the vehicle could not be parked in the desired space.	• Check tires for wear and pressure. • If this message is displayed when the vehicle is parked in other spaces, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
	The power steering temporarily overheated.	Attempt to use Simple-IPA after waiting a little while.
	Possible system malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
“IPA cancelled, take over, driver intervened.”	The steering wheel was manually operated during automatic steering.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
“IPA cancelled, take over, speed too high.”	The vehicle speed exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph) during detection of a parking space.	Reduce vehicle speed to 30 km/h (18 mph) or less and turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
	The vehicle speed exceeded 6 km/h (3 mph) during automatic steering.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 304 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA cancelled, take over, TRC/ABS/VSC activated.”	The TRC, VSC or ABS operated.	• If the operation was canceled during detection of a parking space, turn the Simple-IPA switch on again. • If the operation was canceled during automatic steering, park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
“IPA cancelled, take over, TRC/VSC is off.”	The switch was turned off.	Turn the switch on.
“IPA cancelled, take over, timeout.”	More than 6 minutes have elapsed since the Simple-IPA switch was turned on and the shift lever was shifted to R, before automatic steering could begin.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	More than 6 minutes have elapsed since the shift lever was shifted to R and automatic steering began, before the parking assist operation could complete.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	The total stop time during automatic steering exceeded 2 minutes.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
“IPA cancelled, take over, check IPA system.”	System malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 305 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA not available.”	The power steering is temporarily overheating.	Attempt to use Simple-IPA after waiting a little while.
	The engine has not been started.	Start the engine.
	Possible system malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
“IPA not available, speed too high.”	Excessive vehicle speed (over 50 km/h [31 mph])	Reduce vehicle speed to 30 km/h (18 mph) or less and turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
“IPA not available, TRC/VSC is off.”	The switch is off.	After turning the switch on, turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
“IPA not available, stop the vehicle, turn wheel from left end to right end.”	System initialization has not been performed since the battery was disconnected/reconnected.	Perform initialization. →P. 307
“Check IPA system.”	System malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 306 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Operation conditions of Simple-IPA**

- The engine is started.
- The  switch is on.
- The vehicle speed is 30 km/h (18 mph) or less. (During automatic steering, the vehicle speed is 6 km/h [3 mph] or less.)

■ **Canceling of the Simple-IPA operation**

Simple-IPA operation will be canceled when:

- The Simple-IPA switch is turned off.
- The ABS, VSC or TRC is operating.
- The shift lever is shifted to R during detection of a parking space.
- The shift lever is shifted to R and the vehicle is reversed 1 m (3 ft.) or more after a parking space has been detected and before the buzzer sounds.
- The steering wheel is operated manually during automatic steering.
- It takes more than 6 minutes for automatic steering to begin after the Simple-IPA switch is turned on and the shift lever is shifted to R.
- The shift lever is shifted to a position other than R after the automatic steering began and before the vehicle enters a parking space.
- It takes more than 6 minutes to complete parking after the shift lever was shifted to R and automatic steering began.
- The total stop time during automatic steering exceeds 2 minutes.

■ **Resume function of Simple-IPA**

If Simple-IPA is canceled due to one of the following operations, Simple-IPA operation may be able to be resumed by pressing the Simple-IPA switch depending on conditions such as the vehicle stopped position and steering wheel angle.

- The steering wheel is operated manually during automatic steering.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 6 km/h (3 mph) during automatic steering.
- The shift lever is moved to a position other than R after the automatic steering began and before the vehicle enters a parking space.

If operation is not resumed, park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.

■ **When using Simple-IPA repeatedly**

When Simple-IPA is used repeatedly, the power steering may overheat temporarily. It may deactivate or cancel Simple-IPA operation. In this case, wait a few minutes before using Simple-IPA again.

■ **Toyota parking assist-sensor operation during Simple-IPA operation**

Even if the Toyota parking assist-sensor is turned off while Simple-IPA is activated, the Toyota parking assist-sensor will keep operating. In this case, when Simple-IPA operation is complete or canceled, the Toyota parking assist-sensor will be deactivated.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 307 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Stop & Start system operation during Simple-IPA operation (vehicles with a Stop & Start system)**

The Stop & Start system does not operate during Simple-IPA operation. If the Simple-IPA switch is turned on during Stop & Start system operation, Stop & Start system operation will be canceled.

■ **When the cabin temperature is high**

The sensors may not work properly when the cabin temperature is high due to parking the vehicle in the sun. Use Simple-IPA after the cabin cools down.

■ **Sensors used by Simple-IPA**

→P. 289

■ **Initializing Simple-IPA**

Within 15 seconds of turning the Simple-IPA switch on, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left or right and then to the opposite side.

When the parking space detection screen is displayed, the initialization is complete.

If pressing the Simple-IPA switch again still shows “IPA not available, stop the vehicle, turn wheel from left end to right end.” on the multi-information display, the initialization has failed. Have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 308 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Cautions regarding the use of Simple-IPA

- Never depend on the Simple-IPA entirely when parking. The driver is responsible for safety. Use caution, just as you would when parking any vehicle.
- Back up slowly, using the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.
- If it seems likely to hit nearby vehicles, obstacles, or people, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and the disable the system.

■Conditions in which the use of Simple-IPA is prohibited

Do not use Simple-IPA under the following conditions.
Doing so may cause improper operation and lead to an unexpected accident.

- On sharp bends or slopes.
- On slippery or icy roads, or in snow.
- On uneven road surfaces such as gravel.
- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow, or a sandstorm.
- When the tires are extremely worn or tire pressure is low.
- When the vehicle has improper wheel alignment due to tires having received a strong impact such as bumping against a curb.
- When the compact spare tire (if equipped) or snow chains are installed.
- When the tires slid while attempting to park.
- When fallen leaves or snow is in a parking space.
- When items such as a towing bracket, trailer, bicycle carrier, etc. are installed on the rear of the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 309 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

- When a vehicle of which the front/rear end is above the detection area, such as a truck, bus or vehicle with a towing bracket, trailer, bicycle carrier, etc., is parked at the front or rear of the parking space.
- If the front bumper has been damaged.
- If the sensor is covered by the front bumper cover, etc.
- If a vehicle or obstacle is not in a suitable position at the front or rear of the parking space.

■ Automatic steering precautions

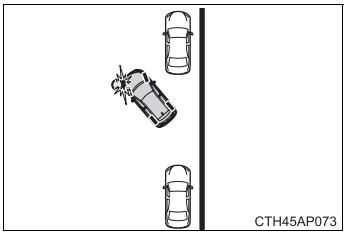
As the steering wheel moves automatically in the parking assist function, be aware of the following point.

- Keep clothing such as neckties, scarves and long sleeves away from the steering wheel, as they may become entangled. Also, keep children away from the steering wheel.
- If you have long fingernails, be careful not to injure yourself when the steering wheel moves.

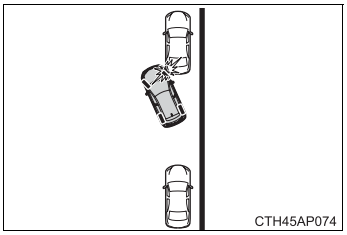
NOTICE

■When using the Simple-IPA

- Check that the parking space is suitable. (Width of the space, if there are any obstacles, road surface condition, etc.)
- Simple-IPA will not operate properly if the vehicle at the front or back of the parking space moves, or if an obstacle enters the parking space after the sensors have detected the parking space. Always check the surrounding area during parking assist operation.
- The sensors may not be able to detect curbs. The vehicle may drive onto the curb depending on the situation, such as if a vehicle at the front or back of the parking space has driven on the curb.
  Check the surrounding area to prevent the tires and wheels from being damaged.
- When reversing, reverse the vehicle slowly to prevent the front end of the vehicle from hitting an obstacle in the front of the vehicle.


CTH45AP073

- When reversing, reverse the vehicle slowly to prevent the front end of the vehicle from hitting the vehicle parked in front of the parking space.


CTH45AP074

- The vehicle may not be able to be parked at a target parking space if the vehicle moves forward when the shift lever is in R or reverses when the shift lever is in a position other than R, such as when parking on a slope.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 311 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Diesel particulate filter system (diesel engine only)

When the deposit collected by the filter reaches a predetermined amount, it is automatically cleaned.

■ **Cleaning the DPF catalytic converter**

Cleaning the DPF catalytic converter is performed as necessary in accordance with driving conditions.

■ **Equipment characteristics**

The DPF system has the following characteristics:

- Idle speed increases during cleaning
- The smell of the exhaust gas changes
- When starting the engine, white-colored steam (water vapor) may be expelled during cleaning
- Acceleration performance may degrade during cleaning

■ **Replacing the engine oil**

→P. 449

⚠ WARNING

■ **Exhaust pipe**

Do not touch the exhaust pipe during cleaning, as the exhaust pipe and exhaust gases will become particularly hot. Also, make sure that there are no people or flammable materials near the exhaust pipe while the vehicle is stopped.
Failure to do so may cause injury by burning or a fire.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 312 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■To prevent the DPF system from failing

- Do not use fuel other than the specified type
- Do not use engine oil other than the recommended type
- Do not modify the exhaust pipe

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 313 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

◆ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

◆ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

◆ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

◆ TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

◆ Hill-start assist control

Helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an incline

◆ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

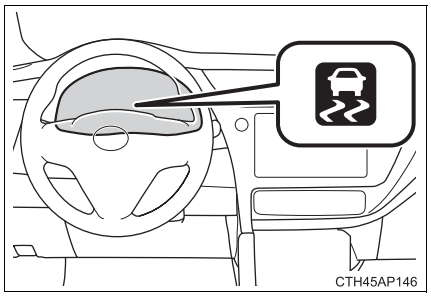
◆ Emergency brake signal

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the emergency flashers automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 314 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

When the TRC/VSC systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC systems are operating.



Disabling the TRC system

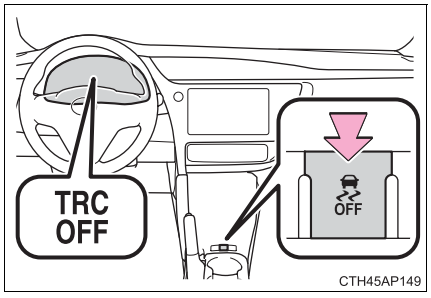
If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release .

The “TRC OFF” indicator light will come on.

Press again to turn the system back on.

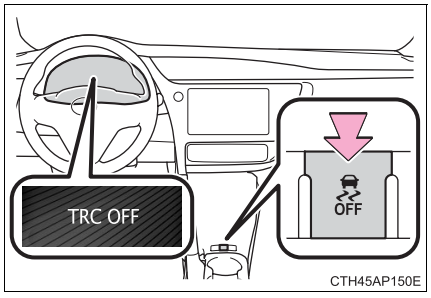


▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release .

The “TRC OFF” will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press again to turn the system back on.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 315 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Turning off both TRC and VSC systems**

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold  for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The “TRC OFF” indicator light and VSC OFF indicator light will come on.

Press  again to turn the systems back on.

▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold  for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the “TRC OFF” will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press  again to turn the systems back on.

*: On vehicles with a PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system), the pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking functions will also be disabled. (→P. 249)

■ **When the “TRC OFF” indicator light comes on even if the  has not been pressed (vehicles with a 3-ring meter)**

TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if  has not been pressed (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)**

TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRC and VSC systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 316 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC and VSC systems**

After turning the TRC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: When the engine switch is turned to the “LOCK” position
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: When the engine switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases
  If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- Vehicles with a Multidrive: The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- Vehicles with a manual transmission: The shift lever is in a position other than R when starting off forward on an upward incline or in R when starting off backward on an upward incline.
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- Vehicles with a Multidrive: The shift lever is shifted to P or N.
- Vehicles with a manual transmission: The shift lever is shifted to R when starting off forward on an upward incline or from R when starting off backward on an upward incline.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- Approximately 2 seconds elapse after the brake pedal is released.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 317 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following three conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed in a manner that cause the system to judge from the vehicle deceleration that this is a sudden braking operation.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

⚠ WARNING

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions**

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ **TRC may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 318 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Hill- start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 319 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P (Multidrive) or 1 or R (manual transmission) without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Selecting tire chains (except 225/45R17 tires)

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

Side chain:

① 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter

② 10 mm (0.39 in.) in width

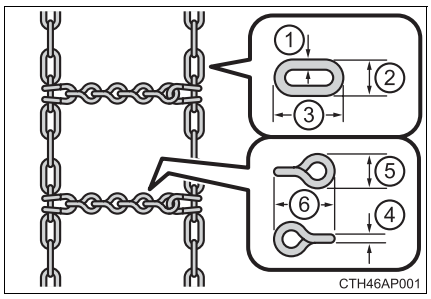
③ 30 mm (1.18 in.) in length

Cross chain:

④ 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter

⑤ 14 mm (0.55 in.) in width

⑥ 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length



Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■225/45R17 tires

Tire chains cannot be installed on 225/45R17 tires.

■Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 — 1.0 km (1/4 — 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Vehicles with LDA (Lane Departure Alert): Do not use the LDA system.

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Toyota dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ Fitting tire chains (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 322 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 323 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Audio system 5

5-1. Basic Operations

Audio system types 324

Steering wheel audio switches.....325

AUX port/USB port 326

5-2. Using the audio system

Optimal use of the audio system 327

5-3. Using the radio

Radio operation 329

5-4. Playing audio CDs and MP3/WMA discs

CD player operation.....332

5-5. Using an external device

Listening to an iPod 340

Listening to a USB memory device 348

Using the AUX port.....355

5-6. Using Bluetooth® devices

Bluetooth® audio/phone.....356

Using the steering wheel switches 361

Registering a Bluetooth® device 362

5-7. "SET UP" menu

Using the "SET UP" menu ("Bluetooth" menu).....363

Using the "SET UP" menu ("Phone" menu) 368

5-8. Bluetooth® Audio

Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player.....373

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone

Making a phone call.....376

Receiving a phone call.....378

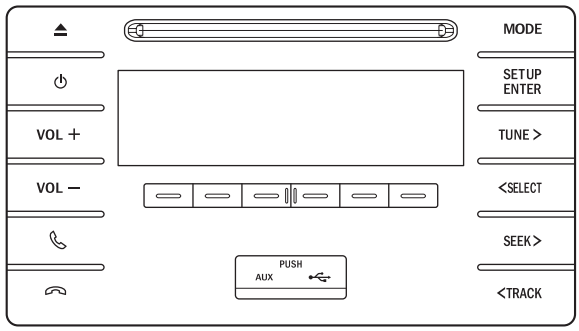
Speaking on the phone.....379

5-10. Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® 381

Audio system types*

▶ Vehicles with an audio system



CTH52AP110

▶ Vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation/multimedia system should refer to the “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system’s speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

■ About Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth wordmark and logo are owned by Bluetooth SIG. and permission has been granted to use the trademark of the licensee Panasonic Corporation. Other trademarks and trade names are owned by various different owners.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

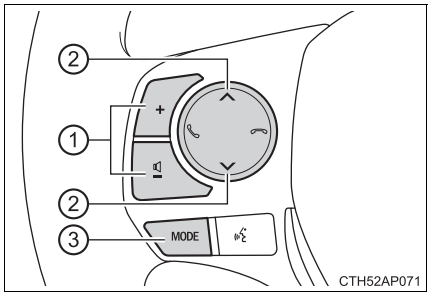
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 325 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.
Operation may differ depending on the type of audio system or navigation system. For details, refer to the manual provided with the audio system or navigation system.

Operating the audio system using the steering wheel switches



① Volume switch:
- Press: Increases/decreases volume
- Press and hold: Continuously increases/decreases volume

② Radio mode:
- Press: Selects a radio station
- Press and hold: Seeks up/down

CD, MP3/WMA disc, Bluetooth®, iPod or USB mode:
- Press: Selects a track/file/song
- Press and hold: Selects a folder or album (MP3/WMA disc, Bluetooth®, iPod or USB)

③ “MODE” switch:
- Press: Turns the power on, selects an audio source
- Press and hold: Mutes or pauses the current operation. To cancel the mute or pause, press and hold again.

WARNING

■ To reduce the risk of an accident
Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 326 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

AUX port/USB port

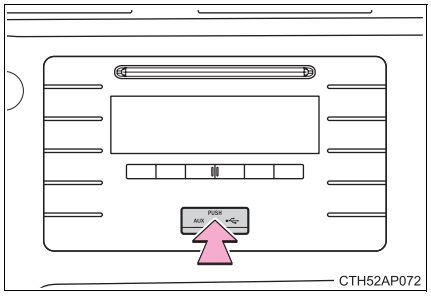
Connect an iPod, USB memory device or portable audio player to the AUX port/USB port as indicated below. Press the “MODE” button to select “iPod”, “USB” or “AUX”.

Connecting using the AUX port/USB port

■ iPod

Push the cover to open and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.



■ USB memory

Push the cover to open and connect a USB memory device.

Turn on the power of the USB memory device if it is not turned on.

■ Portable audio player

Push the cover to open and connect a portable audio player.

Turn on the power of the portable audio player if it is not turned on.

⚠ WARNING

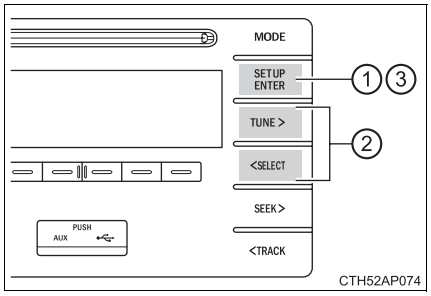
■ While driving

Do not connect a device or operate the device controls.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 327 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Optimal use of the audio system

Sound quality (treble/bass) and volume balance can be adjusted.



① Displays the current mode

② Changes the following settings
- Sound quality and volume balance (→P. 327)

  The sound quality and volume balance settings can be changed to produce the best sound.
- Automatic Sound Levelizer on/off (→P. 328)

③ Selects a mode

Using the audio control function

■ Changing sound quality modes

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “Sound settings”.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

4 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select the desired mode.

“Bass”, “Treble”, “Fader”, “Balance”, or “ASL”

5 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 328 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Adjusting sound quality**

Pressing the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button adjusts the level.

Sound quality mode	Mode displayed	Level	Press the “<SELECT” button	Press the “TUNE>” button
Bass*	“Bass”	-5 to 5	Low	High
Treble*	“Treble”	-5 to 5		
Front/rear volume balance	“Fader”	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
Left/right volume balance	“Balance”	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each audio mode.

■ **Adjusting the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)**

When ASL is selected, pressing the “TUNE>” button changes the amount of ASL in the order of “Low”, “Mid” and “High”.

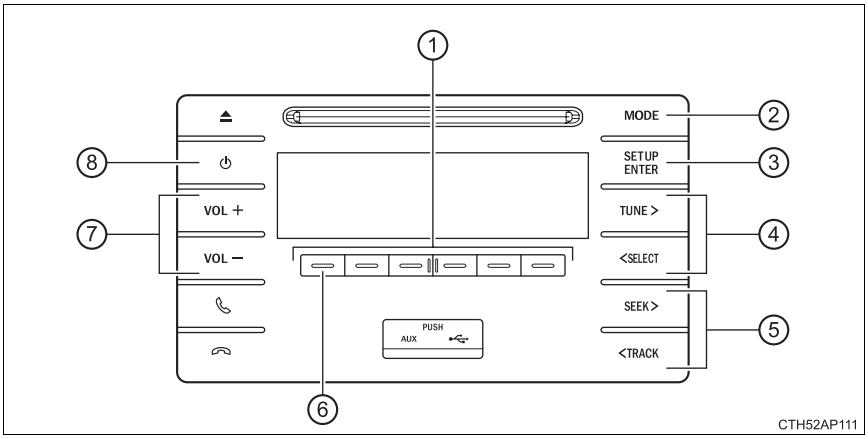
Pressing the “<SELECT” button turns ASL off.

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 329 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Radio operation

Select “AM” or “FM” to begin listening to the radio.



① Station selectors
② Mode select button
③ Select an item or AF/region code/TA mode setup
④ Adjust frequency
⑤ Seek a frequency
⑥ Display a station list
⑦ Volume
⑧ Power

Setting station presets

1 Search for a desired station by pressing the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button.

2 Press and hold a desired station selector button until you hear a beep.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 330 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Using the station list

■ Updating the station list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The station list will be displayed.

2 Press [ ] “Update” to update the list.

“Updating” is displayed while the searching is in process, and then available stations will be listed on the display.

To cancel the updating process, press [ ] “Back”.

■ Selecting a station from the station list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The station list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a station.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to tune in the station.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive RDS data.

■ Listening to stations of the same network

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “Radio” and press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

3 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select the desired mode: “FM AF” or “Region code”.

4 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select “On” or “Off”.

FM AF ON mode:	The station among those of the same network with strong reception is selected.
Region code ON mode:	The station among those of the same network with strong reception and broadcasting the same program is selected.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 331 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Traffic information**

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “Radio” and press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

3 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “FM TA” mode.

4 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select “On” or “Off”.

TA mode: The system automatically switches to traffic information when a broadcast with a traffic information signal is received.

The station returns to the previous one when the traffic information ends.

■ **EON (Enhanced Other Network) system (for traffic announcement function)**

If the RDS station (with EON data) you are listening to is not broadcasting a traffic information program and the audio system is in the TA (traffic announcement) mode, the radio will be switched automatically to a station broadcasting a traffic information program in the EON AF list when traffic information begins.

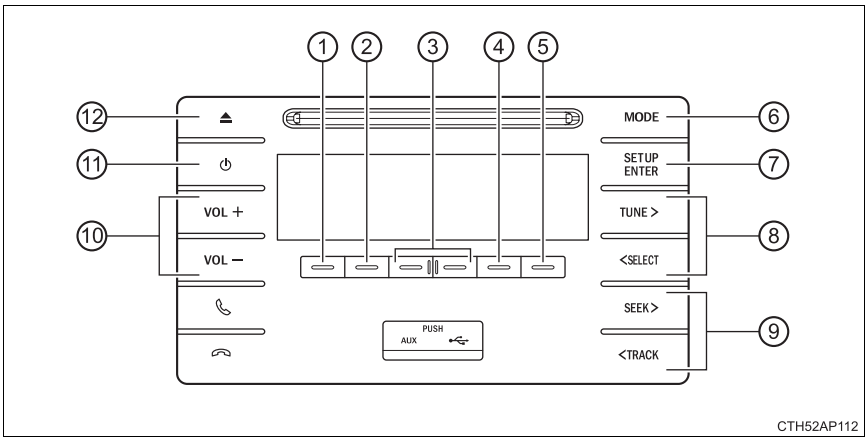
■ **When the battery is disconnected**

Station presets are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted on the rear side of the roof.

CD player operation



① Display text message
② Display folder list/track list
③ Select a folder (MP3/WMA discs only)
④ Repeat play
⑤ Random playback
⑥ Mode select button
⑦ Open the selected track/file
⑧ Select a track/file
⑨ Select a track/file, fast-forward or reverse
⑩ Volume
⑪ Power
⑫ Eject a disc

Loading a CD, MP3 or WMA disc

Insert a disc.

Ejecting a CD, MP3 or WMA disc

Press ⏏ and remove the disc.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 333 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Using the CD player

■ Selecting a track

Press the “TUNE>” or “SEEK>” button to move up or the “<SELECT” or “<TRACK” button to move down until the desired track number is displayed.

■ Selecting a track from a track list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The track list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a track.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to open the selected track.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

■ Fast-forwarding and reversing a track

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

■ Repeat play

Press [ ] “RPT”.

The current track is played repeatedly until [ ] “RPT” is pressed again.

■ Random playback

Press [ ] “RDM”.

Tracks are played in a random order until [ ] “RDM” is pressed again.

■ Switching the display

Press [ ] “Text”.

Track name, Artist name and CD title are shown on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Text” or [ ] “Back”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 334 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Playing back an MP3 or WMA disc

■ Selecting a folder

To select the desired folder, press [ ] " ❮ " or [ ] " ❯ ".

■ Selecting a folder and file from a folder list

1 Press [ ] "List".

The folder list will be displayed.

2 Press the "<SELECT" or "TUNE>" button to select a folder or file.

3 Press the "SETUP/ENTER" button to open the selected file/ folder.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] "Back".

■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold [ ] " ❮ " until you hear a beep.

■ Selecting a file

Press the "<SELECT", "TUNE>", "<TRACK" or "SEEK>" button to select the desired file.

■ Fast-forwarding and reversing a file

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the "SEEK>" or "<TRACK" button.

■ Repeat play

Pressing [ ] "RPT" changes the repeat play mode in the following order:

File repeat → Folder repeat* → Off.

*: Not available when RDM (random playback) is selected

■ Random playback

Pressing [ ] "RDM" changes the random playback mode in the following order:

Folder random → Disc random → Off.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 335 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Switching the display

Press [ ] “Text”.

Track title, Artist name and Album title (MP3 only) are shown on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Text” or [ ] “Back”.

■ Display

Depending on the contents recorded, the characters may not be displayed properly or may not be displayed at all.

■ Error messages

If an error message is displayed, refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause	Correction procedures
“CD check”	• The disc is dirty or damaged. • The disc is inserted upside down.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly.
“Error 3”	There is a malfunction within the system.	Eject the disc.
“Error 4”	An over current error has occurred.	Turn the engine switch to the “LOCK” position.
“No support”	MP3/WMA files are not included on the CD.	Eject the disc.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 336 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

■ **CD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If a disc is left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

The disc may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ **MP3 and WMA files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

MP3 and WMA file and media/format compatibility is limited.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 337 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Multi-session discs

As the audio system is compatible with multi-session discs, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 338 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

If the discs contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data, only music data can be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

⚠ WARNING

■ Certification for the CD player

CAUTION:
THIS PRODUCT IS A CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT. USE OF CONTROLS OR ADJUSTMENTS OR PERFORMANCE OF PROCEDURES OTHER THAN THOSE SPECIFIED HEREIN MAY RESULT IN HAZARDOUS RADIATION EXPOSURE. DO NOT OPEN COVERS AND DO NOT REPAIR BY YOURSELF. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED PERSONNEL.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 339 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

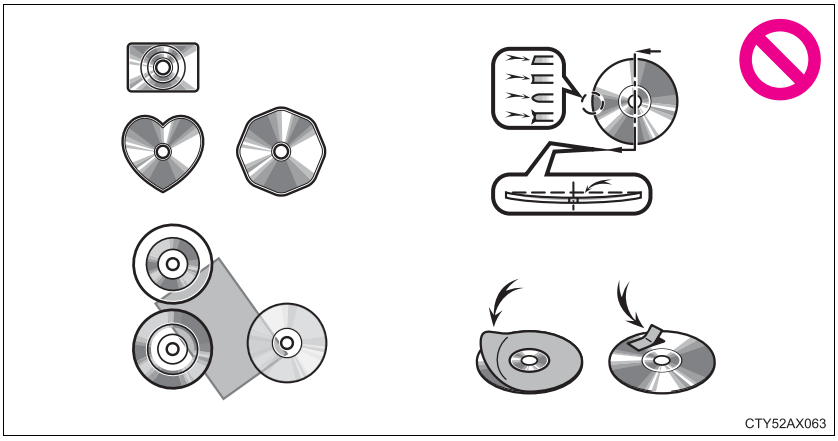
NOTICE

Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs.

Also, do not use 8 cm (3 in.) disc adapters, Dual Discs or printable discs.

Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.).
- Low-quality or deformed discs.
- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.
- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 340 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

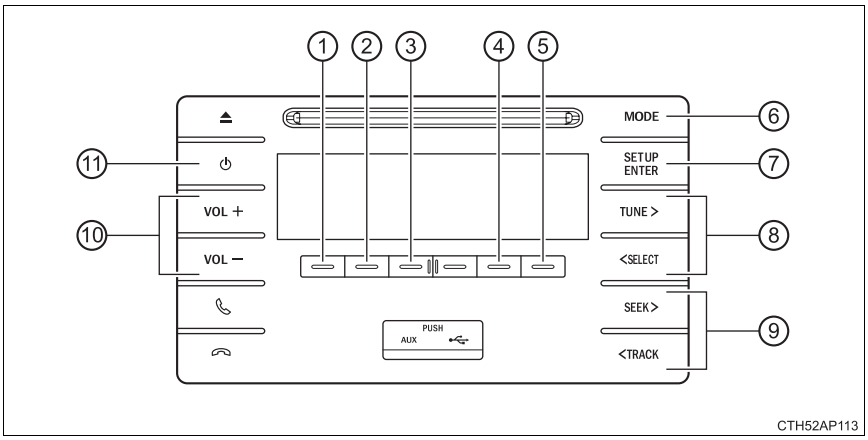
Listening to an iPod

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers. Press the “MODE” button until “iPod” is displayed.

Connecting an iPod

→P. 326

Control panel



① Display text message
② Display lists
③ iPod menu mode
④ Repeat play
⑤ Shuffle playback
⑥ Mode select button
⑦ Set up menu
⑧ Song selector
⑨ Select a song, fast-forward or reverse
⑩ Volume
⑪ Power

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 341 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Selecting a play mode

1 Press [⇦] “Menu” to select iPod menu mode.

2 Pressing the “TUNE>” button changes the play mode in the following order:

“Playlists”→“Artists”→“Albums”→“Songs”→
“Podcasts”→“Genres”→“Composers”→“Audiobooks”

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select the desired play mode.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 342 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Play mode list

Play mode	First selection	Second selection	Third selection	Fourth selection
“Playlists”	Playlist	Song	-	-
“Artists”	Artist	Album	Song	-
“Albums”	Album	Song	-	-
“Songs”	Song	-	-	-
“Podcasts”	Podcast	Episode	-	-
“Genres”	Genre	Artist	Album	Song
“Composers”	Composer	Album	Song	-
“Audiobooks”	Audiobook	Chapter	-	-

■ Selecting a list

1 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to display the first selection list.

2 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select the desired item.

Pressing this button changes the display to the second selection list.

3 Repeat the procedure to select the desired item.

To return to the previous selection list, press “Back”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 343 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Selecting a song

Press the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>”, “<TRACK” or “SEEK>” button to select the desired song.

Selecting a song from the song list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The song list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a song.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to play the song.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

Fast-forwarding and reversing a song

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

Repeat play

Press [ ] “RPT”.

To cancel, press [ ] “RPT” again.

Shuffle playback

Pressing [ ] “RDM” changes the shuffle playback mode in the following order:

Track shuffle → Album shuffle → Off.

Switching the display

Press [ ] “Text”.

Track title, Artist name and Album title are shown on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Text” or [ ] “Back”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 344 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to enter Set up menu mode.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to change sound modes. (→P. 327)

■ About iPod

Made for iPod iPhone

- “Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ iPod functions

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- While connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle’s audio system instead.
- When the battery level of an iPod is very low, the iPod may not operate. If so, charge the iPod before use.
- Supported models (→P. 346)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 345 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **iPod problems**

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it.
For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

■ **Display**

→P. 335

■ **Error messages**

If an error message is displayed, refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
"iPod error"	This indicates that the data in the iPod cannot be read.
"Error 3"	This indicates that the iPod may be malfunctioning.
"Error 4"	This indicates that an over current error has occurred.
"Error 5"	This indicates that an iPod communication error has occurred.
"Error 6"	This indicates that an authentication error has occurred.
"No songs"	This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.
"No playlists"	This indicates that some available songs are not found in a selected playlist.
"Update your iPod"	This indicates that the version of the iPod is not compatible. Upgrade your iPod software to the latest version.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 346 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Compatible models**

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

● Made for

- iPod (5th generation)
- iPod touch (5th generation)
- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (Late 2009)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic (Late 2009)
- iPod classic (2nd generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod nano (7th generation)
- iPod nano (6th generation)
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone 5s
- iPhone 5c
- iPhone 5
- iPhone 4S
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

● Maximum number of lists in device: 9999

● Maximum number of songs in device: 65535

● Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 347 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not connect iPod or operate the controls.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to iPod**

- Do not leave the iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the iPod.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 348 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

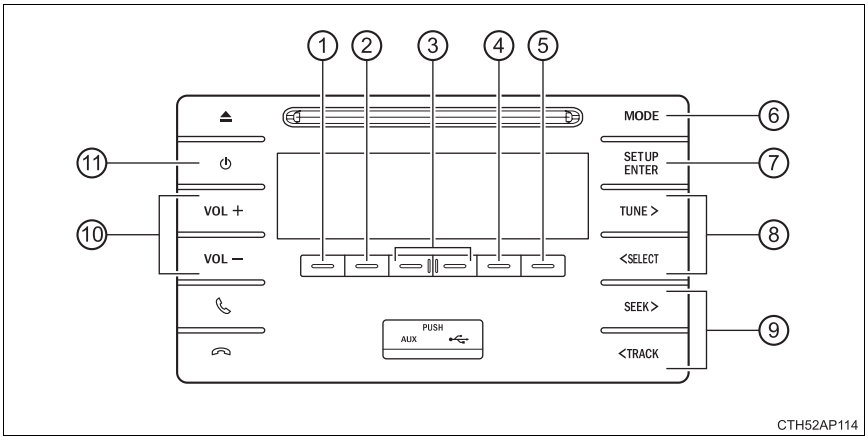
Listening to a USB memory device

Connecting a USB memory device enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers. Press the “MODE” button until “USB” is displayed.

Connecting a USB memory

→P. 326

Control panel



① Display text message
② Display folder lists
③ Select a folder
④ Repeat play
⑤ Random playback
⑥ Mode select button
⑦ Open the selected file
⑧ Select a file
⑨ Select a file, fast-forward or reverse
⑩ Volume
⑪ Power

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 349 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Selecting a folder

■ Selecting folders one at a time

Press [ ] “ ❮ ” or [ ] “ ❯ ” to select the desired folder.

■ Selecting a folder and file from a folder list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The folder list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a folder or file.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to open the selected file/folder.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold [ ] “ ❮ ” until you hear a beep.

Selecting a file

Press the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>”, “<TRACK” or “SEEK>” button to select the desired file.

Fast-forwarding and reversing a file

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 350 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Repeat play

Pressing [ ] "RPT" changes the repeat playback mode in the following order:

File repeat → Folder repeat* → Off.

*: Not available when RDM (random playback) is selected

Random playback

Pressing [ ] "RDM" changes the random playback mode in the following order:

Folder random → Disc random → Off.

Switching the display

Press [ ] "Text".

Track title, Artist name and Album title (MP3 only) are displayed on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] "Text" or [ ] "Back".

■ USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the device.

■ Display

→P. 335

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 351 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Error messages

If an error message is displayed, refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
“USB error”	This indicates that the data in the USB memory cannot be read.
“Error 3”	This indicates that the USB memory may be malfunctioning.
“Error 4”	This indicates that an over current error has occurred.
“Error 5”	This indicates that the USB memory communication error has occurred.
“No music”	This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included on the USB memory device.

■ **USB memory**

● Compatible devices

USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback

● Compatible device formats

The following device formats can be used:

- USB communication formats: USB 2.0 FS (12 Mbps)
- File formats: FAT12/16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 9999
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

● MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 8-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 353 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, CBR)

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB memory is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 354 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not connect USB memory or operate the controls.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to USB memory**

- Do not leave USB memory in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the device.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 355 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Using the AUX port

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers. Press the "MODE" button until "AUX" is displayed.

Connecting a portable player

→P. 326

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 356 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Bluetooth® audio/phone

The following can be performed using Bluetooth® wireless communication:

■ **Bluetooth® audio**

The Bluetooth® audio system enables you to enjoy music on a portable player from the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system cannot be used.

■ **Bluetooth® phone (hands-free phone system)**

This system supports Bluetooth®, which allows you to make or receive calls without using cables to connect a cellular phone to the system, and without operating the cellular phone.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 357 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Device registration/connection flow

1. Register a Bluetooth® device to be used with the audio system (→P. 362)

2. Connect a registered Bluetooth® device to be used (→P. 363, 364)

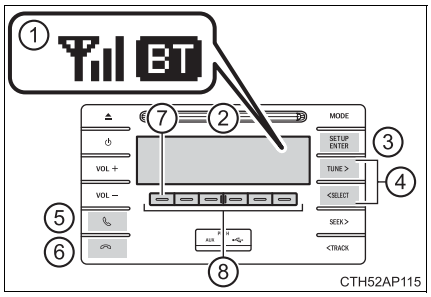
3. Set automatic connection of the device (→P. 366)

4. Check the Bluetooth® connection condition (→P. 358)

To be used for audio	To be used for hands-free phone
5. Use Bluetooth® audio (→P. 373)	5. Use Bluetooth® phone (→P. 376)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 358 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Audio unit



① Bluetooth® connection status

If “BT” is not displayed, the Bluetooth® audio/phone cannot be used.

② Display

A message, name, number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

③ Displays the set up menu/inputs the selected item

④ Select items such as menu and number

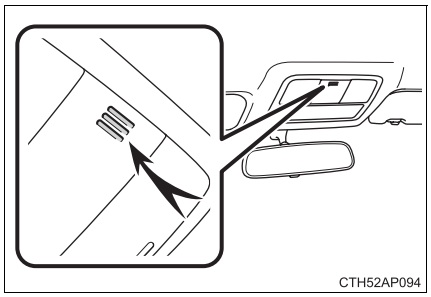
⑤ Off-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system on/starts a call

⑥ On-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system off/ends a call/refuses a call

⑦ Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

⑧ Select speed dials

Microphone



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 359 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Menu list of the Bluetooth® audio/phone

To enter a menu, press the “SETUP/ENTER” button and navigate menus by using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons:

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation details
“Bluetooth*”	“Pairing”	-	Register a Bluetooth® device
	“List phone”	-	List the registered cellular phones
	“List audio”	-	List the registered portable players
	“Passkey”	-	Change the passkey
	“BT power”	-	Set automatic connection of the device on or off
	“Bluetooth* info”	“Device Name” “Device Address”	Display the device status
	“Display setting”	-	Set the automatic connection confirmation display on or off
	“Reset”	-	Initialize the settings

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 360 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation details
“PHONE” or “TEL”	“Phonebook”	“Add contacts”	Add a new number
		“Add SD”	Register a speed dial
		“Delete call history”	Delete a number stored in the call history
		“Delete contacts”	Delete a number stored in the phonebook
		“Delete other PB”	Delete a phonebook’s data
	“HF sound setting”	“Call volume”	Set call volume
		“Ringtone volume”	Set ringtone volume
		“Ringtone”	Set the ringtone
	“Transfer history”	-	Transfer the call histories

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ **Bluetooth® audio/phone system functions**

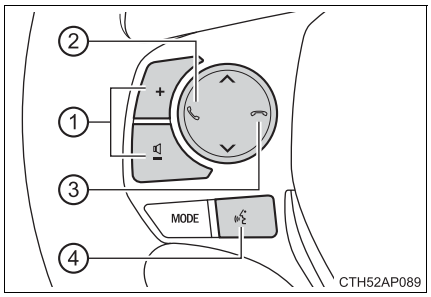
Depending on the Bluetooth® device, certain functions may not be available.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 361 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Using the steering wheel switches

The steering wheel switches can be used to operate a connected cellular phone or portable digital audio player (portable player).

Operating a Bluetooth® phone using the steering wheel switches



① Volume
The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted using these buttons.

② Off-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system on/starts a call

③ On-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system off/ends a call/refuses a call

④ Talk switch (if equipped)
A message will be displayed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 362 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Registering a Bluetooth® device

Before using the Bluetooth® audio/phone, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth® device in the system. You can register up to 5 Bluetooth® devices.

How to register a Bluetooth® device

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button and select “Bluetooth*” using the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

2 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button and select “Pairing” using the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button.

A passkey will be displayed.

3 SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) incompatible Bluetooth® devices: Input the passkey into the device.
SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® devices: Select “Yes” to register the device. Depending on the type of device, it may register automatically.

If a Bluetooth® device has both music player and cellular phone functions, both functions will be registered at the same time. When deleting the device, both functions will be deleted at the same time.

If the off-hook switch is pressed and the “PHONE” or “TEL” mode is entered when no phones have been registered, the registration screen will be automatically displayed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 363 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Using the “SET UP” menu (“Bluetooth*” menu)

Registering a Bluetooth® device in the system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered devices:

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Registering a portable player

Select “Pairing” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons (→P. 359), and perform the procedure for registering a portable player. (→P. 362)

Listing the registered cellular phones

Select “List phone” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359) The list of registered cellular phones will be displayed.

● Connecting the registered cellular phone to the audio system

1 Select the name of the cellular phone to be connected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Select” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

● Deleting a registered cellular phone

1 Select the name of the cellular phone to be deleted using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Delete” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 364 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● Disconnecting the registered cellular phone from the audio system

1 Select the name of the cellular to be disconnected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Disconnect” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

Listing the registered portable players

Select “List audio” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359) The list of registered portable players will be displayed.

● Connecting the registered portable player to the audio system

1 Select the name of the portable player to be connected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Select” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

● Deleting the registered portable player

1 Select the name of the portable player to be deleted using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Delete” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 365 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● Disconnecting the registered portable player from the audio system

1 Select the name of the portable player to be disconnected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Disconnect” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

● Selecting the connection method

1 Select the name of the desired portable player using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Connection method” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Select “From vehicle” or “From audio” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

Changing the passkey

1 Select “Passkey” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Input a 4 to 8-digit passkey using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

Input the number 1 digit at a time.

3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press [ ] “Enter”.

If the passkey to be registered has 8 digits, pressing [ ] “Enter” is not necessary.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 366 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Setting automatic connection of the device on or off

If “BT power” is set to on, the registered device will be connected automatically when the engine switch is turned to the “ACC” position.

1 Select “BT power” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Select “On” or “Off” using the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

Displaying the device status

Select “Bluetooth* info” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

- Displaying the device name

  Select “Device name” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

- Displaying the device address

  Select “Device address” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

Setting the automatic connection confirmation display to on or off

If the “Display setting” is set to on, the portable player connection status will be displayed when the engine switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

1 Select “Display setting” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Select “On” or “Off” using the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 367 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Initialization

Select “Reset” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

● Initializing the sound settings

Select “Sound settings” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

For details about sound settings: →P. 371

● Initializing the device information

Select “Car Device Info” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

The user set passkey and automatic confirmation display will be returned to their default settings.

● Initializing all the settings

Select “Reset all” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 368 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Using the “SET UP” menu (“Phone” menu)

Adding a new phone number

Select “Add contacts” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

- Transferring all contacts from the cellular phone

  Select “Overwrite all” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

- Transferring one contact from the cellular phone

  Select “Add contact” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

Setting speed dials

1. Select “Add SD” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)
2. Select the desired data using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button.

   For details about setting speed dials from the call history: →P. 377

   For details about deleting speed dials: →P. 376

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 369 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Deleting call histories

Select “Delete call history” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

● Deleting outgoing call history

1 Select “Outgoing calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all outgoing call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

● Deleting incoming call history

1 Select “Incoming calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all incoming call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 370 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

● Deleting missed call history

1 Select “Missed calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all missed call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

● Deleting a number from all call histories (Outgoing calls, Incoming calls and Missed calls)

1 Select “All calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all of the call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 371 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Deleting a registered phone number

1 Select “Delete contacts” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all of the registered phone numbers, Press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

Press [ ] “A-Z” to display the registered names in alphabetical order of the initial.

Deleting another cellular phone’s phonebook

1 Select “Delete other PB” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Select the desired phonebook using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

Setting call volume

1 Select “Call volume” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Change the call volume.

To decrease the volume: Press the “<SELECT” button.
To increase the volume: Press the “TUNE>” button.

To set the volume, press [ ] “Back”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 372 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Setting ringtone volume

1 Select “Ringtone volume” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Change the ringtone volume.

To decrease the volume: Press the “<SELECT” button.

To increase the volume: Press the “TUNE>” button.

To set the volume, press [ ] “Back”.

Setting ringtone

1 Select “Ringtone” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 359)

2 Using the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button, select a ringtone (1 - 3).

To set the selected ringtone, press [ ] “Back”.

Transferring call histories

Select “Transfer history” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

■ **Phone number**

Up to 1000 names can be stored.

■ **Call history**

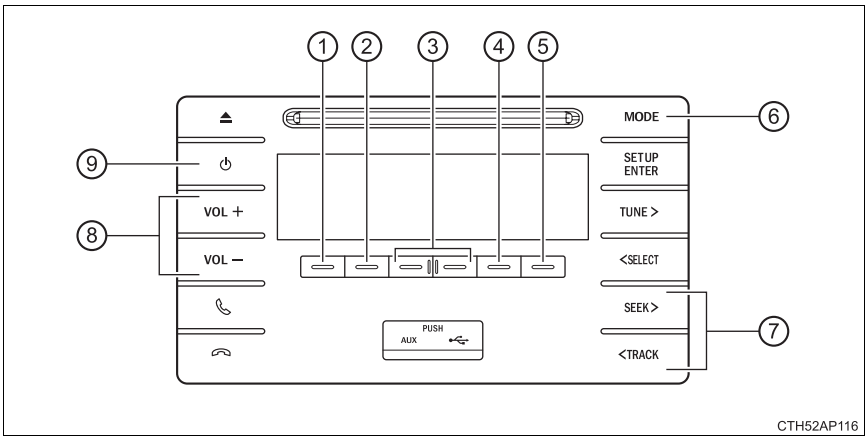
Up to 10 numbers can be stored in each of the outgoing, incoming and missed call history memories.

■ **Limitation of number of digits**

A phone number that exceeds 24 digits cannot be registered.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 373 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player



① Display text message
② Playback/pause
③ Select an album
④ Repeat play
⑤ Random playback
⑥ Playback
⑦ Select a track, fast-forward or reverse
⑧ Volume
⑨ Power

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 374 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Selecting an album

Press [⏮] “ ❮ ” or [⏭] “ ❯ ” to select the desired album.

Selecting a track

Press the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button to select the desired track.

Playing and pausing a track

Press [▶II] “ ▶II ” to play or pause a track.

Fast-forwarding and reversing a track

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

Random playback

Pressing [RDM] “RDM” changes the random playback mode in the following order:
Album random → All track random → Off

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 375 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Repeat play

Pressing [ ] "RPT" changes the repeat play mode in the following order:

Track repeat → Album repeat → Off

Switching the display

Press [ ] "Text".

Track title and artist name are displayed on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] "Text" or [ ] "Back".

Bluetooth® audio system functions

Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 376 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Making a phone call

To enter the “PHONE” or “TEL” mode, press the off-hook switch.

Dialing by selecting a name

1. Select “Phonebook” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.
2. Select the desired name using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press the off-hook switch.

By pressing [ ] “Add S. Dial” and then one of the speed dial buttons while the desired name is selected, the selected item can be registered as a speed dial.

Press [ ] “A-Z” to display the registered names in alphabetical order of the initial.

Speed dialing

1. Select “Speed dials” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.
2. Press the desired preset button and press the off-hook switch.

To delete a registered speed dial, after selecting the desired preset button press [ ] “Delete” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

Dialing by entering the number

1. Select “Dial by number” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.
2. Enter the phone number and press the off-hook switch.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 377 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Dialing from call histories

1 Select “All calls”, “Missed calls”, “Incoming calls” or “Outgoing calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press the off-hook switch.

The following operations can be performed:

- Registering a number as a speed dial

  Press [ ] “Add S. Dial” and then press the desired preset button.

- Deleting the selected number

  Press [ ] “Delete” and press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 378 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Receiving a phone call

Answering the phone

Press the off-hook switch.

Refusing a call

Press the on-hook switch.

Receiving a call when on another call

Press the off-hook switch.

Pressing the off-hook switch again returns you to the previous call.

Adjusting the ringtone volume when receiving a call

Change the ringtone volume using the “VOL-” or “VOL+” button.

To decrease the volume: Press the “VOL-” button.

To increase the volume: Press the “VOL+” button.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 379 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Speaking on the phone

Transferring a call

A call can be transferred between the cellular phone and system while dialing, receiving a call, or during a call. Use one of the following methods:

a. Operate the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the operation of the phone.

b. Press [ ] * “Phone”.

*: This operation can be performed only when transferring a call from the cellular phone to the system during a call.

Muting your voice

Press [ ] “Mute”.

Inputting digits

Press [ ] “0 - 9” and use the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons to input the desired digits.

- To send the input digits, press [ ] “Send”.
- When finished, press [ ] “Wait” to return to the previous screen.

Setting call volume

Change the call volume using the “VOL-” or “VOL+” button.

To decrease the volume: Press the “VOL-” button.

To increase the volume: Press the “VOL+” button.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 380 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **When talking on the phone**

- Do not talk at the same time as the other party.
- Keep the volume of the received voice down. Otherwise, voice echo will increase.

■ **Automatic volume adjustment**

When vehicle speed is 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the volume automatically increases. The volume returns to the previous volume setting when vehicle speed drops to 70 km/h (43 mph) or less.

■ **Phone call system functions**

Depending on the cellular phone, certain functions may not be available.

■ **Situations where the system may not recognize your voice**

- When driving on a rough road
- When driving at high speeds
- When air is blowing out of the vents onto the microphone
- When the air conditioning fan emits a loud noise

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 381 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Bluetooth®

■When using the Bluetooth® audio/Phone

●In the following situations, the system may not function.

- The portable player does not support Bluetooth®
- The cellular phone is located outside the service area
- The Bluetooth® device is switched off
- The Bluetooth® device has a low battery
- The Bluetooth® device is not connected to the system
- The Bluetooth® device is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects

●There may be a delay if a cellular phone connection is made during Bluetooth® audio playback.

●Depending on the type of portable audio player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■When transferring ownership of the vehicle

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 367)

■About Bluetooth®

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



■Compatible models

●Bluetooth® specifications:
Ver. 1.1, or higher (recommended: Ver. 2.1 + EDR or higher)

●Following Profiles:

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (recommended: Ver. 1.3 or higher)

Portable players must correspond to the above specifications in order to be connected to the Bluetooth® audio system. However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

●Cellular phone

- HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (recommended: Ver. 1.5)
- OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1
- PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 382 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Certification

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ When checking DOC, access the above mentioned URL and enter the following Model No. into the Keyword Search (Model No.) from a download folder. Model No. YEP0PTA606A0
Hereby, Panasonic, declares that this YEP0PTA606A0 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
С настоящето, Panasonic, декларира, че YEP0PTA606A0 е в съот ветствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими раз поредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Panasonic tímto prohlašuje, že tento YEP0PTA606A0 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede Panasonic erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr YEP0PTA606A0 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hierbij verklaart Panasonic dat het toestel YEP0PTA606A0 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Panasonic seadme YEP0PTA606A0 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Panasonic vakuuttaa täten että YEP0PTA606A0 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente Panasonic déclare que l'appareil YEP0PTA606A0 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Hiermit erklärt Panasonic, dass sich das Gerät YEP0PTA606A0 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den ü brigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Panasonic ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ YEP0PTA606A0 ΣΥΜ ΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕ Σ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Alulírott, Panasonic nyilatkozom, hogy a YEP0PTA606A0 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyé b elõírásainak.
Con la presente Panasonic dichiara che questo YEP0PTA606A0 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Ar šo Panasonic deklarē, ka YEP0PTA606A0 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo Panasonic deklaruoja, kad šis YEP0PTA606A0 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hawnhekk, Panasonic, jiddikjara li dan YEP0PTA606A0 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Niniejszym Panasonic oświadcza, że YEP0PTA606A0 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Panasonic declara que este YEP0PTA606A0 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Prin prezenta, Panasonic, declară că aparatul YEP0PTA606A0 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Panasonic týmto vyhlasuje, že YEP0PTA606A0 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Panasonic izjavlja, da je ta YEP0PTA606A0 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Por medio de la presente Panasonic declara que el YEP0PTA606A0 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Panasonic att denna YEP0PTA606A0 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir Panasonic yfir því að YEP0PTA606A0 er i samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Panasonic erklærer herved at utstyret YEP0PTA606A0 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Ovim Panasonic, izjavljuje da je YEP0PTA606A0 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, Panasonic, deklariše da je YEP0PTA606A0 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 384 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ While driving

Do not operate the portable audio player, cellular phone or connect a device to the Bluetooth® system.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your portable audio player or cellular phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable audio player or cellular phone.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 385 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Interior features 6

6-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Heater system 386

Automatic air conditioning system 391

Power heater 399

Seat heaters 401

6-2. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list.....403

• Interior lights.....404

• Vanity lights 404

• Personal lights.....405

6-3. Using the storage features

List of storage features 407

• Glove box 408

• Console box 408

• Bottle holders 409

• Cup holders 410

• Auxiliary boxes 411

Luggage compartment features.....413

6-4. Other interior features

Other interior features.....419

• Sun visors.....419

• Vanity mirrors 419

• Clock 420

• Portable ashtray 420

• Power outlets.....421

• Armrest.....422

• Assist grips 423

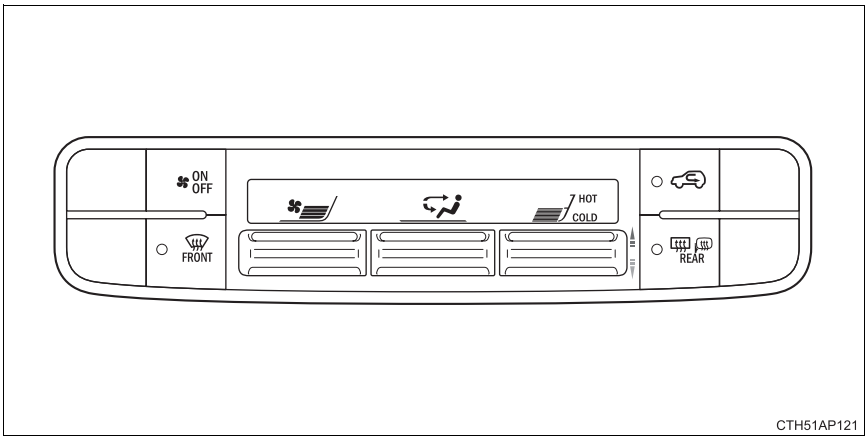
• Coat hooks 423

• Panoramic roof shade.....424

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 386 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Heater system*

Heater controls



CTH51AP121

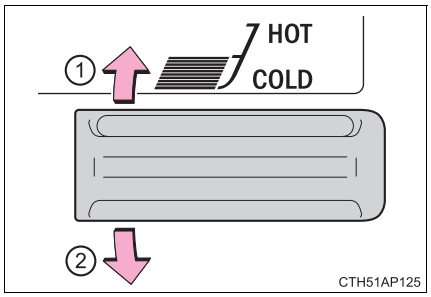
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 387 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

① Increases the temperature

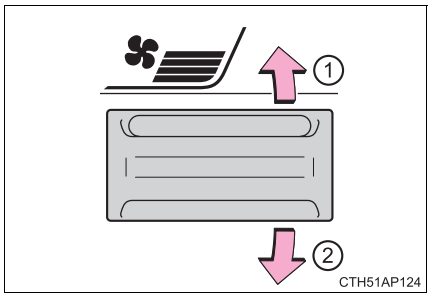
② Decreases the temperature



■ Fan speed setting

① Increases the fan speed

② Decreases the fan speed



■ Change the airflow mode

To change the airflow mode, move the airflow change knob upward or downward.

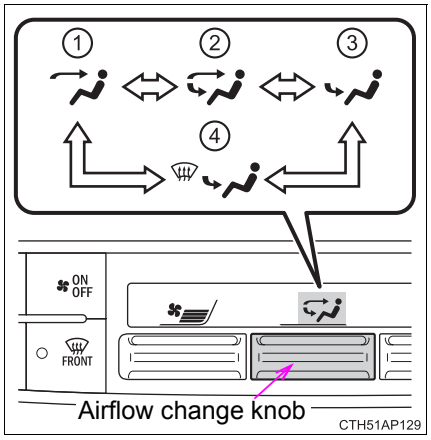
The air outlets used are changed each time the knob is operated.

① Air flows to the upper body.

② Air flows to the upper body and feet.

③ Air flows to the feet.

④ Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 388 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Other functions

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press  .

The mode switches between outside air mode (indicator off) and recirculated air mode (indicator on) each time  is pressed.

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press  .

The dehumidification function operates and fan speed increases.
Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)
To defog the windshield and the front side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press  again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press  .

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

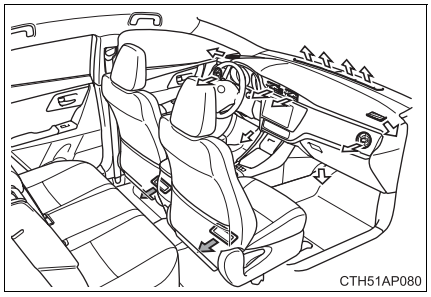
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 389 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Air outlets

■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume change according to the selected airflow mode.
(→P. 387)

⇦ : Some models

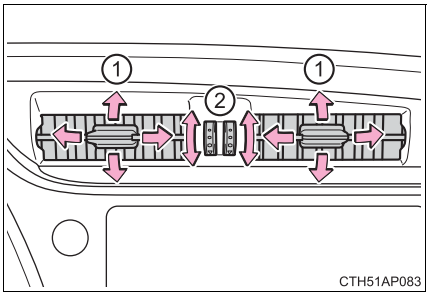

CTH51AP080

■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front center outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

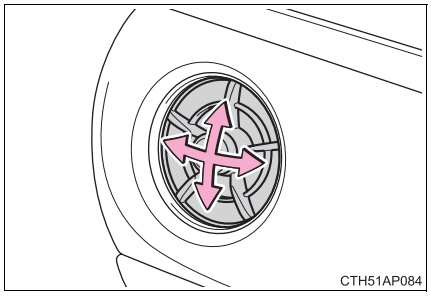
② Turn the knob up to open the vent and down to close the vent.



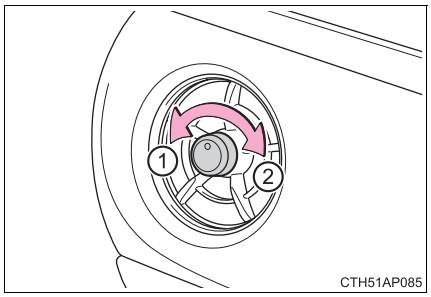
CTH51AP083

▶ Front side outlets

Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.


CTH51AP084

① Open the vent
② Close the vent



Fogging up of the windows

The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

Outside/recirculated air mode

When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior.

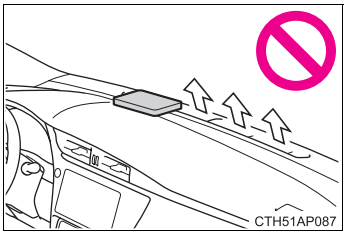
Air conditioning filter

→P. 481

WARNING

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



To prevent burns

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the heater system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 391 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Automatic air conditioning system*

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

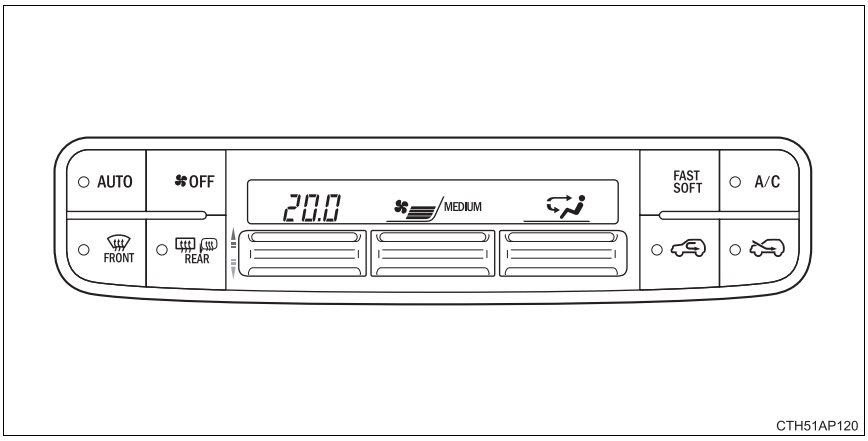
The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

Air conditioning controls

▶ Without dual control mode

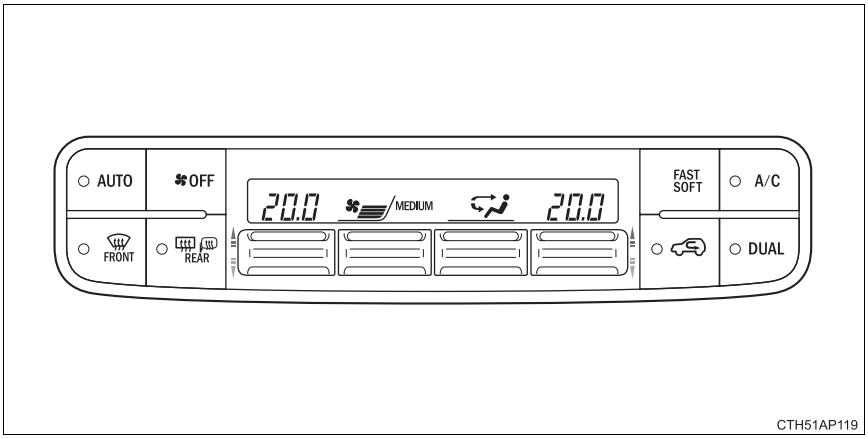


CTH51AP120

*: If equipped

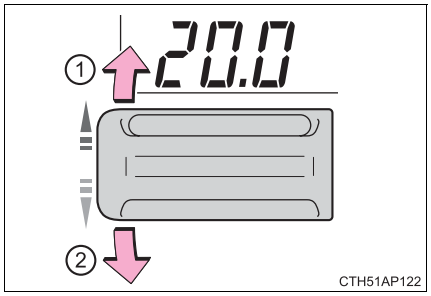
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 392 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ With dual control mode



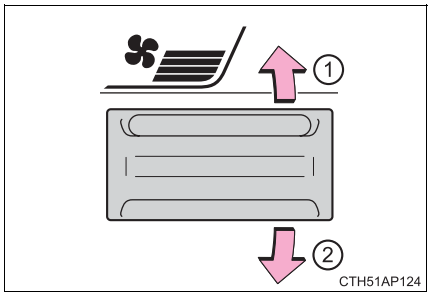
■ Adjusting the temperature setting

① Increases the temperature
② Decreases the temperature



■ Fan speed setting

① Increases the fan speed
② Decreases the fan speed



■ Change the airflow mode

To change the airflow mode, move the airflow change knob upward or downward.

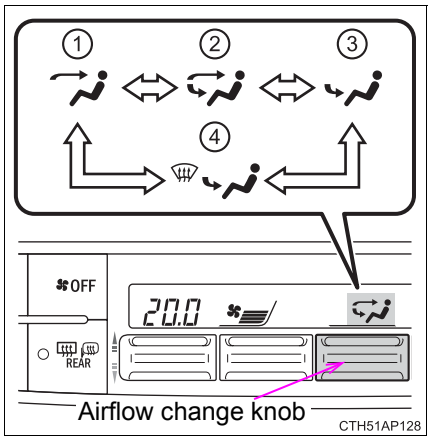
The air outlets used are changed each time the knob is operated.

① Air flows to the upper body.

② Air flows to the upper body and feet.

③ Air flows to the feet.

④ Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.



Using automatic mode

1 Press AUTO .

The dehumidification function begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

2 Adjust the temperature setting.

3 To stop the operation, press OFF .

■ Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 394 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately (vehicles with dual control mode)

To turn on the dual control mode, perform any of the following procedures:

● Press 

.

● Adjust the passenger's side temperature setting.

The indicator comes on when the dual control mode is on.

Other functions

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

▶ Vehicles without dual control mode

Press  to change to recirculated air mode.

Press  to change to outside air mode.

When recirculated air mode is selected, the indicator on  illuminates.

When outside air mode is selected, the indicator on  illuminates.

▶ Vehicles with dual control mode

Press  .

The mode switches between outside air mode (indicator off) and recirculated air mode (indicator on) each time  is pressed.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 395 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press 

.

The dehumidification function operates and fan speed increases.
Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)
To defog the windshield and the front side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press 

again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press 

.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ Blower customization

Fan speed settings can be changed.

1 Press 

.

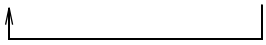
2 Press 

.

3 Each time 

is pressed, the fan speed changes as follows.

“MEDIUM”→“SOFT”→“FAST”

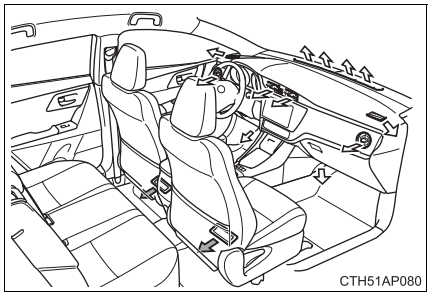


Air outlets

■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume change according to the selected airflow mode.
(→P. 393)

⇦ : Some models

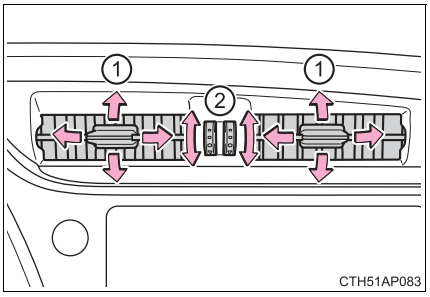

CTH51AP080

■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front center outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

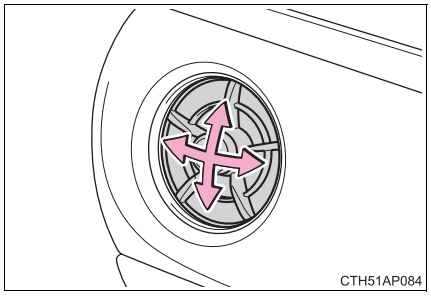
② Turn the knob up to open the vent and down to close the vent.



CTH51AP083

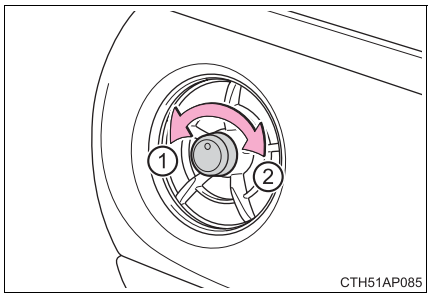
▶ Front side outlets

Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.


CTH51AP084

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 397 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

① Open the vent
② Close the vent



■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after [AUTO] is pressed.

■ **Fogging up of the windows**

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Turning [A/C] on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.
- If you turn [A/C] off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ **Outside/recirculated air mode**

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ **When the outside temperature is low**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when [A/C] is pressed.

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P. 481

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. air conditioning setting) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 608)

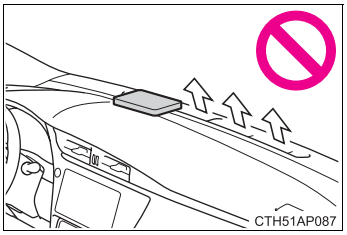
WARNING

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

- Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather.

  The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

- Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



■ **To prevent burns**

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

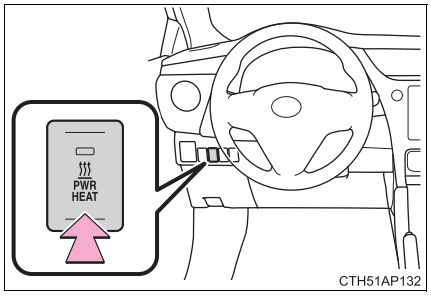
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 399 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Power heater*

This feature is used to keep the cabin warm in extremely cold conditions.

On/off

The power heater turns on about 30 seconds after you press the switch and it takes approximately 55 seconds to warm up.



■ **The power heater can be operated when**

The engine is running.

■ **Normal characteristics of power heater operation**

The following cases do not indicate a malfunction.

- When the power heater is turned on or off, some white smoke and a slight odor may be emitted from the power heater exhaust, located under the floor.
- When the power heater is being used under extremely cold conditions, vapor may be visible from its exhaust.
- When the power heater is turned off, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment for about 2 minutes until the power heater turns off completely.

■ **After the heater is off**

We recommend not restarting the heater for 10 minutes after you turn it off. Otherwise, a noise may be heard as the heater ignites.

■ **When refueling your vehicle**

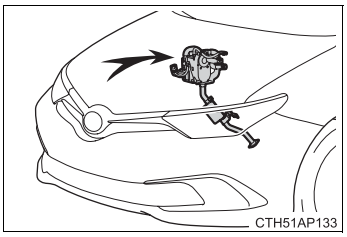
The engine must be turned off. Turning the engine off turns the power heater off.

*: If equipped

WARNING

To prevent burns or damage to your vehicle

- Do not touch the heater or its exhaust pipe as they are hot. You may burn yourself.
- Keep flammable items such as fuel away from the heater and its exhaust pipe. This may cause a fire.



NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle

- Do not turn the heater on and off repeatedly in 5 minute intervals as this can shorten the life of the heater components. If the engine must be turned on and off repeatedly within short intervals (such as when the vehicle is being used for delivery purposes), turn the heater off.
- Do not modify or open the heater without consulting any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. This may cause a heater malfunction or a fire.
- Be careful not to splash water or spill liquid directly on the heater or on the heater fuel pump. This may cause the heater to malfunction.
- Keep the intake and exhaust pipes of the heater free from water, snow, ice, mud, etc. If the pipes become clogged, this can cause the heater to malfunction.
- If you notice anything unusual, such as a fluid leak, smoke or poor operation, turn off the heater and have your vehicle checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 401 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Seat heaters*

WARNING

- Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the seats when the heater is on:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Observe the following precautions to prevent the minor burns or overheating
  - Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
  - Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

NOTICE

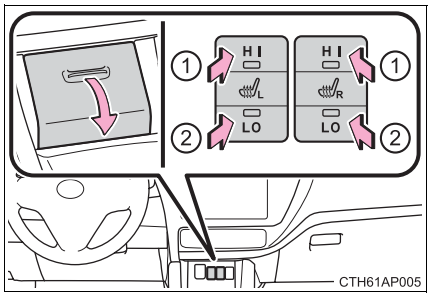
- Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not use the functions when the engine is not running.

After pulling the lid to open, press the switch.

① High temperature

② Low temperature

The indicator light comes on when the switch is on.



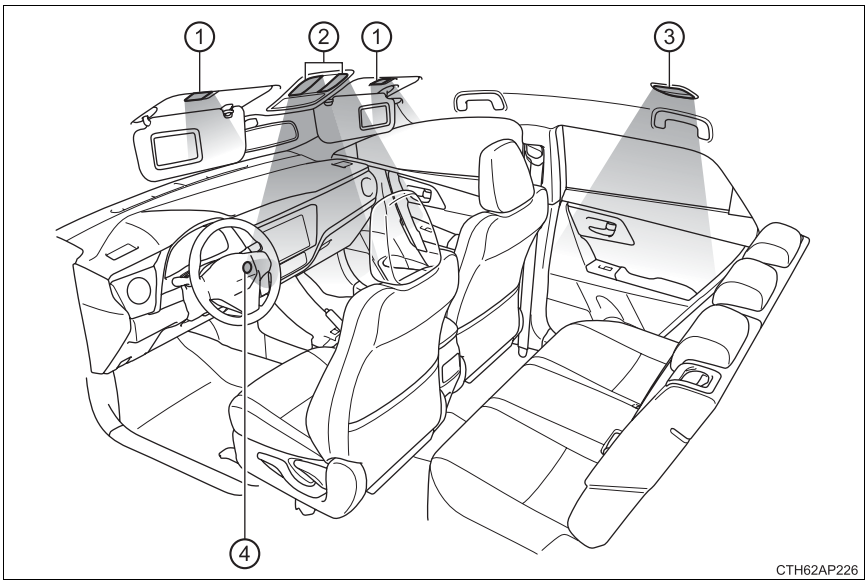
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 402 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
  The seat heaters can be used when the engine switch is in the “ON” position.
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  The seat heaters can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- When not in use, put the switch in the neutral position. The indicator will turn off.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 403 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Interior lights list



① Vanity lights (if equipped) (→P. 404)

② Front interior/front personal lights (→P. 404, 405)

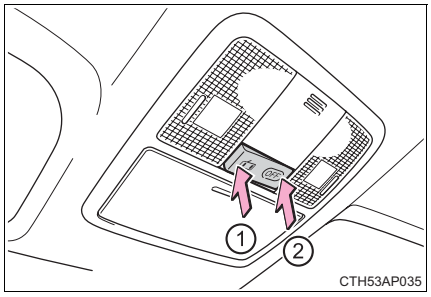
③ Rear interior light (if equipped) (→P. 404)
Rear personal light (if equipped) (→P. 405)

④ Engine switch light (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

Interior lights

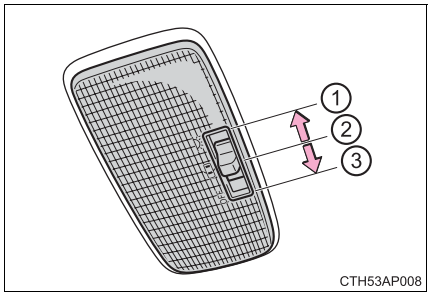
■ Front

① Door position
② Off



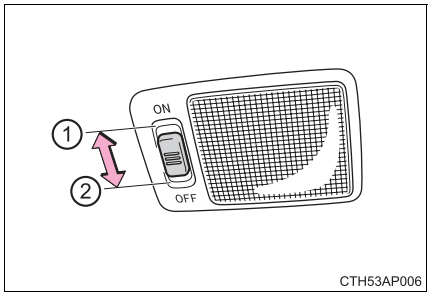
■ Rear (if equipped)

① On
② Door position
③ Off



Vanity lights (if equipped)

① On
② Off



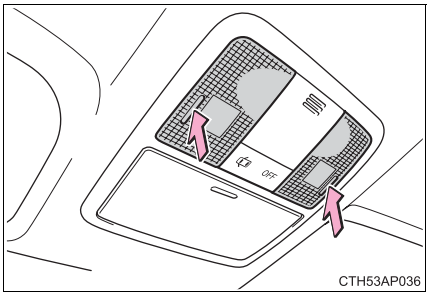
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 405 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Personal lights

■ Front

On/off

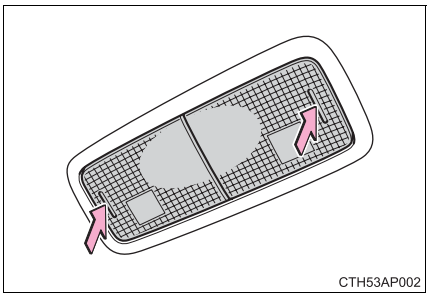
When the lights are on due to the door link switch, a light will not turn off even if its lens is pressed.



■ Rear (if equipped)

On/off

When the front interior lights are on due to the door link switch, a light will not turn off even if its lens is pressed.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 406 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Illuminated entry system**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

When the interior light switch is in the “DOOR” position, the interior lights automatically turn on/off according to the engine switch position, whether the doors are locked/unlocked and whether the doors are open/closed.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

When the interior light switch is in the “DOOR” position, the interior lights and engine switch light automatically turn on/off according to engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked and whether the doors are open/closed.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

The following lights will turn off automatically after 20 minutes:

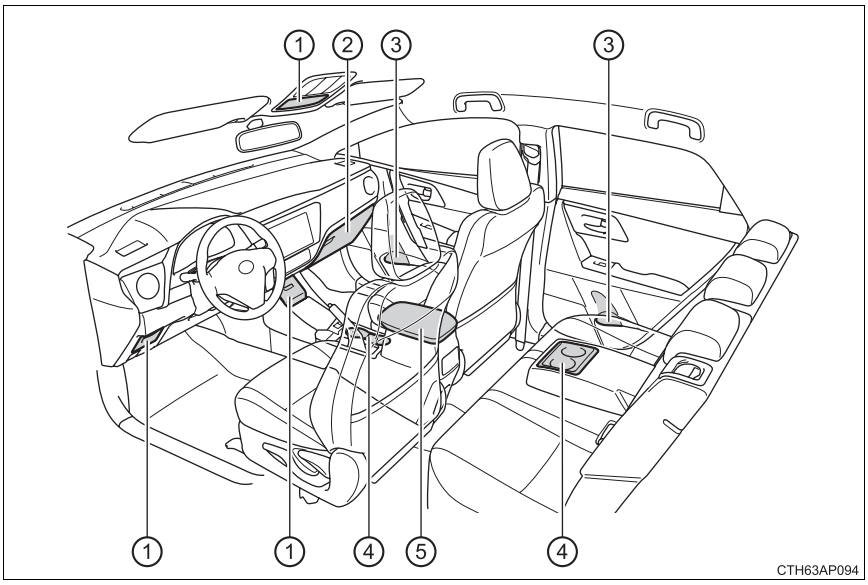
- Personal/interior lights
- Luggage compartment light
- Vanity lights (if equipped)

■ **Customization that can be configured at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional**

Settings (e.g. the time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P. 608)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 407 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

List of storage features



① Auxiliary boxes (→P. 411)
② Glove box (→P. 408)
③ Bottle holders (→P. 409)
④ Cup holders (if equipped) (→P. 410)
⑤ Console box (→P. 408)

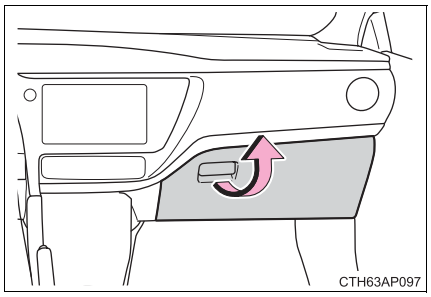
WARNING

- Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:
  - Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
  - Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.
- When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use, keep the lids closed.
  In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 408 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

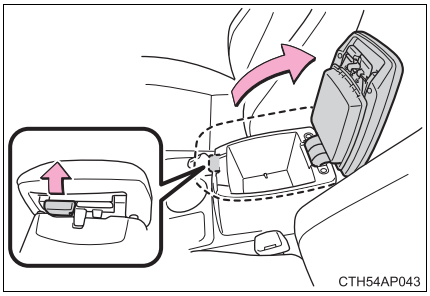
Glove box

Pull up the lever to open the glove box.



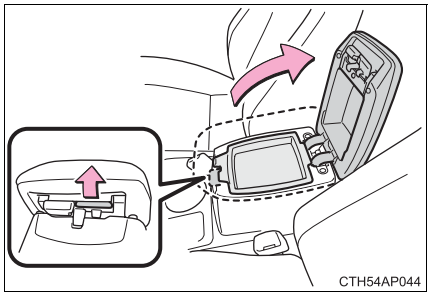
Console box

▶ Console box



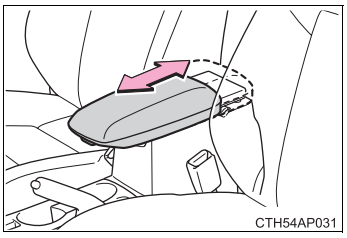
Lift the lid while pulling up the knob on the right seat side.

▶ Upper level box



Lift the lid while pulling up the knob on the left seat side.

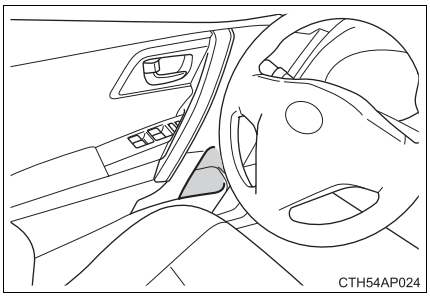
The console box lid can be slid forward or backward. (with slide function)



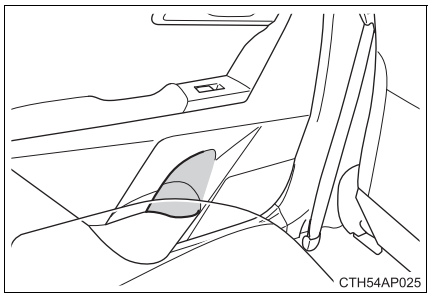
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 409 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Bottle holders

▶ Front



▶ Rear



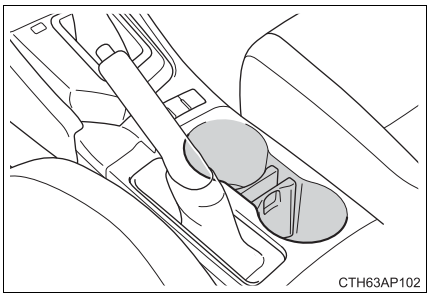
- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

⚠ WARNING

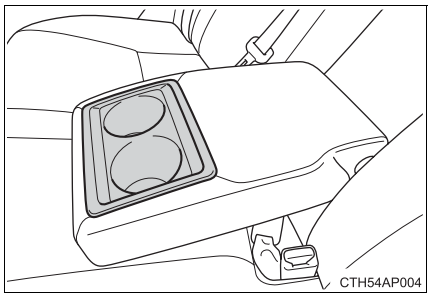
Do not place anything other than a bottle in the bottle holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury.

Cup holders

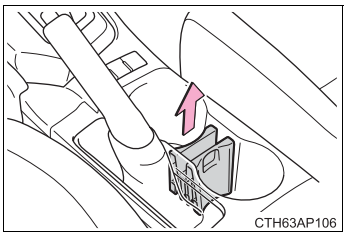
▶ Front



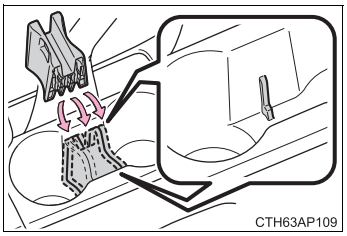
▶ Rear (if equipped)



- The insert for the front cup holders can be removed for cleaning.



- The front cup holders can be adjusted to the appropriate size for a cup or drink can by changing the insert position.



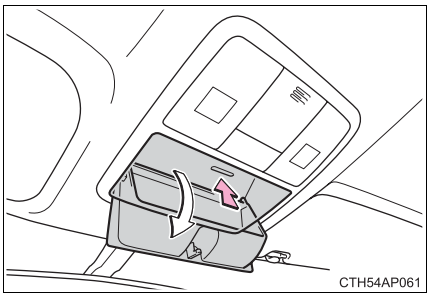
⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 411 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

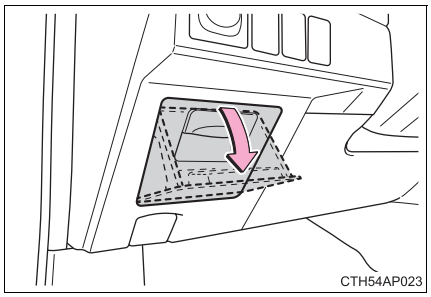
Auxiliary boxes

▶ Type A



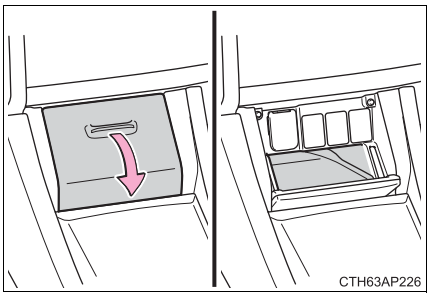
Push the lid to open.

▶ Type B



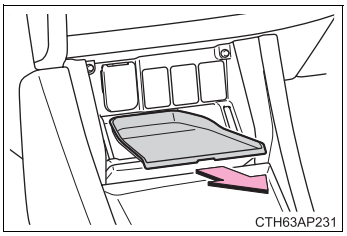
Pull the tab to open.

▶ Type C



Pull the lid to open.

Type C only: The tray can be removed.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 412 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

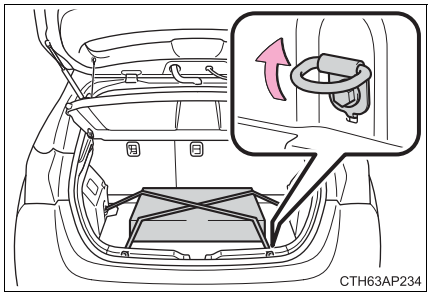
- Keep the auxiliary boxes closed. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open auxiliary box or the items stored inside.
- Type A only: Do not store items heavier than 0.2 kg (0.4 lb.).
  Doing so may cause the auxiliary box to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 413 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Luggage compartment features

Cargo hooks (if equipped)

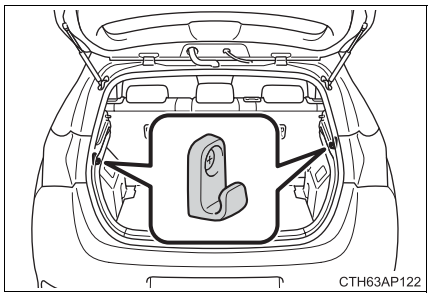
Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.



WARNING

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

Grocery bag hooks



NOTICE

Do not hang any object heavier than 4 kg (8.8 lb.) on the grocery bag hook.

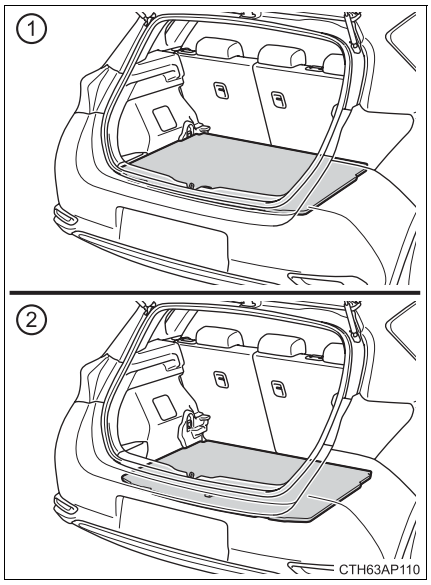
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 414 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Deck board (if equipped)

① Upper position

② Lower position

The lower position can be used when the deck board is placed on the deck mat.



⚠ WARNING

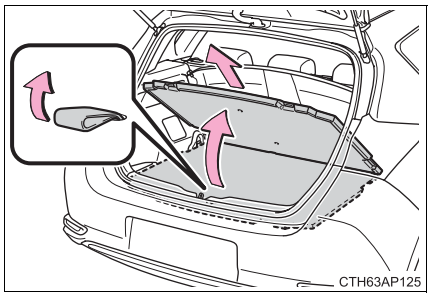
Do not place anything on the deck board when operating the board.

Otherwise, your fingers may be caught or an accident may result causing injuries.

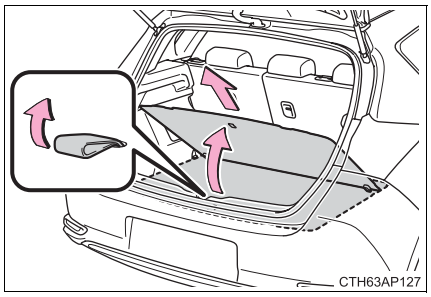
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 415 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Auxiliary boxes (if equipped)

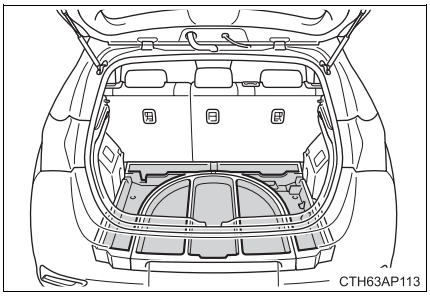
1 Lift the deck board tab and pull it toward you to remove it. (if equipped)



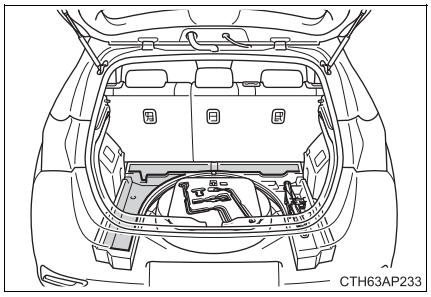
2 Lift the deck mat tab and pull it toward you to remove it.



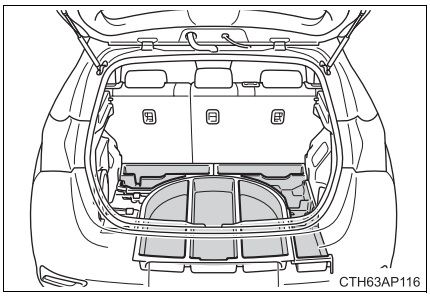
▶ Type A



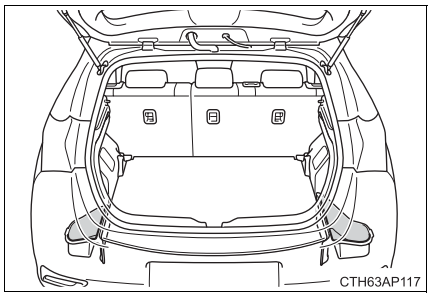
▶ Type B



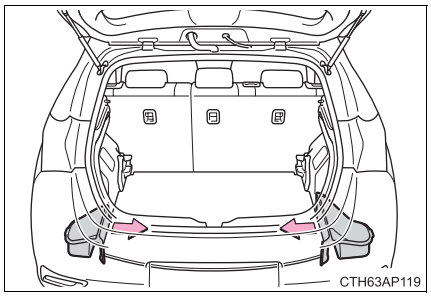
▶ Type C



Side auxiliary boxes (if equipped)

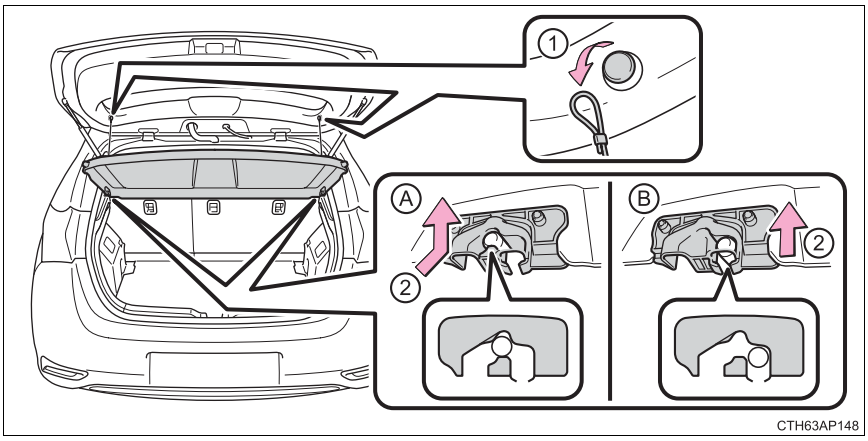


The luggage side trays can be removed when the deck board is in the lower position.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 417 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Removing the luggage cover



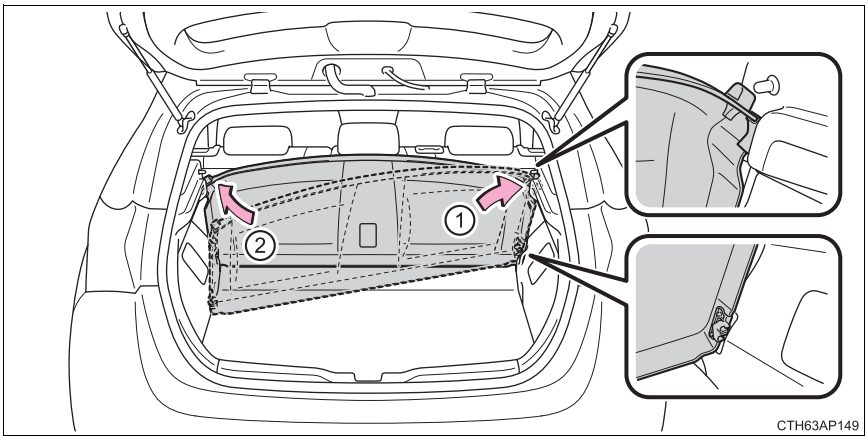
① Unhook the cords.

② Remove the cover from the anchors.

The cover can be removed by pulling it in the direction of the arrow labeled “A”.

If this does not work, pull the cover in the direction labeled “B”.

The luggage cover can be stowed on the back of the rear seats.



① Insert one side of the luggage cover into the gap between the back of the rear seat and deck side trim.

② While moving the luggage cover toward the back of the rear seat, insert the other side of the luggage cover.

Make sure that the luggage cover is securely installed.

When using the luggage cover, reverse the steps listed.

NOTICE

Do not apply a strong impact to the stored luggage cover. Doing so may damage the luggage cover.

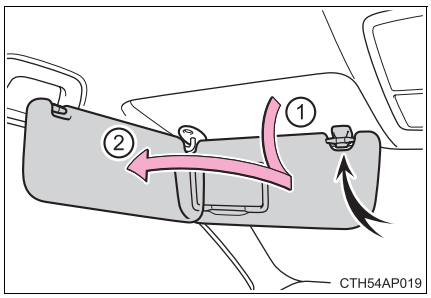
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 419 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Other interior features

Sun visors

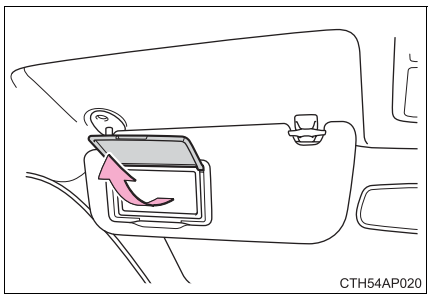
① To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

② To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.



Vanity mirrors

Open the cover.



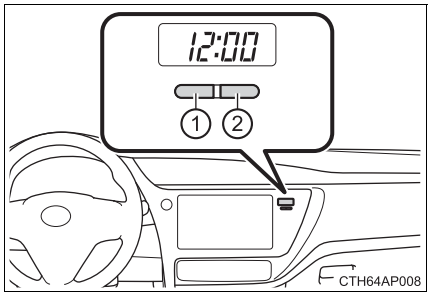
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 420 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Clock

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.

① Adjusts the hours

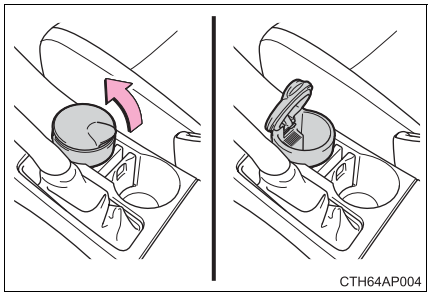
② Adjusts the minutes



- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
  The clock is displayed when the engine switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  The clock is displayed when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.
- When the battery terminals are disconnected and reconnected, the clock will automatically be set to 1:00.

Portable ashtray (if equipped)

The ashtray can be installed in a cup holder. (→P. 410)



⚠ WARNING

- When not in use, keep the ashtray closed.
  Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- To prevent fire, fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- To prevent fire, do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 421 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

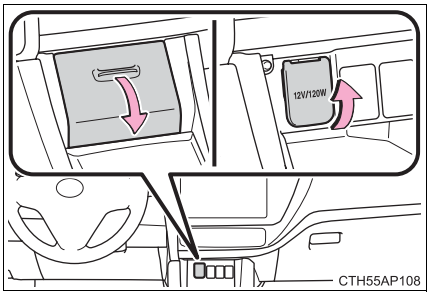
Power outlets

For front and rear: Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

When using electronic goods, make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets is less than 120 W.

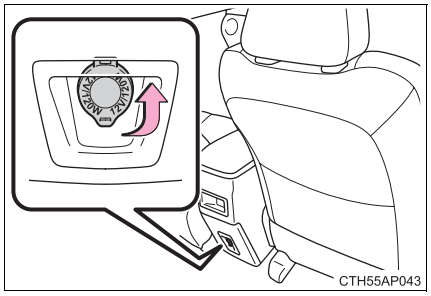
For luggage compartment: Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

▶ Front



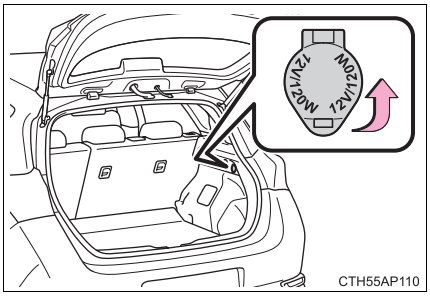
Pull the lid to open it, then open the cover.

▶ Rear



Open the cover.

▶ Luggage compartment



Open the cover.

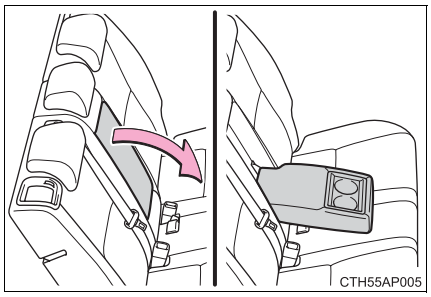
- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
  The power outlets can be used when the engine switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  The power outlets can be used when the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.
- Vehicles with Stop & Start system: When the engine restarts after having been stopped by the Stop & Start system, the power outlet may be temporarily unusable, but this is not a malfunction.

NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the power outlets, close the power outlet covers when the power outlets are not in use.
  Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlets may cause a short circuit.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Armrest (if equipped)

Fold down the armrest for use.



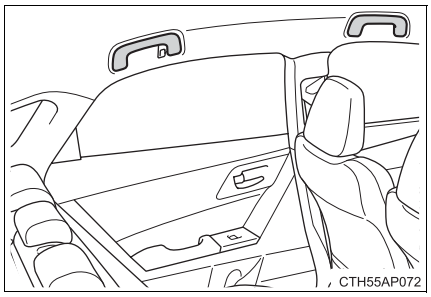
NOTICE

To prevent damage to the armrest, do not apply too much load on the armrest.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 423 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



WARNING

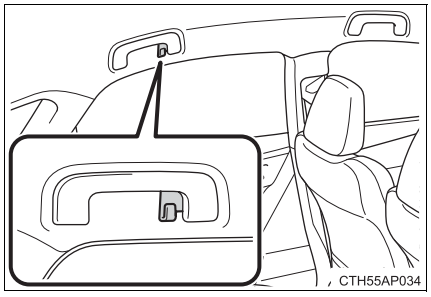
Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the assist grip, do not put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Coat hooks

Coat hooks are provided on the rear assist grips.



WARNING

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 424 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Panoramic roof shade (if equipped)

Use the overhead switch to open or close the panoramic roof shade.

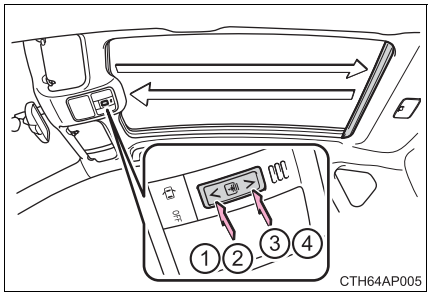
① Closing

② Automatic full-closing (press and hold)*

③ Opening

④ Automatic full-opening (press and hold)*

*: Pressing either side of the switch will stop the panoramic roof shade travel partway.



■ The panoramic roof shade can be operated when

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in the “ON” position.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the panoramic roof shade and the frame while closing, travel is stopped and the panoramic roof shade opens slightly.

■ If the panoramic roof shade does not open/close automatically

1 Press the open side of the switch to open the panoramic roof shade.

2 Press and hold the open side of the switch until the panoramic roof shade opens fully and then closes slightly.

After this procedure is completed, check that the automatic opening/closing function is available.
If the automatic opening/closing function does not work properly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 425 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Closing the panoramic roof shade

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the panoramic roof shade is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the panoramic roof shade.
  Closing a panoramic roof shade on someone can cause death or serious injury.
  The driver is responsible for instructing children not to operate the panoramic roof shade.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the panoramic roof shade fully closes.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 426 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 427 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Maintenance and care 7

7-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 428

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 432

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements.....435

7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions.....438

Hood 441

Positioning a floor jack.....443

Engine compartment.....444

Tires.....465

Tire inflation pressure 476

Wheels.....478

Air conditioning filter 481

Wireless remote control/electronic key battery.....483

Checking and replacing fuses.....486

Light bulbs 492

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 428 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 429 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■When using a car wash (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 144)

■Aluminum wheels (if equipped)

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners.
  Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

⚠ WARNING

■When washing the vehicle

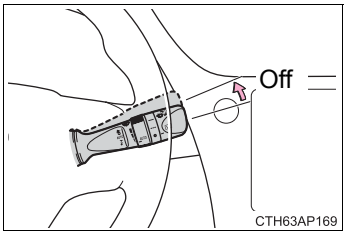
Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 430 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wiper)

Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in “AUTO”, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■Precautions regarding the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 431 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wiper)

Set the wiper switch to the off position.
If the wiper switch is in “AUTO”, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■When using a high pressure car wash

Do not bring the nozzle tip close to following parts and boots (Rubber or resin manufactured cover), or connectors. Parts may be damages if they come into contact with high pressure water.

- Traction related parts
- Steering parts
- Suspension parts
- Brake parts

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 432 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 433 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Caring for leather areas

Toyota recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

WARNING

Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 43)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 434 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 435 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. Toyota recommends the following maintenance:

■ Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, read the “Toyota Service Booklet” or “Toyota Warranty Booklet”.

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you’re an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer will keep a record of maintenance, which could be useful should you ever require Warranty Service. Should you choose to select a qualified and equipped professional other than an authorized Toyota repairer to service or maintain your vehicle, we recommend that you request that a record of maintenance be kept.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 436 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Where to go for maintenance service?**

In order to maintain your vehicle in the best possible condition, Toyota recommends that maintenance service operations as well as other inspections and repairs be carried out by authorized Toyota dealers or repairers or other duly qualified and equipped professionals. For repairs and services covered by your warranty, please visit an authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, who will use genuine Toyota parts in repairing any difficulties you may encounter. There can also be advantages in utilizing authorized Toyota dealers or repairers for non-warranty repairs and services, as members of the Toyota network will be able to expertly assist you with any difficulties you may encounter.

Your Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically due to their experience with Toyota vehicles.

■ **Does your vehicle need repair?**

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling, or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal or clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual transmission), pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 437 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ Handling of the battery

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 459)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 438 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 459)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine coolant level (→P. 456)	• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 449)	• “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 486)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P. 492)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator, condenser and intercooler (→P. 458)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 476)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 462)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 439 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.
  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in the “ON” position, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 458)

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 458)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 440 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

If the fluid level is low or high

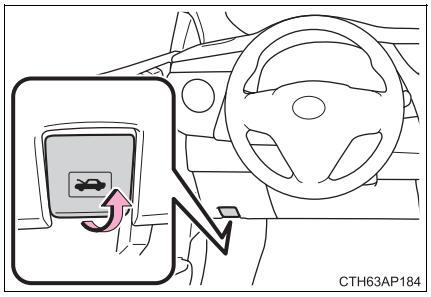
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 441 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

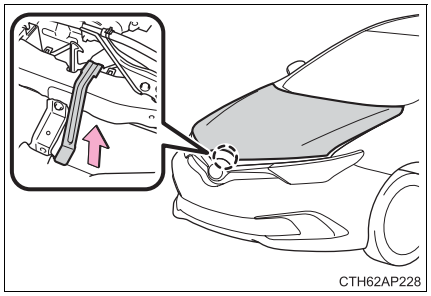
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

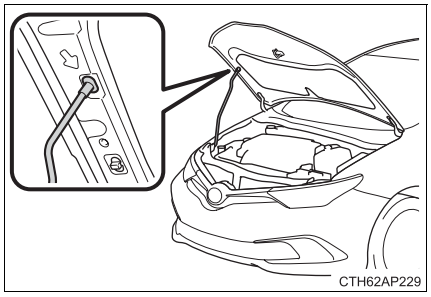
1 Pull the hood lock release lever.
The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



3 Hold the hood open by inserting the support rod into the slot.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 442 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

■ After installing the support rod into the slot

Make sure the rod supports the hood securely preventing it from falling down onto your head or body.

NOTICE

■ When closing the hood

Be sure to return the support rod to its clip before closing the hood. Closing the hood with the support rod not clipped could cause the hood to bend.

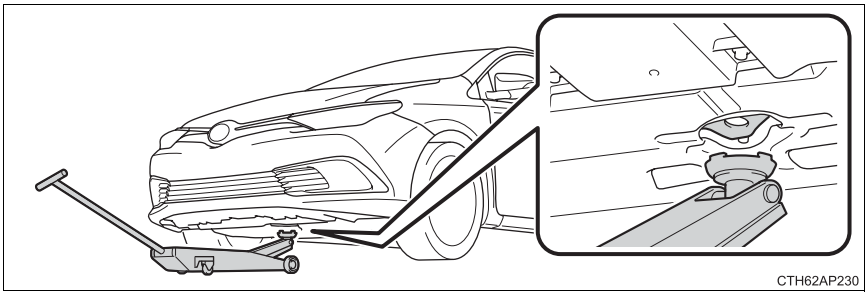
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 443 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Positioning a floor jack

When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

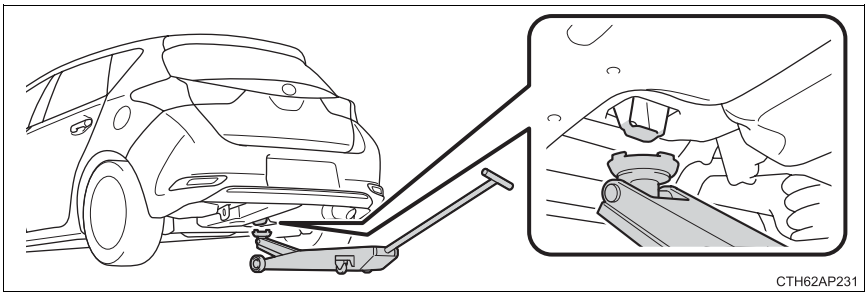
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

◆ Front

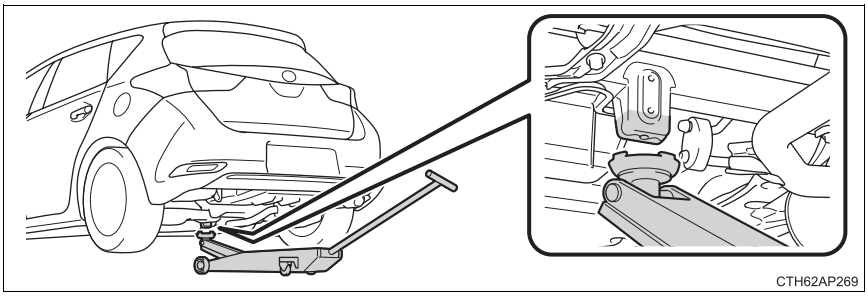

CTH62AP230

◆ Rear

▶ Type A


CTH62AP231

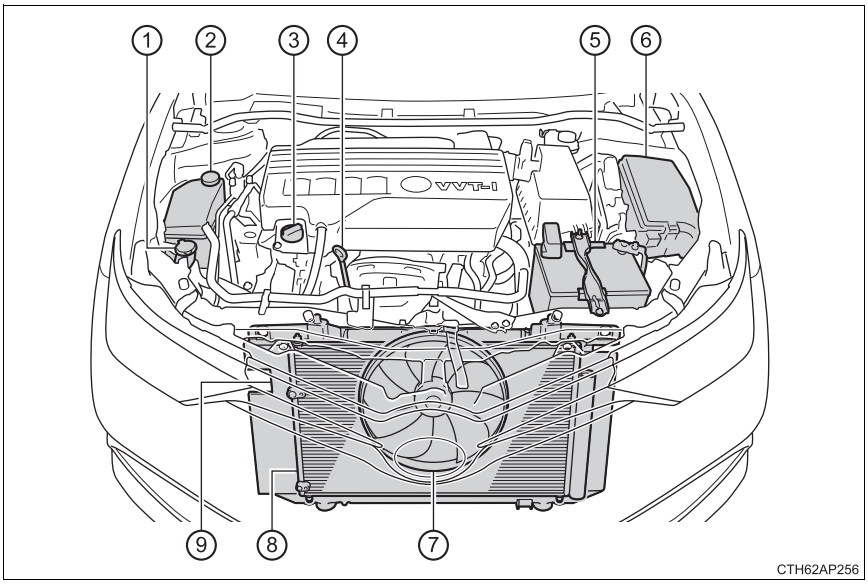
▶ Type B


CTH62AP269

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 444 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Engine compartment

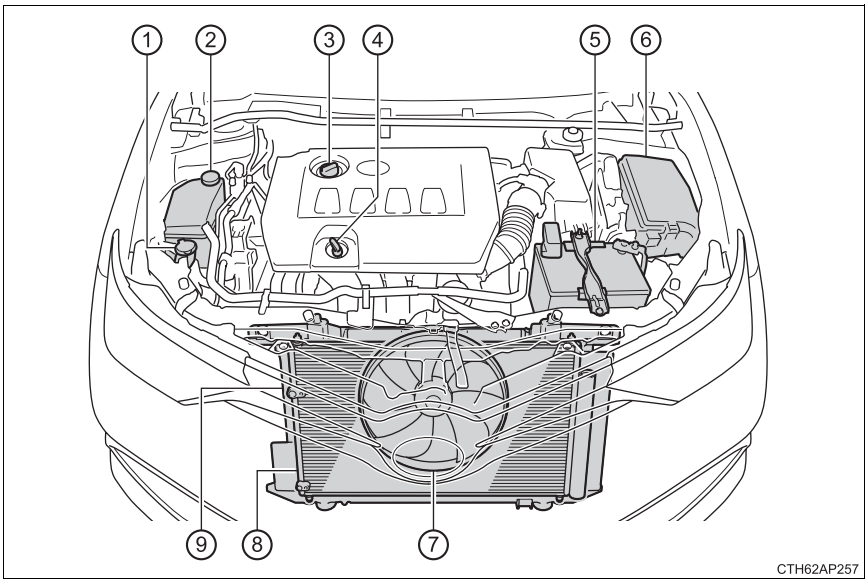
■ 1NR-FE engine



① Washer fluid tank (→P. 462)
② Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 456)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 452)
④ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 449)
⑤ Battery (→P. 459)
⑥ Fuse box (→P. 486)
⑦ Electric cooling fan
⑧ Condenser (→P. 458)
⑨ Radiator (→P. 458)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 445 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

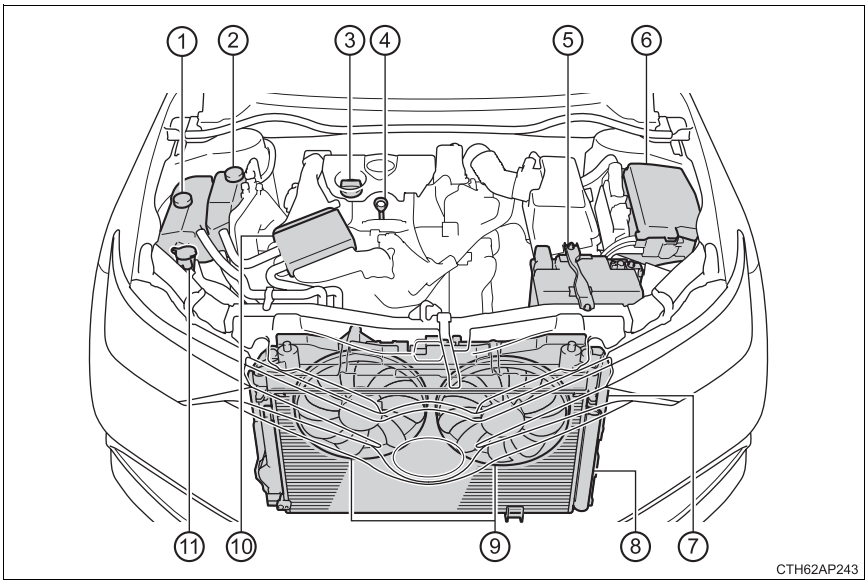
■ 1ZR-FAE engine



① Washer fluid tank (→P. 462)
② Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 456)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 452)
④ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 449)
⑤ Battery (→P. 459)
⑥ Fuse box (→P. 486)
⑦ Electric cooling fan
⑧ Condenser (→P. 458)
⑨ Radiator (→P. 458)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 446 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

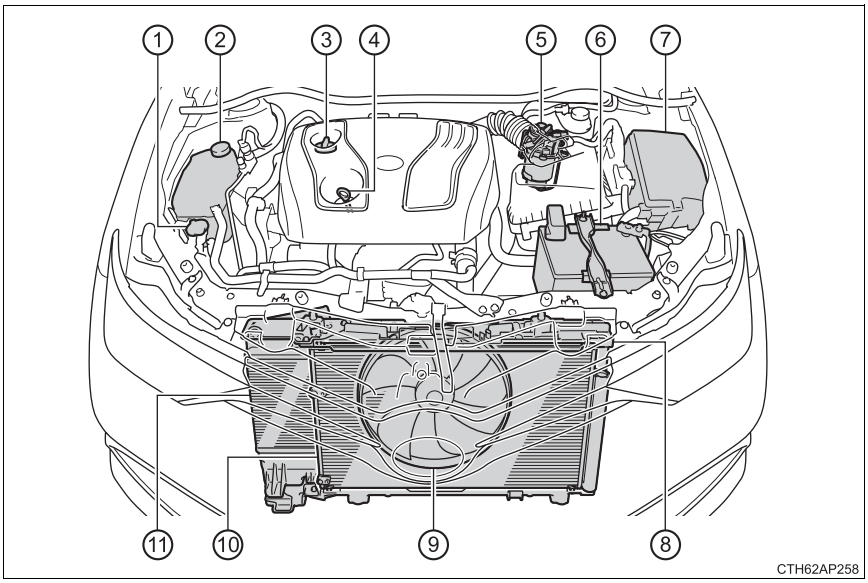
■ 8NR-FTS engine



① Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 456)
② Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P. 457)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 452)
④ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 449)
⑤ Battery (→P. 459)
⑥ Fuse box (→P. 486)
⑦ Radiator (→P. 458)
⑧ Condenser (→P. 458)
⑨ Electric cooling fans
⑩ Intercooler
⑪ Washer fluid tank (→P. 462)

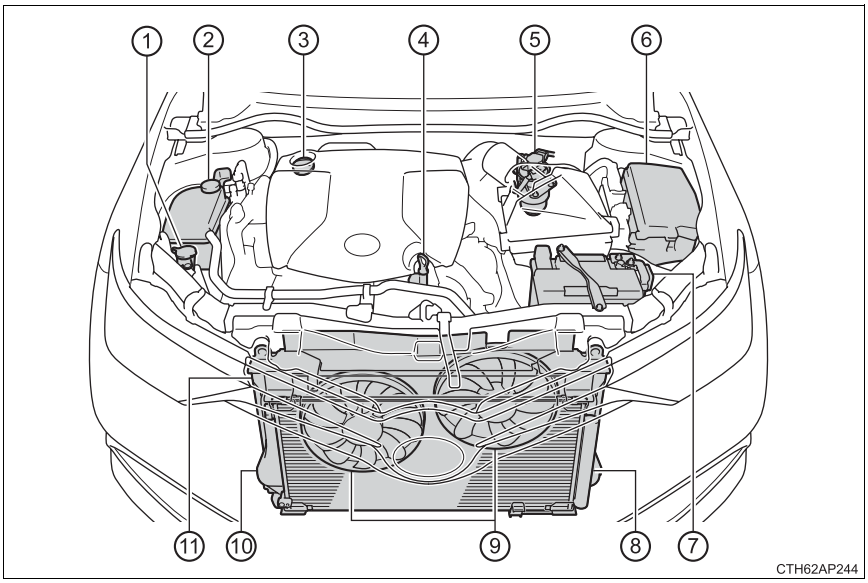
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 447 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **1ND-TV engine**



① Washer fluid tank (→P. 462)
② Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 456)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 452)
④ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 449)
⑤ Fuel filter (→P. 463)
⑥ Battery (→P. 459)
⑦ Fuse box (→P. 486)
⑧ Radiator (→P. 458)
⑨ Electric cooling fan
⑩ Condenser (→P. 458)
⑪ Intercooler (→P. 458)

■ **1WW engine**



① Washer fluid tank (→P. 462)
② Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 456)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 452)
④ Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 449)
⑤ Fuel filter (→P. 464)
⑥ Fuse box (→P. 486)
⑦ Battery (→P. 459)
⑧ Condenser (→P. 458)
⑨ Electric cooling fans
⑩ Intercooler (→P. 458)
⑪ Radiator (→P. 458)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 449 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

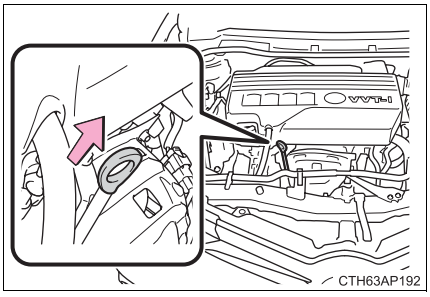
1 Gasoline engine: Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

Diesel engine: Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

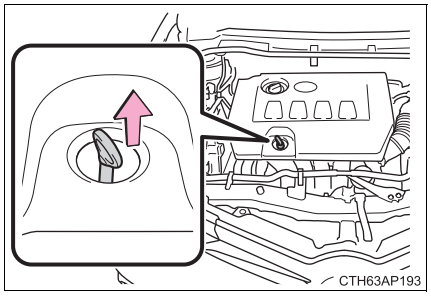
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 450 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

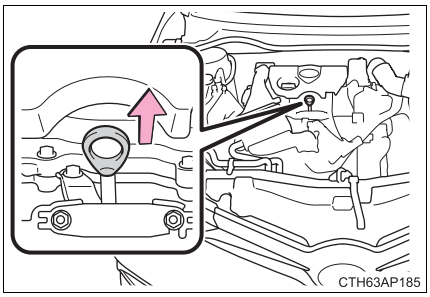
▶ 1NR-FE engine



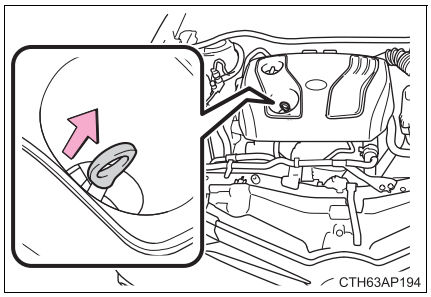
▶ 1ZR-FAE engine



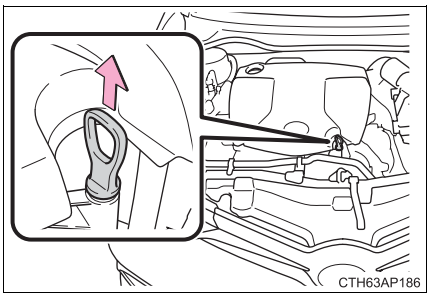
▶ 8NR-FTS engine



▶ 1ND-TV engine



▶ 1WW engine



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 451 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

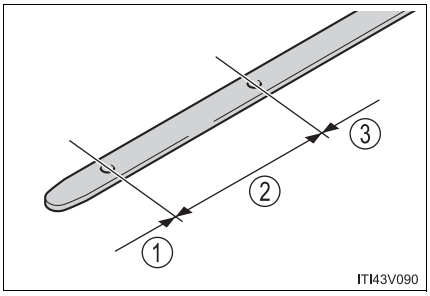
5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

① Low

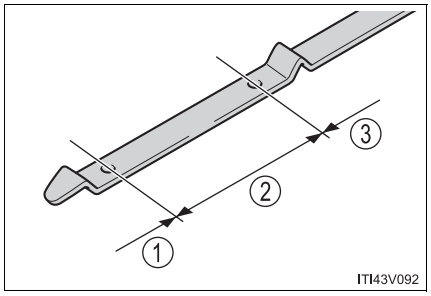
② Normal

③ Excessive

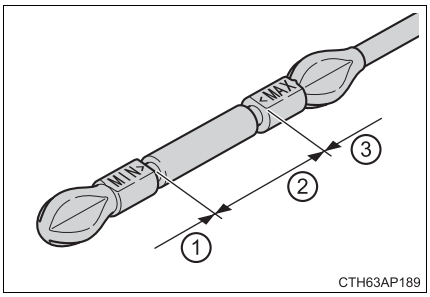
▶ Flat dipstick



▶ Non-flat dipstick type A



▶ Non-flat dipstick type B



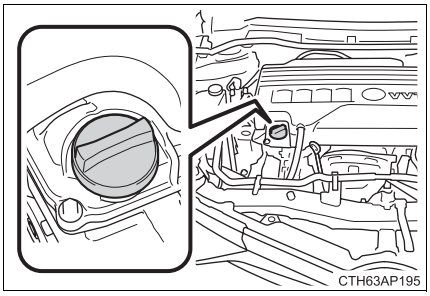
The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

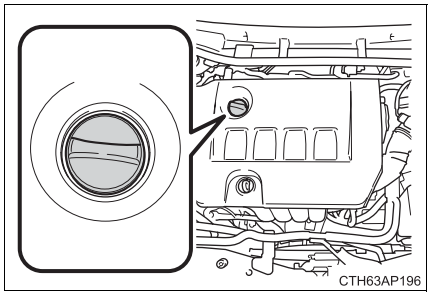
■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

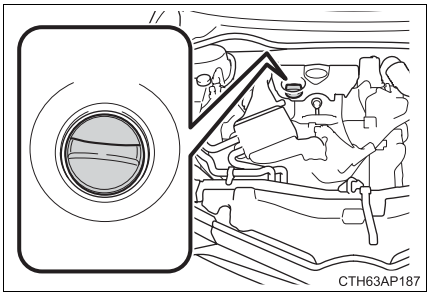
▶ 1NR-FE engine



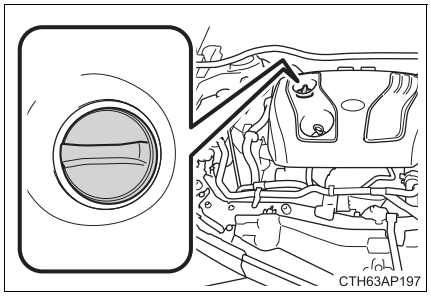
▶ 1ZR-FAE engine



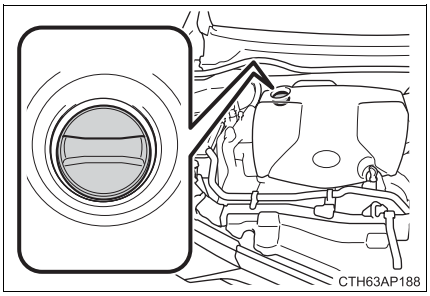
▶ 8NR-FTS engine



▶ 1ND-TV engine



▶ 1WW engine



Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 453 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Engine oil selection	→P. 593
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	▶ Gasoline engine 1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.) ▶ Diesel engine 1.3 L (1.4 qt., 1.1 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 454 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Engine oil consumption**

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ **After changing the engine oil (8NR-FTS, 1ND-TV and 1WW engines only)**

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

1 Switch the display to the trip meter “A” when the engine is running. (→P. 98)

2 Turn the engine switch off.

3 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
While pressing the display change switch or the “DISP” switch (→P. 98), turn the engine switch to the “ON” position (do not start the engine because reset mode will be canceled). Continue to press and hold the switch until the trip meter displays “000000”.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
While pressing the display change switch or the “DISP” switch (→P. 98), turn the engine switch to the IGNITION ON mode (do not start the engine because otherwise the reset mode will be canceled). Continue to press and hold the switch until the trip meter displays “000000”.

▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

1 Switch the display to the trip meter “A” when the engine is running. (→P. 104)

2 Turn the engine switch off.

3 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
While pressing the “TRIP” switch (→P. 104), turn the engine switch to the “ON” position (do not start the engine because reset mode will be canceled). Continue to press and hold the switch until the trip meter displays “00000”.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
While pressing the “TRIP” switch (→P. 104), turn the engine switch to the IGNITION ON mode (do not start the engine because otherwise the reset mode will be canceled). Continue to press and hold the switch until the trip meter displays “00000”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 455 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

■ Engine oil (1ND-TV engine only)

Using an engine oil other than ACEA C2 may damage the catalytic converter.

■ Engine oil (1WW engine only)

Using engine oil other than “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30 Premium Fuel Economy for 1WW/2WW engines” or any other approved engine oil, may damage the catalytic converter.
If “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30 Premium Fuel Economy for 1WW/2WW engines” or any other approved engine oils are not available at the time, up to 1 L (1.1 qt., 0.9 Imp. qt.) of ACEA C3 can be used to refill. (→P. 593)

Coolant

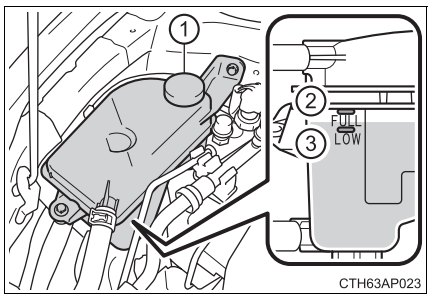
The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

■ Engine coolant reservoir

▶ 1NR-FE, 1ZR-FAE and 1ND-FTV engines

① Reservoir cap
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line

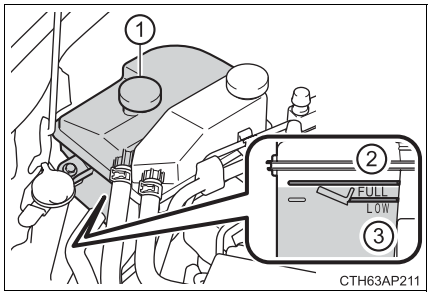
If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.



▶ 8NR-FTS engine

① Reservoir cap
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line

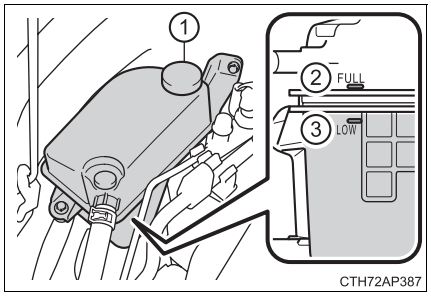
If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.



▶ 1WW engine

① Reservoir cap
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 457 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

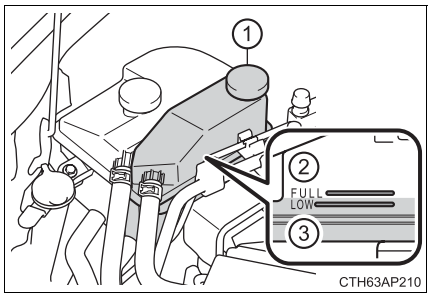
■ Intercooler coolant reservoir (8NR-FTS engine only)

① Reservoir cap

② “FULL” line

③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.



■ Coolant selection

▶ Except 1WW engine

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about engine coolant, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

▶ 1WW engine

Only use “Toyota Genuine Premium Long Life Coolant 1WW/2WW” or equivalent.

“Toyota Genuine Premium Long Life Coolant 1WW/2WW” concentrated product always needs to be mixed as 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about engine coolant, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 458 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Radiator, condenser and intercooler

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler* and clear away any foreign objects.

If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: 1ND-TV and 1WW engines only

WARNING

When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator, condenser or intercooler as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

■ Caution symbols

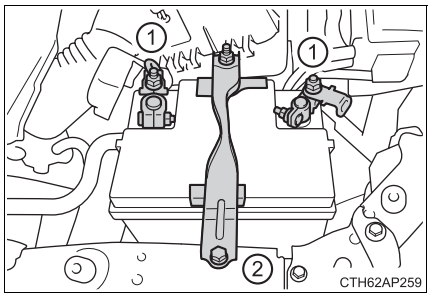
The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks		Battery acid
	Shield eyes		Note operating instructions
	Keep away from children		Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

① Terminals
② Hold-down clamp



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 460 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)**

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine before disconnecting the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 461 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the battery

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

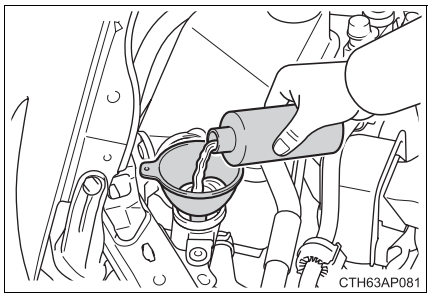
■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is operating. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Washer fluid

▶ Vehicles without headlight cleaner

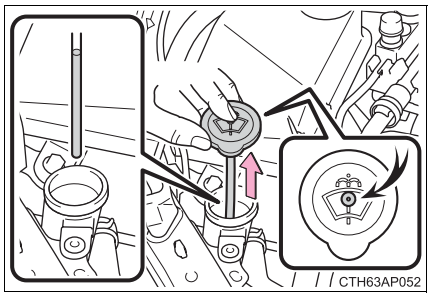
If any washer does not work, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



▶ Vehicles with headlight cleaner

If the fluid level is extremely low add washer fluid.

Raise the cap keeping your finger pressed down on the hole in the center and check the fluid level in the tube.



⚠ WARNING

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 463 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Fuel filter (1ND-TV engine only)

You may drain the fuel filter yourself. However, as the operation is difficult, we recommend having it drained by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Even if you decide to drain it yourself, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

Water in the fuel filter needs to be drained if the fuel filter warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds.

▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

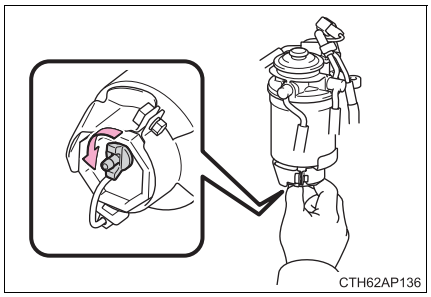
Water in the fuel filter needs to be drained if the "Drain water from fuel filter." warning message is shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.

1 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to the "LOCK" position.
Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch off.

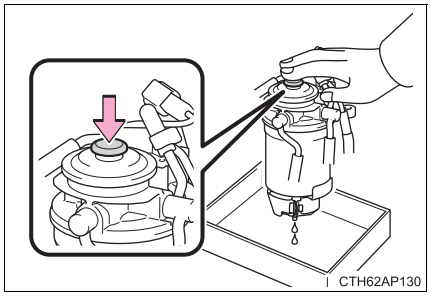
2 Place a small tray under the drain plug to catch the water and any fuel that comes out.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 464 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

3 Turn the drain plug counter-clockwise about 2 to 2 1/2 turns.



4 Operate the priming pump until fuel begins to run out.



5 After draining, tighten the drain plug by hand.

Fuel filter (1WW engine only)

Water in the fuel filter needs to be drained every 20000 km (12000 miles).

Have the fuel filter drained by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

When there is water in the fuel filter

Do not drive continuously with water accumulated in the fuel filter. This will cause damage to the fuel injection pump.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 465 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

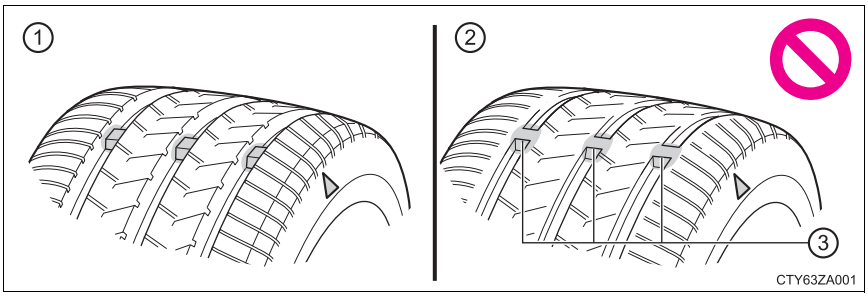
Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



1 New tread

2 Worn tread

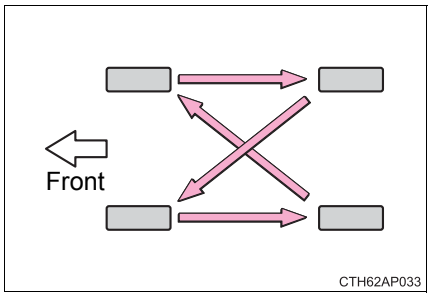
3 Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a “TWI” or “Δ” mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.
Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 466 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Tire rotation (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



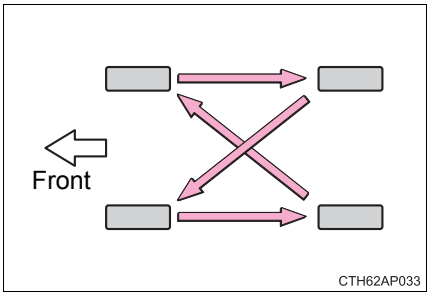
To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Toyota recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles).

When rotating front and rear tires which have different tire inflation pressures, do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

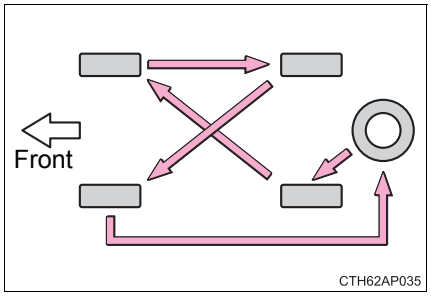
Tire rotation (vehicles without a tire pressure warning system)

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

- Vehicles with a spare tire of a different wheel type from the installed tires or an emergency tire puncture repair kit



- Vehicles with a spare tire of the same wheel type as the installed tires



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Toyota recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles).

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 467 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 524)

◆ Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valves and transmitter ID codes registered by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 469)

◆ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When rotating front and rear tires which have different tire inflation pressures.
- When changing the tire size.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed or load weight.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

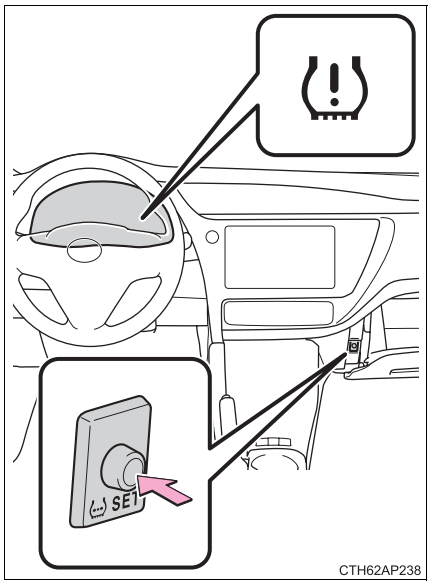
Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 603)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to the “ON” position.

4 Open the glove box. Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.



5 Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Wait for a few minutes with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode and then turn the engine switch off.
Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Wait for a few minutes with the engine switch in the “ON” position and then turn the engine switch to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 469 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

◆ Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Replacing tires and wheels (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Low profile tires (17-inch tires)

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires or tire chains* on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on 225/45R17 tires.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 470 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)**

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

- If non-genuine Toyota wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains etc. are equipped.
- Lock nuts are equipped.
- An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise.
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 471 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **The initialization operation (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to press the reset switch again as initialization will restart automatically when the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode (vehicles with a smart entry & start system) or engine switch to the "ON" position (vehicles without a smart entry & start system) for the next time.
- If you accidentally press the reset switch when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with driving conditions. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After driving for a certain period of time since the initialization has been completed, the warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute.

■ **Registering ID codes (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The ID codes of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitters for two sets of wheels can be registered.

It is not necessary to register the ID codes when replacing normal tires with snow tires, if the ID codes for the wheels of both normal tires and snow tires are registered beforehand.

For information about changing ID codes, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 472 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 23AAM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 23AAM tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 23AAM in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 23AAM est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 23AAM står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 23AAM overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 23AAM in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 23AAM ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 23AAM è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 23AAM cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 23AAM está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 23AAM jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 23AAM vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 23AAM megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 23AAM spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 23AAM je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 23AAM v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 23AAM atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 23AAM atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 23AAM jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 23AAM er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 23AAM er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 23AAM е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 23AAM este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 23AAM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 23AAM u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 23AAM u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky 23AAM eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY "(DoC) is available at the following:
DoC address :http://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

CE0891

Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declares that this PMV-C210 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että PMV-C210 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dat het toestel PMV-C210 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil PMV-C210 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. att denna PMV-C210 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr PMV-C210 overholder de væ sentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät PMV-C210 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigeneinschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ PMV-C210 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩ ΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo PMV-C210 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que el PMV-C210 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que este PMV-C210 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan PMV-C210 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. seadme PMV-C210 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a PMV-C210 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelmé nyeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že PMV-C210 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento PMV-C210 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími p říslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta PMV-C210 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis PMV-C210 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka PMV-C210 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że PMV-C210 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. yfir því að PMV-C210 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret PMV-C210 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og ø vrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., декларира, че PMV-C210 е в съответствие със съществените и зисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

Prin prezenta, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul PMV-C210 este in conformitate cu cerințele esenț iale și cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim , PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj PMV-C210 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., deklariše da je PMV-C210 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 474 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Ovim PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je PMV-C210 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC .

Me anë të kësaj, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO, LTD., Deklaron se ky PMV-C210 është në përputhje me kërkesat themelore dhe dispozitat e tjera përkatëse të direktivës 1999/5/EC.

⚠ WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drivetrain as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Toyota.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Do not operate the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 475 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 467)

Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

Low profile tires (17-inch tires)

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when sustaining impact from the road surface. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 476 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

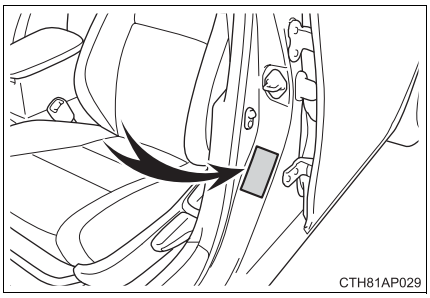
Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Toyota recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P. 603)

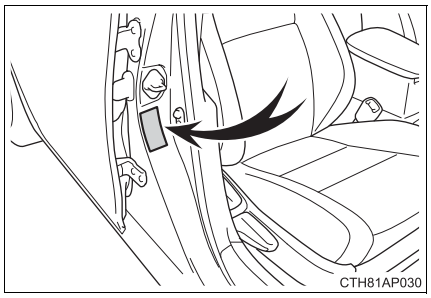
Tire-loading information label

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label on the driver's side door frame as shown.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drivetrain

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 478 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: Conventionally referred to as “offset”.

Toyota does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions (if equipped)

- Use only Toyota wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Toyota genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

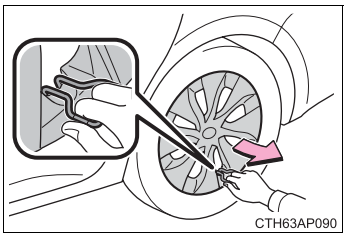
When replacing wheels (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your vehicle (except spare tire) are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 467)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 479 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

When removing the wheel ornament (vehicles with a wheel cap clip)

Remove the wheel ornament using the wheel cap clip.



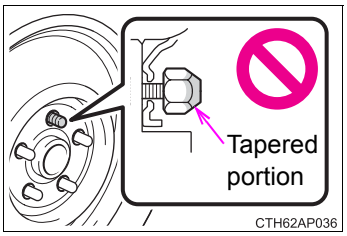
WARNING

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

When installing the wheel nuts

- Be sure to install the wheel nuts with the tapered ends facing inward. Installing the nuts with the tapered ends facing outward can cause the wheel to break and eventually cause the wheel to come off while driving, which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.



- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing an accident and resulting in death or serious injury. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

Use of defective wheels prohibited (vehicles with aluminum wheels)

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 480 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Ensure that only genuine Toyota wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 481 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

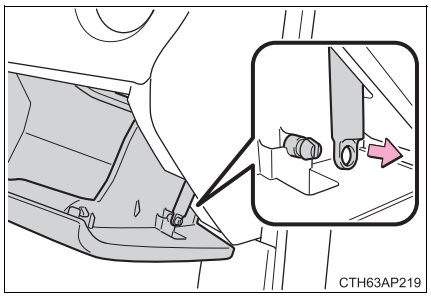
Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

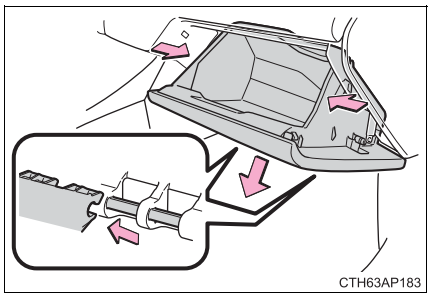
Removal method

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.

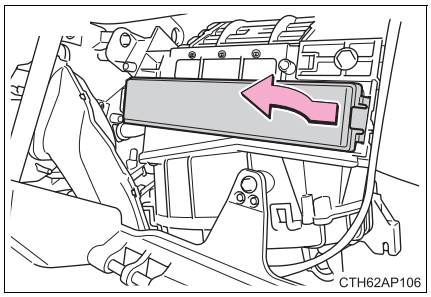


3 Push in the glove box on the vehicle's outer side to disconnect the claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 482 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

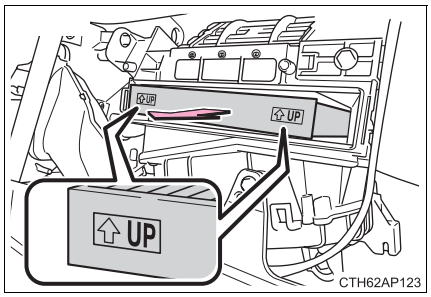
4 Remove the filter cover.


CTH62AP106

■ **Replacement method**

Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The “↑UP” marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.



CTH62AP123

■ **Checking interval**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Toyota Service Booklet” or “Toyota Warranty Booklet”.)

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed.
Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 483 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Wireless remote control/electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted or “Key battery low.” is displayed on the multi-information display (vehicles with a 2-ring meter only).

You will need the following items:

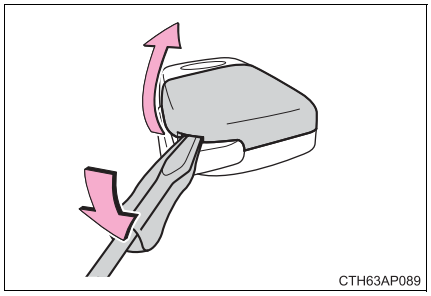
- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2016 (vehicles without a smart entry & start system), or CR2032 (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

Replacing the battery

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

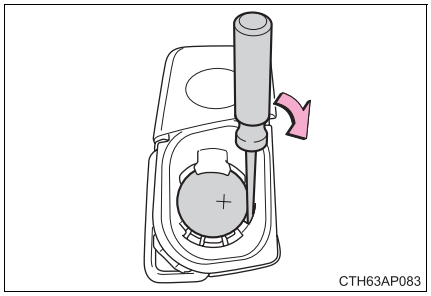
1 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.


CTH63AP089

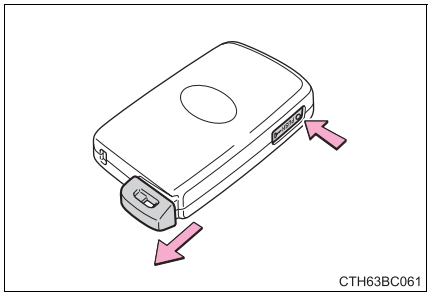
2 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.


CTH63AP083

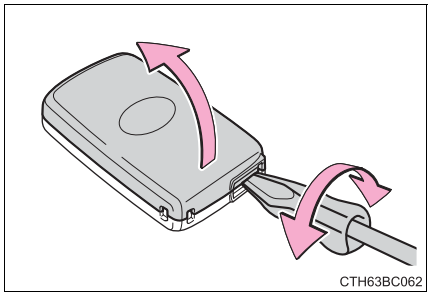
▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

1 Take out the mechanical key.


CTH63BC061

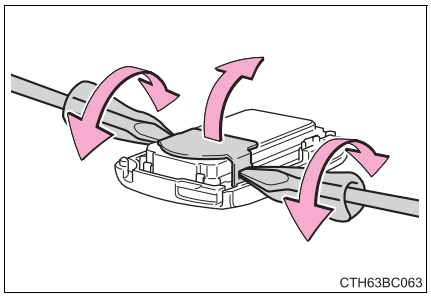
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.


CTH63BC062

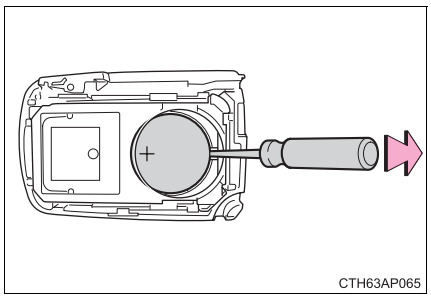
3 Remove the battery cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.


CTH63BC063

4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.


CTH63AP065

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 485 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Use a CR2016 (vehicles without a smart entry & start system) or CR2032 (vehicles with a smart entry & start system) lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to local laws.

■ **If the key battery is depleted**

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system (if equipped), push button start (if equipped) and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

■ **Certification for the lithium battery**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS

⚠ NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 486 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Checking and replacing fuses

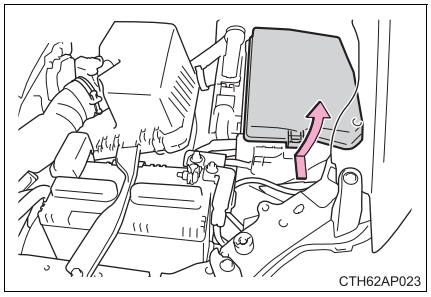
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

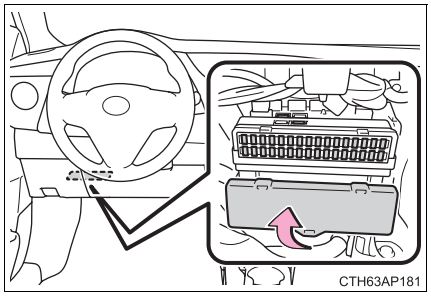


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 487 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ Under the driver's side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

Type A:

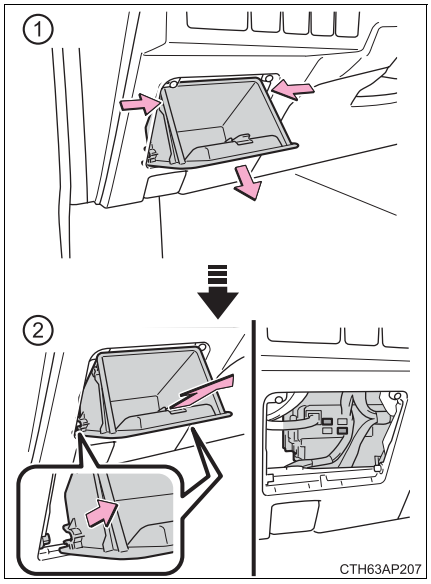
Remove the lid.



Type B:

① Open the auxiliary box. Push in each side of the auxiliary box to disconnect the upper claws.

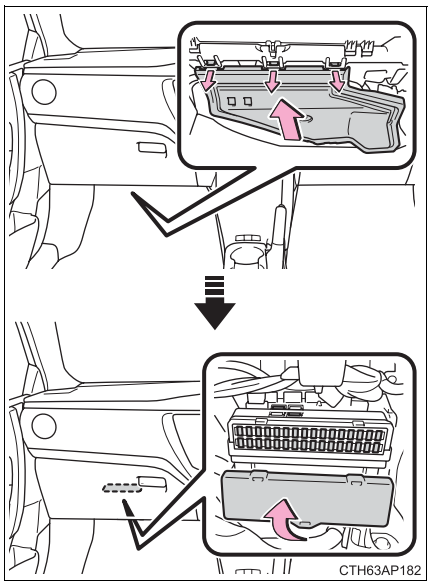
② Pull out the auxiliary box and disconnect the lower claws.



▶ Under the passenger's side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

Type A:

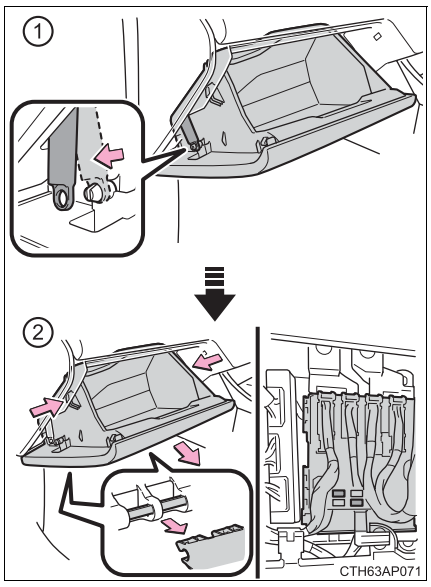
Remove the cover* and the lid.



Type B:

① Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.

② Push in each side of the glove box disconnect the upper claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.

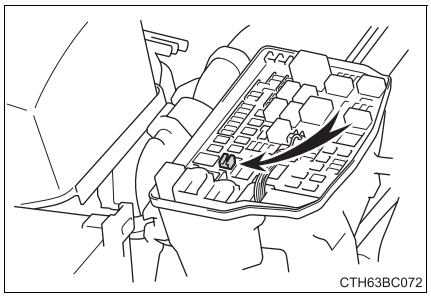


*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 489 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

3 Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

Only type A fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 490 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

4 Check if the fuse is blown.

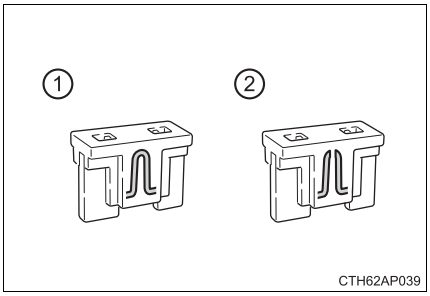
① Normal fuse

② Blown fuse

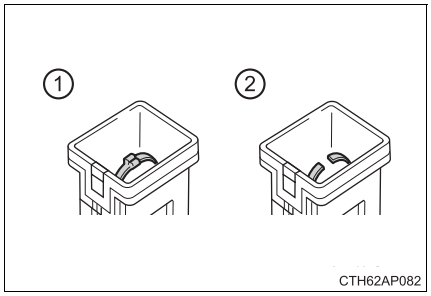
Type A, B, C and D:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type E:
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

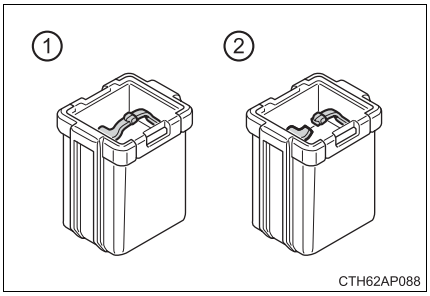
▶ Type A



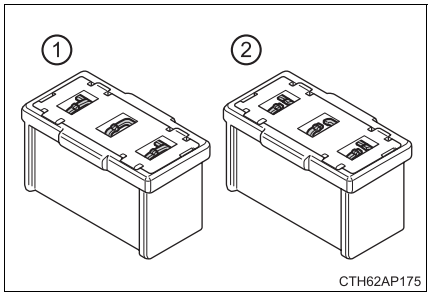
▶ Type B



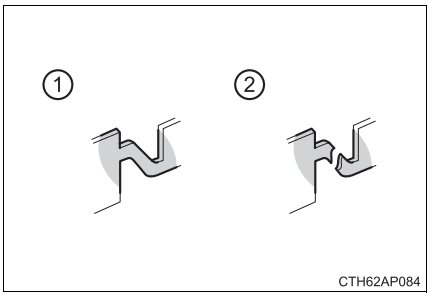
▶ Type C



▶ Type D



▶ Type E



■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 492)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If there is an overload in a circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ **When replacing light bulbs**

Toyota recommends that you use genuine Toyota products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Toyota fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

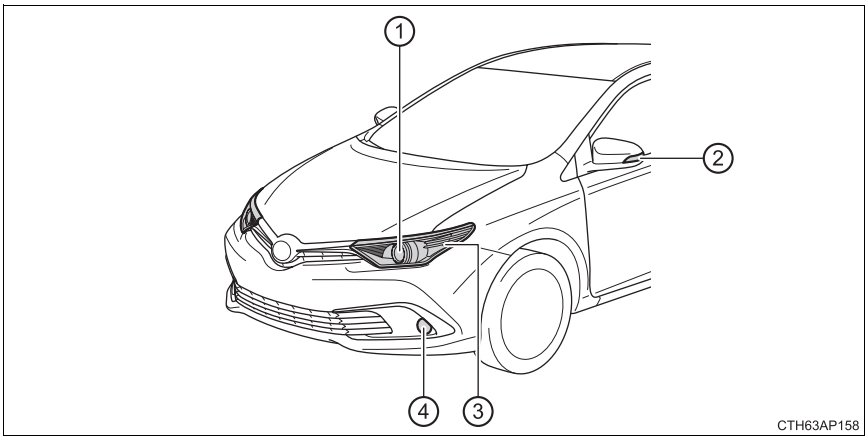
Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P. 605)

Bulb locations

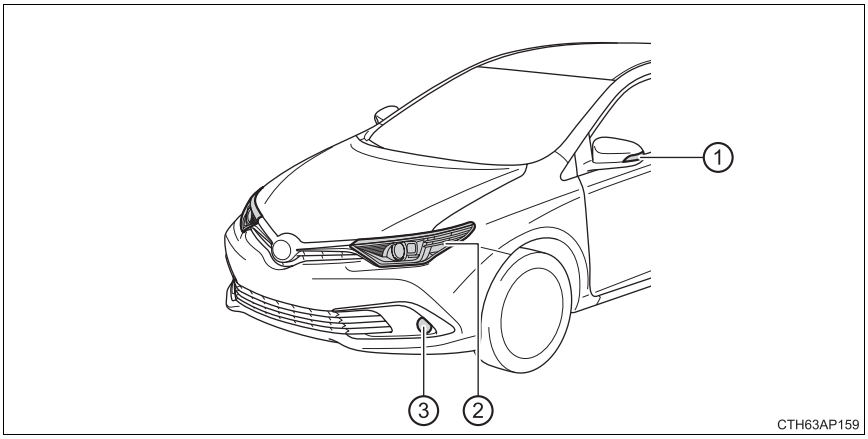
■ Front

▶ Vehicles with halogen headlights



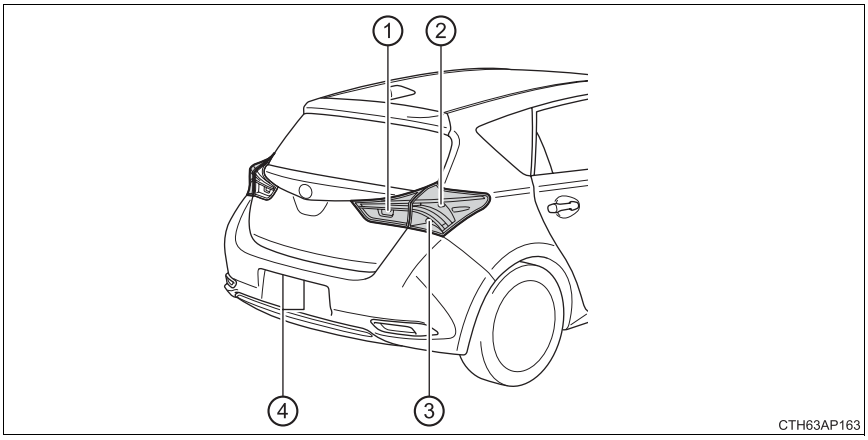
① Headlights
② Side turn signal lights
③ Front turn signal lights
④ Front fog lights (if equipped)

▶ Vehicles with LED headlights



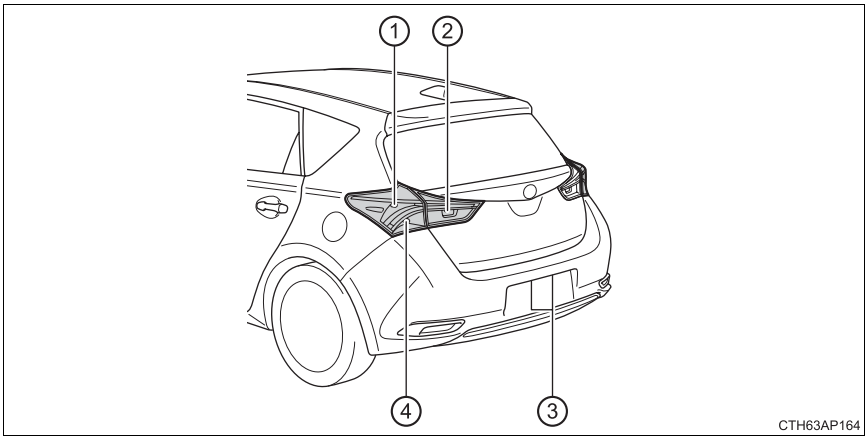
① Side turn signal lights
② Front turn signal lights
③ Front fog lights (if equipped)

■ **Rear (left-hand drive vehicles)**



① Back-up light
② Stop lights
③ Rear turn signal lights
④ License plate lights

■ **Rear (right-hand drive vehicles)**



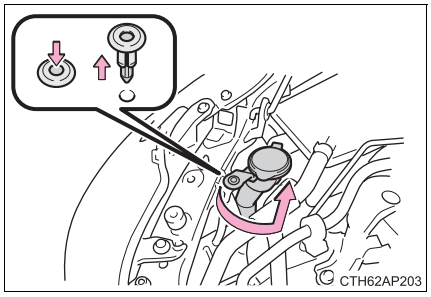
① Stop lights
② Back-up light
③ License plate lights
④ Rear turn signal lights

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 495 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

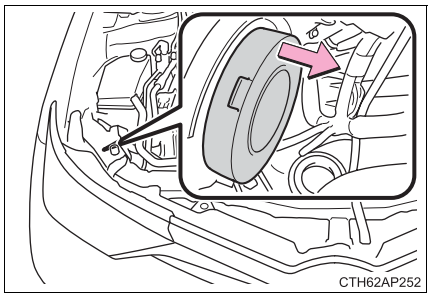
Replacing light bulbs

■ Headlights (vehicles with halogen headlights)

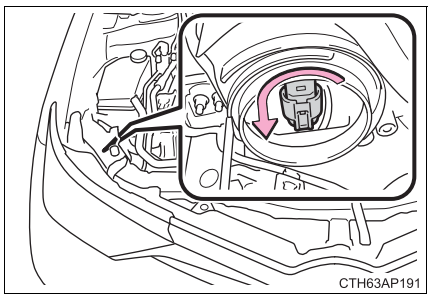
1 Remove the securing clip. Pull out the washer fluid filler opening after turning it. (When replacing right side bulb only.)



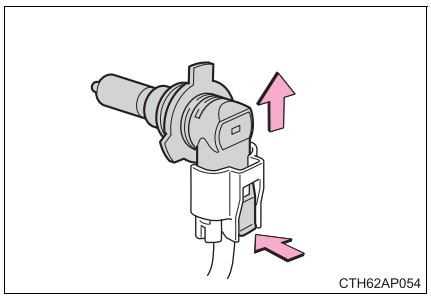
2 Remove the cover.



3 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise and remove it.

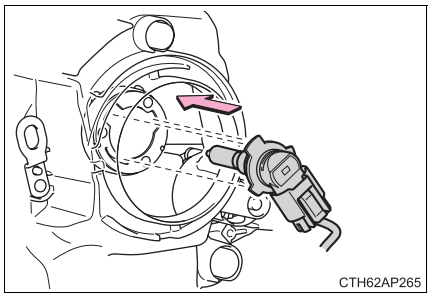


4 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.



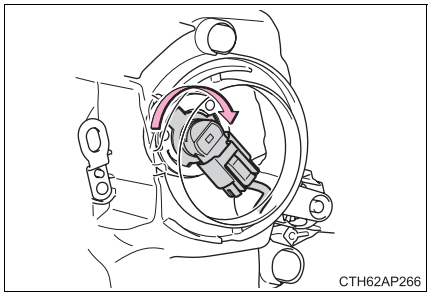
5 Replace the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting and insert.



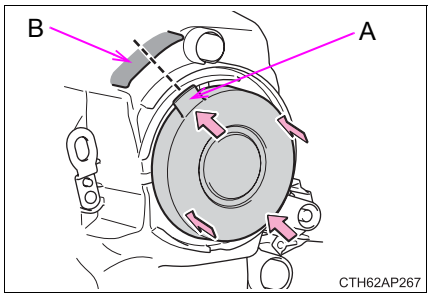
6 Turn and secure the bulb base.

Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

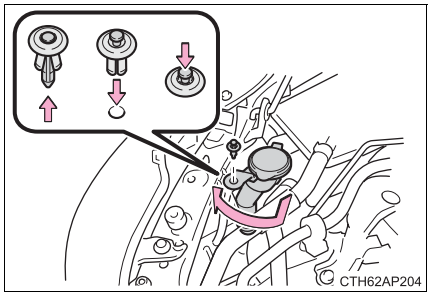


7 Install the cover.

To make sure the cover is installed securely, align the protruding part (A) with the center of the area (B) shown in the illustration and push the perimeter of the cover firmly.



8 Install the washer fluid filler opening by inserting and turning it. Install the securing clip. (When replacing right side bulb only.)

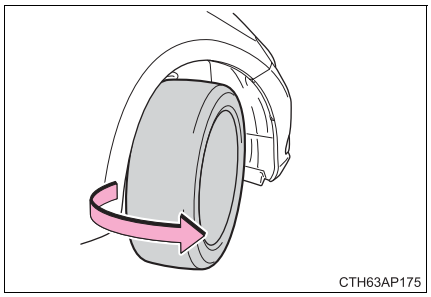


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 497 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

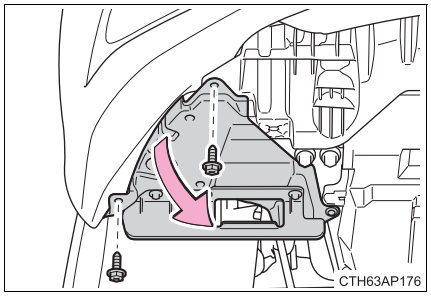
■ Front fog lights (if equipped)

1 Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the light to be replaced.

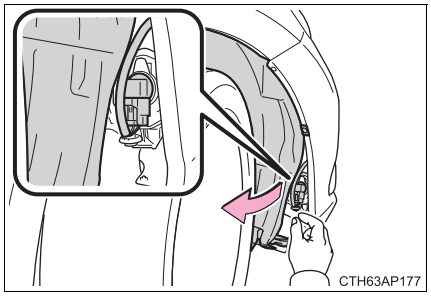
Turn the steering wheel to a point that allows your hand to easily fit between the tire and fender liner.



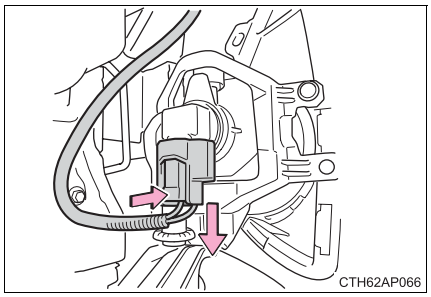
2 Remove the 2 screws and partly remove the fender liner.



3 Partly remove the fender liner until the bulb is visible.

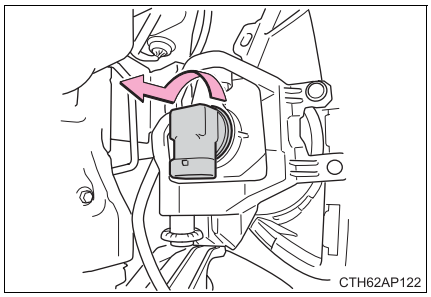


4 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 498 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

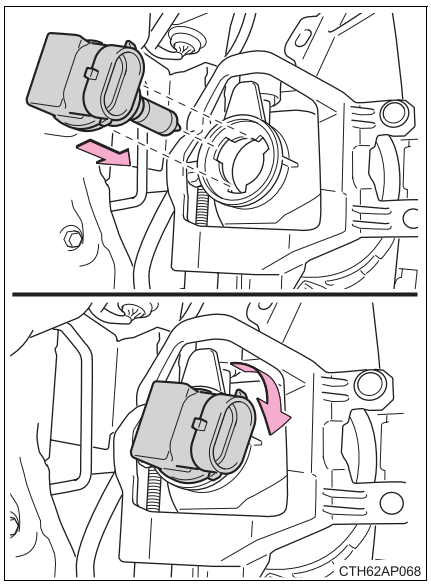
5 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise and remove it.



6 Install a new light bulb.

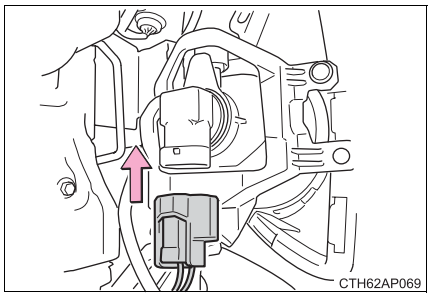
Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting and insert.

Turn clockwise and secure the bulb base.



7 Install the connector.

Shake the connector gently to check that it is not loose, turn the front fog lights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.



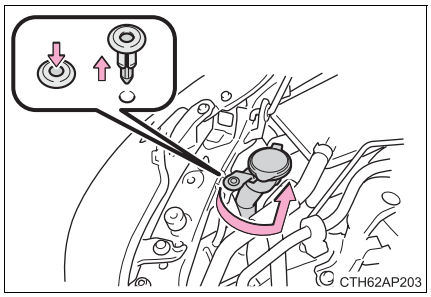
8 When installing the fender liner, install by conducting 3 and 2 with the directions reversed.

Make sure that the fender liner is attached to the inside of the bumper.

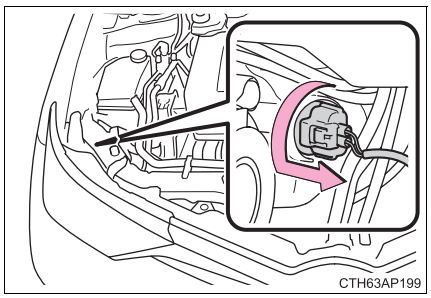
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 499 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Front turn signal lights

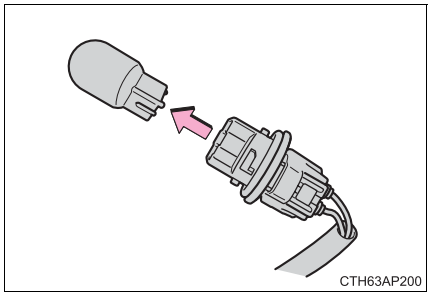
1 Remove the securing clip. Pull out the washer fluid filler opening after turning it. (When replacing right side bulb only.)



2 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.

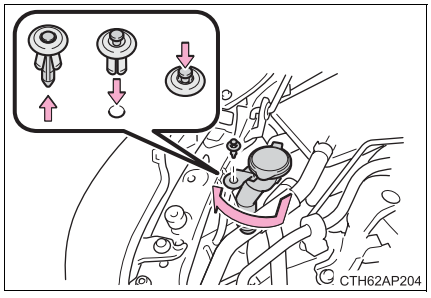


3 Remove the light bulb.



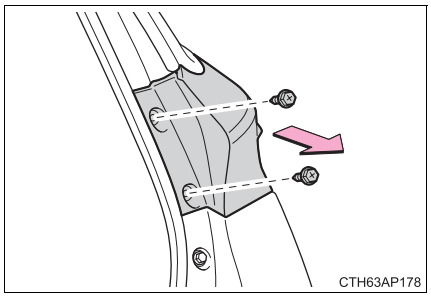
4 When installing the light bulb, install by conducting 3 and 2 with the directions reversed.

5 Install the washer fluid filler opening by inserting and turning it. Install the securing clip. (When replacing right side bulb only.)



■ Stop lights and rear turn signal lights

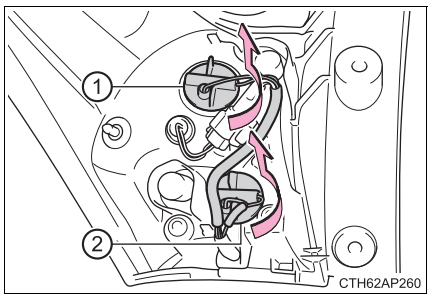
1 Open the back door and remove the 2 screws. Remove the lamp assembly by pulling it straight back.



2 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.

① Stop lights

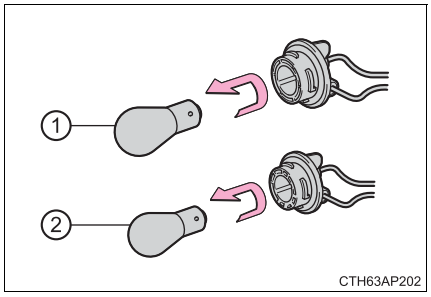
② Rear turn signal lights



3 Remove the light bulb.

① Stop lights

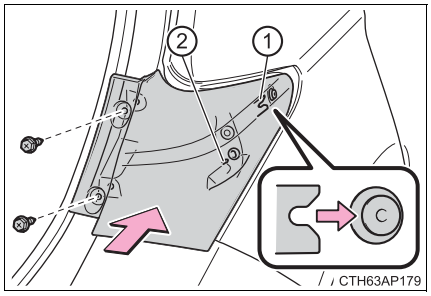
② Rear turn signal lights



4 When installing the light bulb, install by conducting 3 and 2 with the directions reversed.

5 Install the lamp assembly and then install the 2 screws.

Align the guide (①) and pin (②) on the lamp assembly with the mounting when installing it.



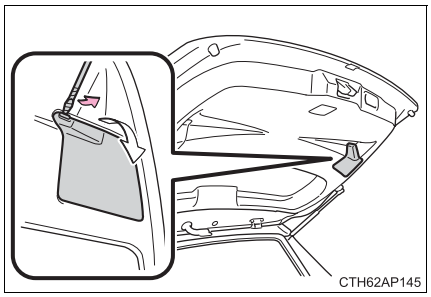
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 501 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Back-up light

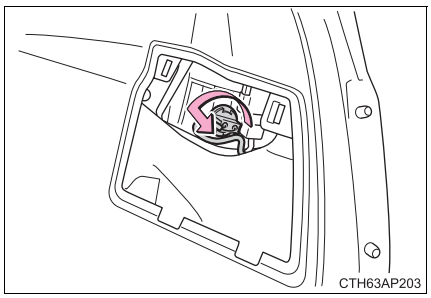
1 Open the back door and remove the cover.

Insert a flathead screwdriver or similar into the hole at the top of the cover and remove it as shown in the illustration.

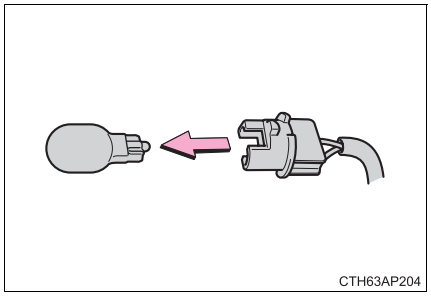
To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the flathead screwdriver with a tape.



2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.



3 Remove the light bulb.



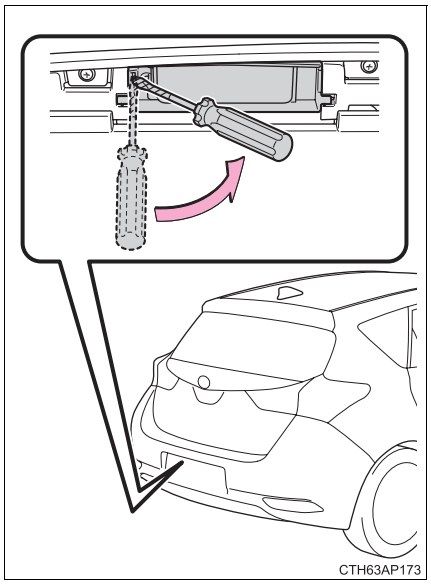
4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ License plate lights

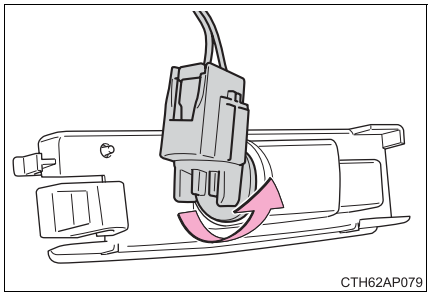
1 Remove the light unit

Insert a flathead screwdriver or similar into the hole next to the light and remove it as shown in the illustration.

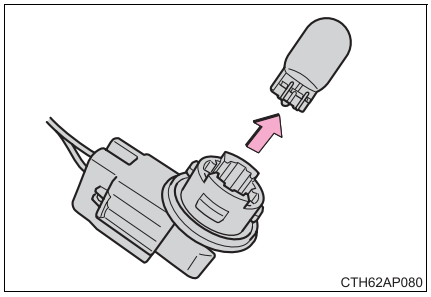
To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the flathead screwdriver with a tape.


CTH63AP173

2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.


CTH62AP079

3 Remove the light bulb


CTH62AP080

4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

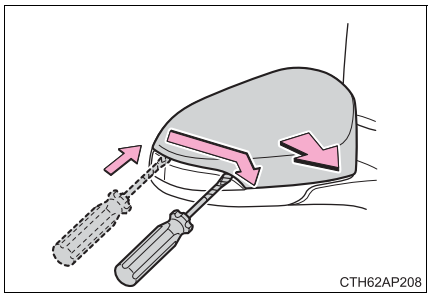
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 503 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Side turn signal lights

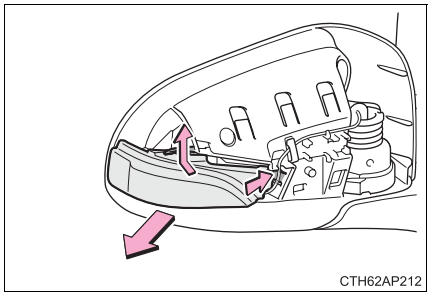
1 Remove the cover

Insert the flathead screwdriver and slide along the side turn signal light.

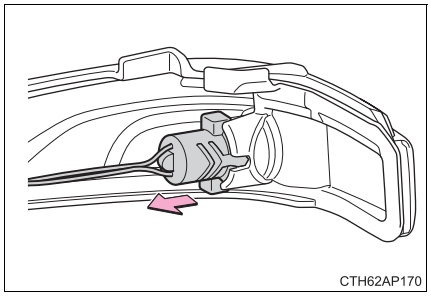
To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the flathead screwdriver with a tape.


CTH62AP208

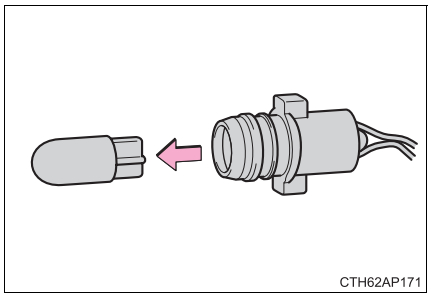
2 Press on the 2 clips and remove the side turn signal light from the visor housing.


CTH62AP212

3 Remove the socket from the side turn signal light housing.


CTH62AP170

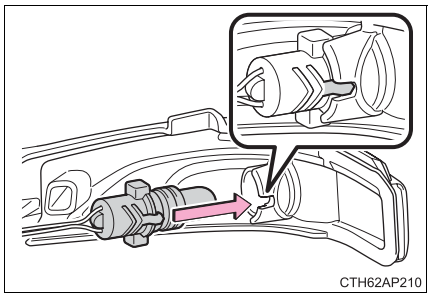
4 Remove the bulb.


CTH62AP171

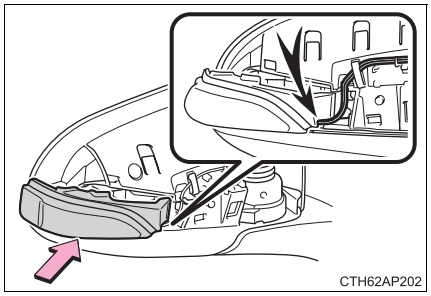
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 504 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

5 Replace the bulb and install the socket to the side turn signal light housing.

Align the grooves of the socket to the side turn signal light housing.

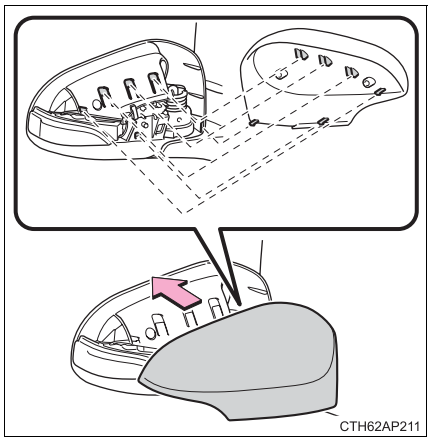


6 With the wire harness passing through the lower part of the side turn signal light, install it to the visor housing.



7 Align the 6 tabs and install the cover.

After hearing a click sound, confirm that the cover is secure.



■ Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Headlights (vehicles with LED headlights)
- Front position lights/daytime running lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Tail lights
- Rear fog light

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 505 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

LED light bulbs

The headlights (vehicles with LED headlights), rear fog light, high mounted stoplight, front position lights/daytime running lights and tail lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional to have the light replaced.

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

When replacing light bulbs

→P. 491

WARNING

Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

When trouble arises 8

8-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers.....508

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency.....509

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed.....511

If you think something is wrong.....517

Fuel pump shut off system.....518

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds.....519

If a warning message is displayed.....531

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire).....537

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit).....551

If the engine will not start.....566

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....568

If the electronic key does not operate properly.....569

If the vehicle battery is discharged.....572

If your vehicle overheats.....578

If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls.....582

If the vehicle becomes stuck.....583

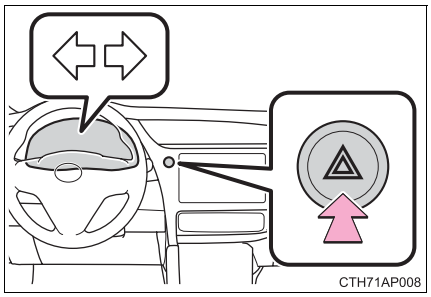
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 508 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.



Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

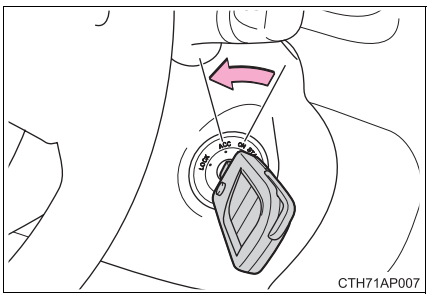
3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

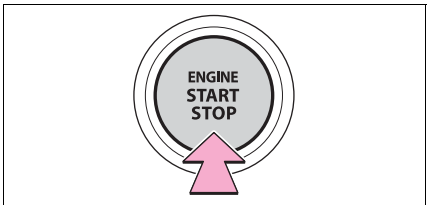
3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Stop the engine by turning the engine switch to the “ACC” position.



CTH71AP007

4 Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

CTH71AP004

5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

WARNING

■If the engine has to be turned off while driving

- Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.
- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Never attempt to remove the key, as doing so will lock the steering wheel.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 511 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

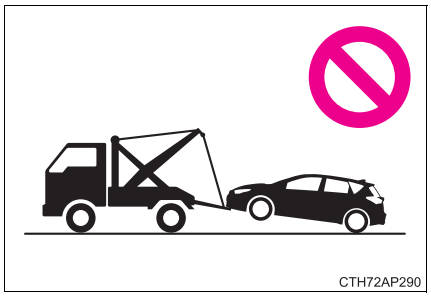
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

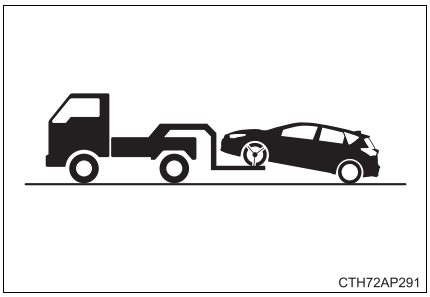
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.


CTH72AP290

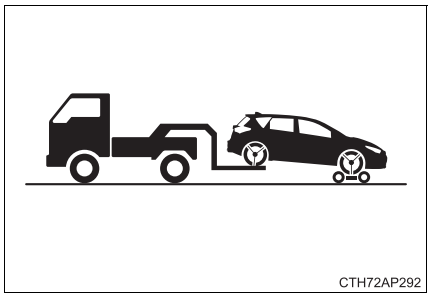
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front



Release the parking brake.

▶ From the rear



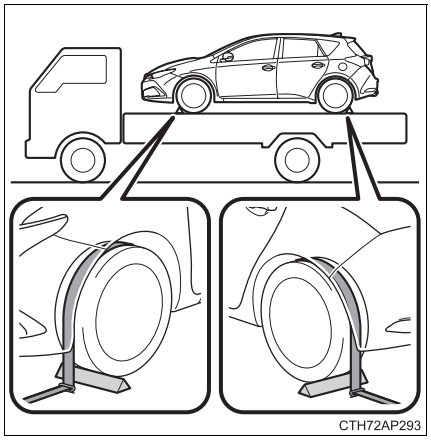
Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

Using a flatbed truck

1 Apply the parking brake and turn the engine switch off.

Use wheel chocks for all 4 wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

2 Secure the vehicle by strapping the tires to the deck of the tow truck as shown.



Emergency towing

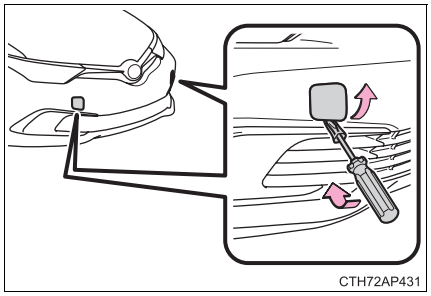
If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedure

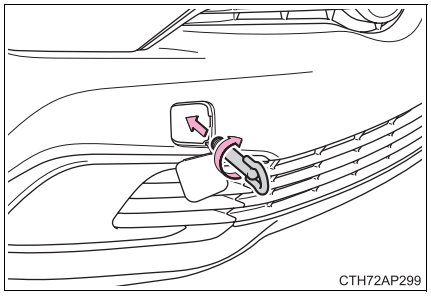
1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P. 538, 552)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

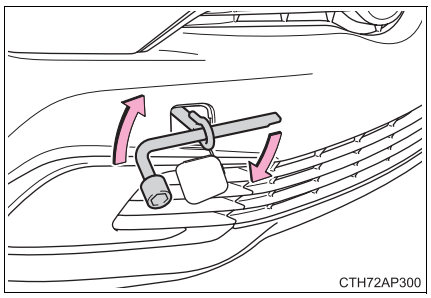

CTH72AP431

3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.


CTH72AP299

4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench* or hard metal bar.

*: If the vehicle is not equipped with a wheel nut wrench, a wheel nut wrench can be purchased at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.


CTH72AP300

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 514 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to the “ON” position.

Vehicles with Stop & Start system: Before towing the vehicle, turn the engine switch off once, and then start the engine.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

Vehicles with Stop & Start system: Before towing the vehicle, turn the engine switch off once, and then start the engine.

7 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.

When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P. 568

■ While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ Wheel nut wrench

Vehicles without a wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench can be purchased at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Vehicles with a wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench is installed in the luggage compartment. (→P. 538)

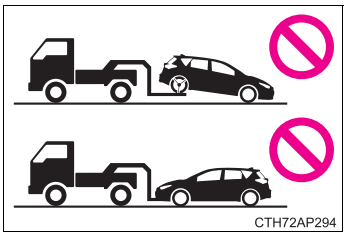
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 515 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.


CTH72AP294

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the Stop & Start system when towing (vehicles with a Stop & Start system)

Never tow this vehicle with four wheels on the ground. Use a flatbed truck, or lift up front or rear of the vehicle by using a wheel-lift type truck.

■ While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Do not turn the engine switch to the “LOCK” position.
  There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Do not turn the engine switch off.
  There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 516 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch is in the “LOCK” position or the key is removed.
  The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

■To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a flatbed truck

- Do not drive over wheel chocks, as doing so may damage the tires.
- Do not tie down the vehicle over any parts other than the tires (do not use parts such as the suspension).

■When towing a vehicle equipped with the Stop & Start system (if equipped)

Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: When it is necessary to tow the vehicle with all 4 wheels contacting the ground, perform the following procedure before towing the vehicle to protect the system.
Turn the engine switch off once, and then start the engine. If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to “ON” position.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: When it is necessary to tow the vehicle with all 4 wheels contacting the ground, perform the following procedure before towing the vehicle to protect the system.
Turn the engine switch off once, and then start the engine. If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 517 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: High engine coolant temperature warning light comes on.
- Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: High engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 518 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Fuel pump shut off system (gasoline engine only)

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

1 Turn the engine switch to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position.

2 Restart the engine.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 519 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning light and warning buzzer list

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*1** Indicates that: • The brake fluid level is low; or • The brake system is malfunctioning This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally. → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**
 (If equipped)	**Charging system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**
 (If equipped)	**Low engine oil pressure warning light** Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low. → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**
 (If equipped)	**High engine coolant temperature warning light** Indicates that the engine is almost overheating. (→P. 578) → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic Multidrive (if equipped) control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**SRS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)** Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (Comes on in yellow) (If equipped)	**Cruise control indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system. → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (Comes on in yellow) (If equipped)	**Speed limiter indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the speed limiter system. → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
 (Comes on)	**Slip indicator** Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system; • The TRC (Traction Control) system; or • The hill-start assist control system The light will flash when the VSC or the TRC is operating. (→P. 314) → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (If equipped)	**PCS warning light** When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer sounds): Indicates a malfunction in the PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.** When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer does not sound): Indicates that the PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to either of the following: • The part of the windshield around the front sensor being dirty, fogged up or covered with condensation, ice, stickers, etc. → **Clear the dirt, fog, condensation, ice, stickers, etc. (→P. 242)** • Front sensor temperature being outside of its operational range → **Wait for a while until the area around the front sensor has cooled down sufficiently.** When the warning light is illuminated: Either the VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system or PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) is disabled or both are disabled. → **To enable the PCS, enable both the VSC system and PCS. (→P. 245, 315)**
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Stop & Start cancel indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the Stop & Start system (The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on when the system is canceled.: →P. 269) → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	**Fuel filter warning light** Indicate that the amount of accumulated water in the fuel filter has reached the specified level. → **P. 463**
 (If equipped)	**Low engine oil level warning light** Indicates that engine oil level is low, but does not indicate a malfunction. → **Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary. (→P. 449)**
 (If equipped)	**Engine oil change reminder light** When the light flashes: Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the oil maintenance date has been reset). → **Check the engine oil, and change if necessary. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P. 454)** When the light comes on: Indicates that the engine oil should be changed. After the engine oil is changed and the oil maintenance data has been reset. → **Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P. 454)**
 (If equipped)	**DPF system warning light** • Indicates that the DPF catalytic converter needs to be cleaned due to repeated short trips and/or low-speed driving. • Indicates that the amount of accumulated deposits in the DPF catalytic converter has reached the specified level. → **To clean with DPF catalytic converter, drive the vehicle at a speed of 65 km/h (40 mph) or greater for 20 to 30 minutes as much as possible until the DPF system warning light turns off*2.** **Do not turn off the engine as much as possible until the DPF system warning light turns off.** **If it is not possible to drive the vehicle at speeds of 65 km/h (40 mph) or greater, or the DPF system warning light does not turn off even after driving for more than 30 minutes, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 523 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	**Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*3** Indicates that a door is not fully closed → **Check that all the doors are closed.**
 (Flashes in yellow for 15 seconds.) (If equipped)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the smart entry & start system. → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**Low fuel level warning light** 3-ring meter: Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 7.5 L (2.0 gal., 1.6 Imp. gal.) or less 2-ring meter: • Gasoline engine: Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 7.5 L (2.0 gal., 1.6 Imp. gal.) or less • Diesel engine: Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 8.3 L (2.2 gal., 1.8 Imp. gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**
	**Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*4** Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**
 (If equipped)	**Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (warning buzzer)*4** Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts. → **Fasten the seat belt.**

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 524 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	**Tire pressure warning light** When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 527) • Flat tire (→P. 537, 551) → **Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level.** **The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.** When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 528) → **Have the system checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**
 (If equipped)	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → **P. 531**

*1: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:
The buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

*2: The DPF system warning light may not turn off when the engine oil change reminder light is on. In this event, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*3: Open door warning buzzer:
A buzzer will sound if the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) or more with any door open.

*4: Driver's and passengers' seat belt buzzer:

The driver's and passengers' seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and passengers that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of at least 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

Follow the correction procedures. (vehicles with a smart entry & start system and with a 3-ring meter)

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning light	Warning light/Details/Action
Continuous	Continuous	 (Flashes in yellow)	**Smart entry & start system indicator (vehicles with a Multidrive)** The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while any shift position other than P was selected without turning off the engine switch. → **Change the shift position to P.** → **Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.**
Once	3 times	 (Flashes in yellow)	**Smart entry & start system indicator (vehicles with a Multidrive)** The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while the shift position P was selected without turning off the engine switch. → **Turn the engine switch off or bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.**
Once	3 times	 (Flashes in yellow)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** Indicates that a door other than the driver's door has been opened and closed with the engine switch in any mode other than off and the electronic key outside of the detection area. → **Confirm the location of the electronic key.**

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning light	Warning light/Details/Action
Once	Continuous (5 seconds)	 (Flashes in yellow)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** An attempt was made to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the engine switch off. → **Turn the engine switch off and lock the doors again.**
Once	—	 (Flashes in yellow for 15 seconds)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** Indicates that the electronic key is not present when attempting to start the engine. → **Confirm the location of the electronic key.**
9 times	—	 (Flashes in yellow)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle. → **Confirm that the electronic key is inside the vehicle.**
Once	—	 (Flashes in yellow for 15 seconds)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** Indicates that the electronic key battery is low. → **Replace the battery. (→P. 483)**
Once	—	 (Flashes quickly in green for 15 seconds)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** Indicates that the steering lock has not been released. → **Release the steering lock. (→P. 209)**
Once	—	 (Flashes in yellow for 30 seconds)	**Smart entry & start system indicator** • When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the engine switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle. • The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the engine switch was pressed two consecutive times. → **Vehicles with a Multidrive: Touch the electronic key to the engine switch while depressing the brake pedal.** → **Vehicles with a manual transmission: Touch the electronic key to the engine switch while depressing the clutch pedal.**

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 527 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

For some models, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust it to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization.

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

→P. 470

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 528 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

▶ Vehicles without a smart entry & start system

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the engine switch is turned to the “ON” position, have it checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

▶ Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

■ **If the engine oil change reminder light flashes (diesel engine)**

Repeated short trips and/or low-speed driving may cause the oil to degrade sooner than usual, regardless of the actual distance driven. If this happens, the engine oil change reminder will flash.

■ **Engine oil change reminder light comes on (diesel engine)**

Replace the engine oil filter when the engine oil change reminder light does not come on even if you have driven over 15000 km (9300 miles) after the engine oil was changed.

There is a possibility that the engine oil change reminder light has been illuminated when you have driven less than 15000 km (9300 miles) based on a usage or driving condition.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 529 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

When driving to clean the DPF catalytic converter (diesel engine)

When driving, pay sufficient attention to weather, road conditions, terrain and traffic conditions, and be sure to observe traffic laws and/or regulations. Failure to do so may cause an unexpected accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

If the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- Vehicles with a spare tire: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, repair the flat tire by using emergency tire puncture repair kit.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 530 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

When the DPF system warning light comes on (diesel engine)

If the DPF system warning light is left on without performing cleaning, after an additional 100 to 300 km (62 to 187 miles), the malfunction indicator lamp may come on. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

If the fuel filter warning light comes on (diesel engine)

Never drive the vehicle with the warning light on. Continued driving with water accumulated in the fuel filter will damage the fuel injection pump.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 531 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

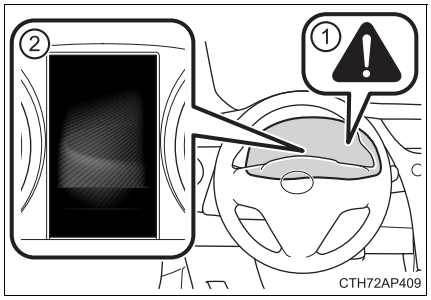
If a warning message is displayed (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

① Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

② Multi-information display



If any of the message or indicator comes on again after the following actions have been performed, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 532 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds or does not sound	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
—	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display

If a message instructing to refer to the Owner's Manual is displayed

- If the following message is displayed, take the appropriate actions.
  - "DPF full. See owner's manual." (diesel engine)
    →P. 535
- If the following message is displayed, there may be a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - "Brake effectiveness is reduced due to failure, please stop in a safe area and check manual."

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 533 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Other messages displayed on the multi-information display

Take the appropriate actions as instructed in the message displayed. If any of the following messages are displayed, also refer to this Owner's Manual.

■ If "Check charging system." is displayed

Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system.

Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If "Engine oil pressure low." is displayed

Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When "Headlight system malfunction. Visit your dealer." is displayed on the multi-information display (if equipped)

The following systems may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

- The LED headlight system
- The automatic headlight leveling system
- Automatic High Beam

■ If "Front sensor systems are temporarily unavailable due to inappropriate temp. Wait a moment." or "Front sensor systems are temporarily unavailable due to blocked vision. Clean windshield." is displayed. (if equipped)

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved.

- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- Automatic High Beam
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 534 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If “Drain water from fuel filter.” is displayed (1ND-TV engine)**

Indicates that the amount of water that has accumulated in the fuel filter has reached a specified level.

→P. 463

■ **If “Replace fuel filter.” is displayed (1WW engine)**

Indicates that the fuel filter needs to be replaced.
Have maintenance performed by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If “Engine oil low.” is displayed (if equipped)**

Indicates that the engine oil level may be low.
Check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary.

■ **If “Oil Maintenance required soon.” is displayed (if equipped)**

Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the oil maintenance data has been reset.)

Check the engine oil, and change if necessary. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P. 454)

■ **If “Oil maintenance required.” is displayed (if equipped)**

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed. (After the engine oil is changed and the oil maintenance data has been reset.)

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P. 454)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 535 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **If “DPF full. See owner’s manual.” is displayed (diesel engine)**

Indicates that the amount of accumulated deposits in the DPF catalytic converter has reached a specified level and it is necessary to clean the DPF catalytic converter. (Deposits may accumulate more quickly due to repeated short trips and/or frequent low-speed driving.)

To clean the DPF catalytic converter, drive the vehicle at a speed of 65 km/h (40 mph) or higher for 20 to 30 minutes until the message is cleared*.

If possible, do not turn off the engine until the message is cleared.

If it is not possible to drive the vehicle at a speed of 65 km/h (40 mph) or higher, or if the message is not cleared after driving for more than 30 minutes, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: This message may not be cleared if the engine oil change reminder is also displayed on the multi-information display. In this event, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If “DPF full, engine service required.” is displayed (1WW engine)**

Indicates that the automatic cleaning function may not be able to operate due to the amount of accumulated deposits in the DPF catalytic converter exceeding a specified level.

Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 536 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

System warning light

In the following situation, the master warning light will not come on or flash. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on along with a message displayed on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the brake system
  The brake system warning light will come on. (→P. 519)

Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

Engine oil change reminder message comes on (1ND-TV engine only)

Replace the engine oil filter when the engine oil change reminder message does not come on even if you have driven over 15000 km (9300 miles) after the engine oil was changed.

There is a possibility that the “Oil maintenance required.” message has been displayed when you have driven less than 15000 km (9300 miles) based on a usage or driving condition.

WARNING

When driving to clean the DPF catalytic converter (diesel engine)

When driving, pay sufficient attention to weather, road conditions, terrain and traffic conditions, and be sure to observe traffic laws and/or regulations. Failure to do so may cause an unexpected accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

When the DPF system warning message comes on (diesel engine)

If the DPF system warning message is left on without performing cleaning, after an additional 100 to 300 km (62 to 187 miles), the malfunction indicator lamp may come on. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

If the fuel filter warning message comes on (diesel engine)

Never drive the vehicle with the warning message is shown. Continued driving with water accumulated in the fuel filter will damage the fuel injection pump.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 537 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

For details about tires: →P. 465

⚠ WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

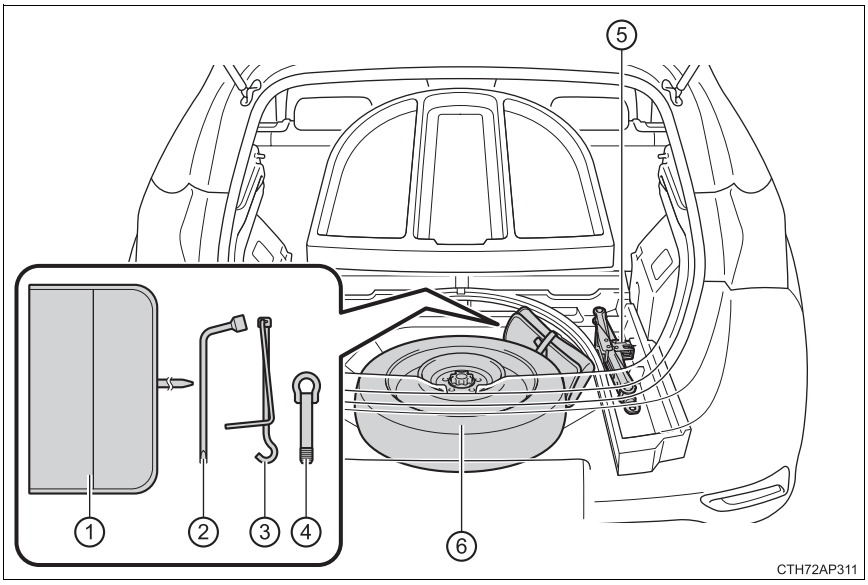
Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P (Multidrive) or R (manual transmission).
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 508)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

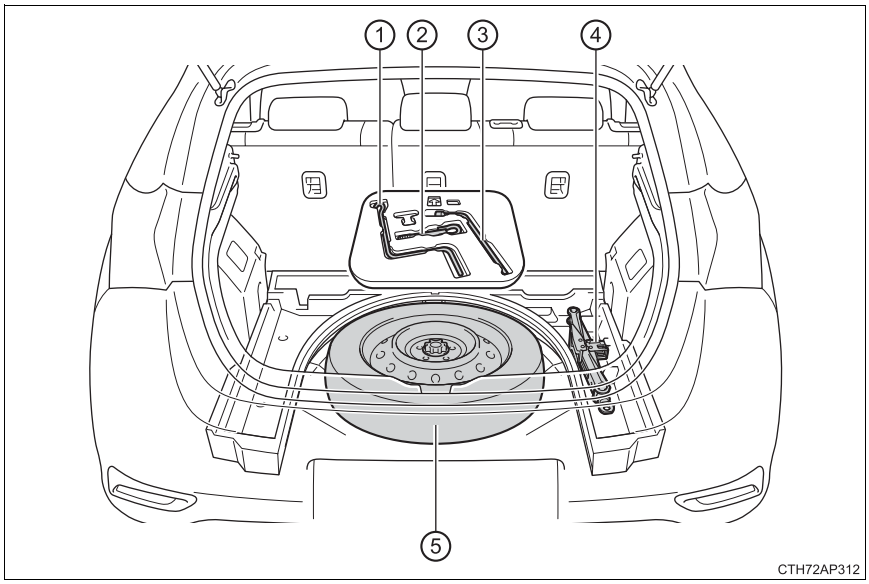
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



① Tool bag
② Wheel nut wrench
③ Jack handle
④ Towing eyelet
⑤ Jack
⑥ Spare tire

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 539 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



① Jack handle
② Towing eyelet
③ Wheel nut wrench
④ Jack
⑤ Spare tire

WARNING

■Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.
Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

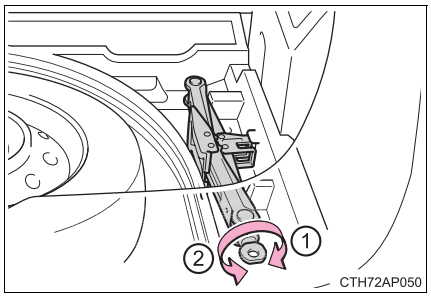
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

Taking out the jack

1 Remove the deck mat. (→P. 415)

2 Take out the jack.

① For tightening
② For loosening

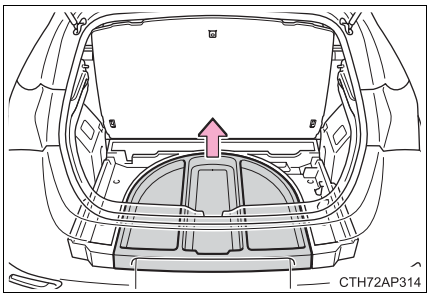


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 541 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

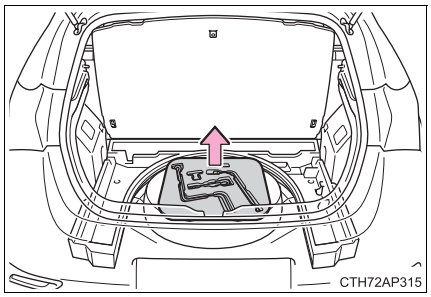
Taking out the spare tire

1 Remove the deck mat and tray. (→P. 415)

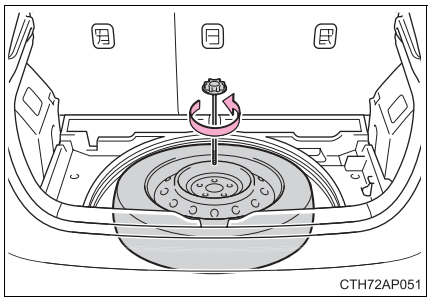
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



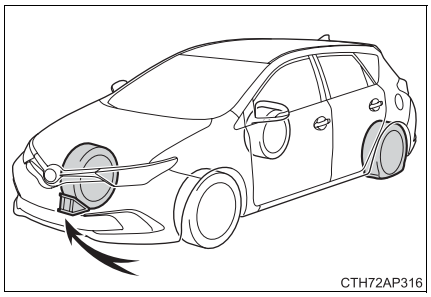
⚠ WARNING

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

Replacing a flat tire

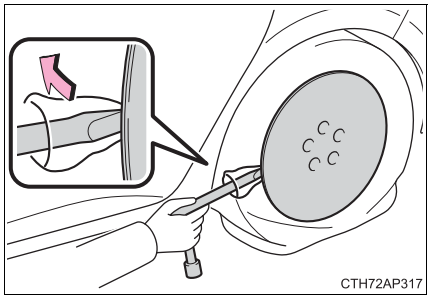
1 Chock the tires.



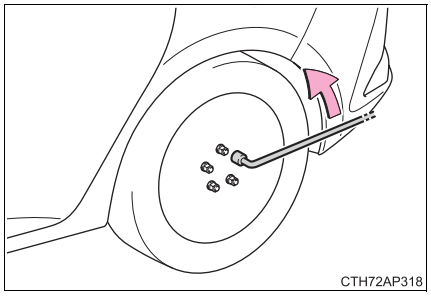
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 For vehicles with steel wheels, remove the wheel ornament using the wrench.

To protect the wheel ornament, place a rag between the wrench and the wheel ornament.



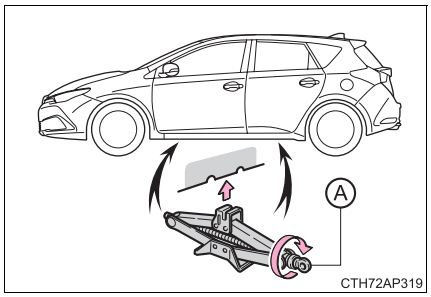
3 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 543 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

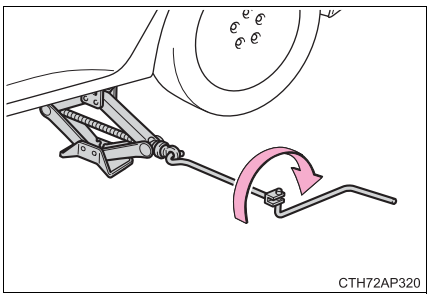
4 Turn the tire jack portion “A” by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.

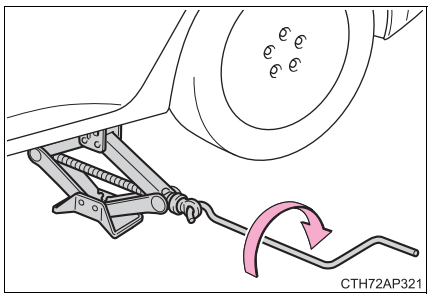


5 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

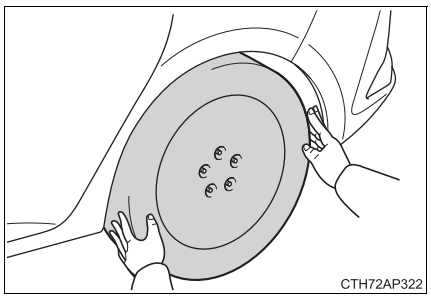


▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



6 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



WARNING

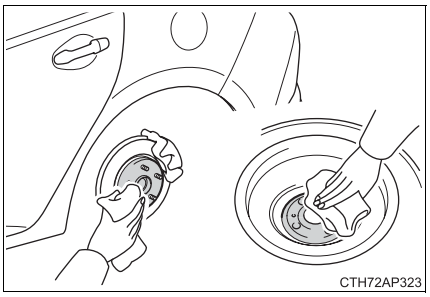
■Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
    Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - When installing the wheel nuts, be sure to install them with the tapered ends facing inward. (→P. 479)

Installing the spare tire

1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

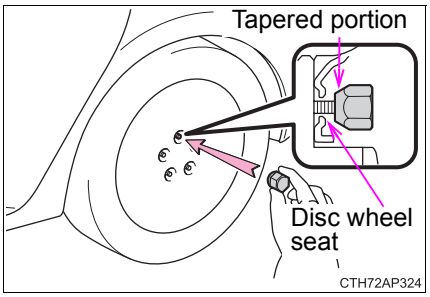
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.


CTH72AP323

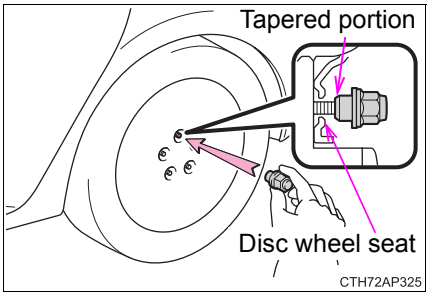
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 545 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

2 Install the tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

When replacing a steel wheel with a steel wheel (including a compact spare tire), tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

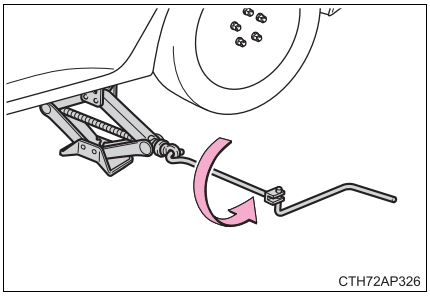


When replacing an aluminum wheel with a steel wheel (including a compact spare tire), tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

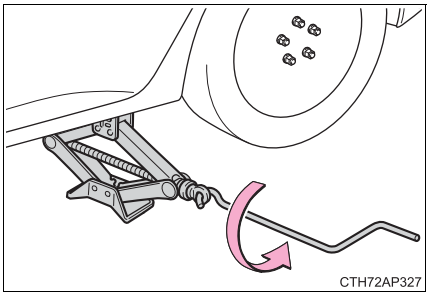


3 Lower the vehicle.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

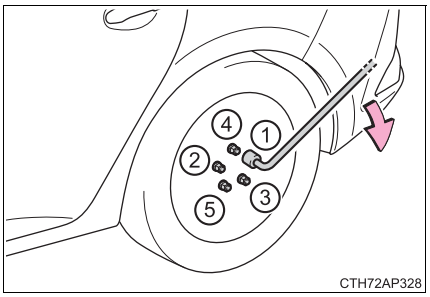


▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)



5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ **The full-size spare tire**

- On vehicles with a tire pressure warning system, the full-size spare tire has a “Temporary use only” label on the outer surface of the wheel.
  Use the full-size spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the full-size spare tire. (→P. 603)

■ **The compact spare tire**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 603)

■ **When the compact spare tire is equipped**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

■ **When using the spare tire (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

As the spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 547 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

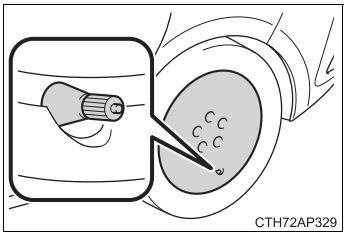
If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

1. Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
2. Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
3. Fit tire chains to the front tires.

When reinstalling the wheel ornament (vehicles with steel wheels)

Align the cutout of the wheel ornament with the valve stem as shown in the illustration.



Certification for the jack

CE

Manufacturer's Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer :

ARIKAN KRİKO A.Ş
Organize Sanayi Bölgesi 2.Cd.26110 ESKİŞEHİR / TURKEY

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

2006 / 42 / EC Machinery Directive

The product covered by this declaration

JACK SUB-ASSY. PANTOGRAPH

model

0.8 ton , 1.1 ton

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the Machinery Directive
Directive above by meeting following standards

857 – ISO 8720

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirement the Machinery Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer

Technical File No :2010-TOYOTA JACK-ISO8720-1

The CE mark was first applied in:2010

Done at Shizuoka , Japan

Ahmet ARIKAN
General Manager

Signature :

Date of Issue : 24.08.2010

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 549 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■When using the full-size spare tire (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

- Replace the full-size spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

■When using the compact spare tire

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

■When the compact spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- EPS
- PCS (if equipped)
- LDA (Lane departure alert) (if equipped)

■Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 550 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle.

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

When replacing the tires (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 467)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 551 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit)

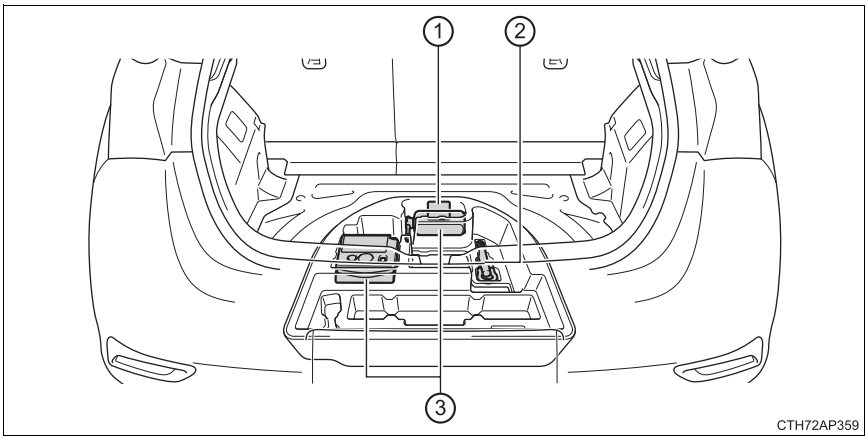
Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit.
A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily using the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (The kit contains a bottle of sealant. The sealant can be used only once to temporarily repair one tire without removing the nail or screw from the tire.) Depending on the damage, this kit cannot be used to repair the tire. (→P. 554)

After temporarily repairing the tire with the kit, have the tire repaired or replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit are only a temporary measure. Have the tire repaired and replaced as soon as possible.

■ Before repairing the tire

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P (Multidrive) or N (manual transmission).
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 508)

■ Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit



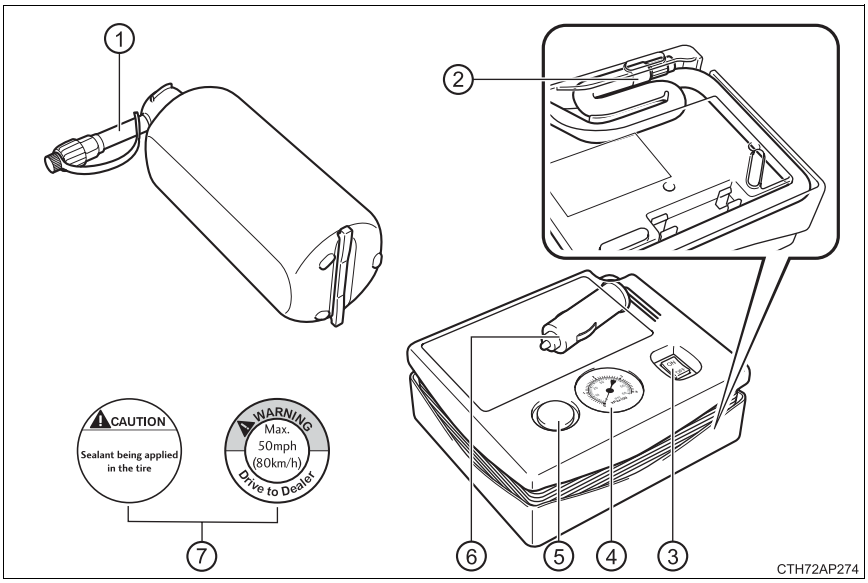
① Wheel cap clip*

② Towing eyelet

③ Emergency tire puncture repair kit

*: Use of the wheel cap clip (if equipped) (→P. 479)

■ Emergency tire puncture repair kit components

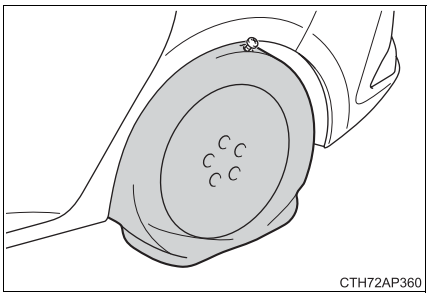


① Nozzle
② Hose
③ Compressor switch
④ Air pressure gauge
⑤ Pressure release button
⑥ Power plug
⑦ Stickers

Before performing emergency repair

Check the degree of the tire damage.

Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and prevent emergency repair with the repair kit.



Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit

1 Remove the deck mat. (→P. 415)

2 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 552)

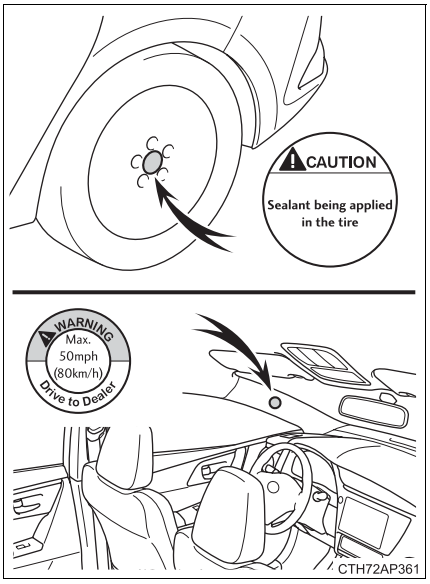
Emergency repair method

1 Take out the repair kit.

When taking out the bottle from the original bag, do not tear or discard the bag.

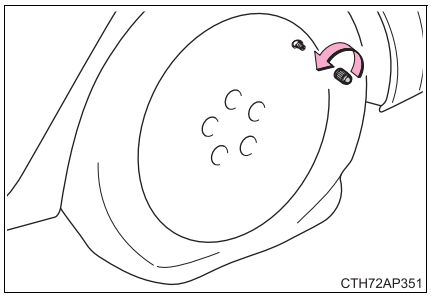
2 Attach the 2 stickers as shown.

Remove any dirt and moisture from the wheel before attaching the label. If it is impossible to attach the label, make sure to tell any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or other duly qualified and equipped professional when you have them repair and replace the tire that sealant is injected.

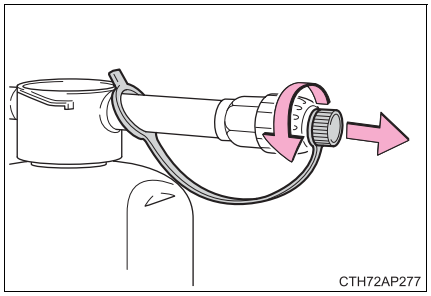


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 555 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

3 Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.


CTH72AP351

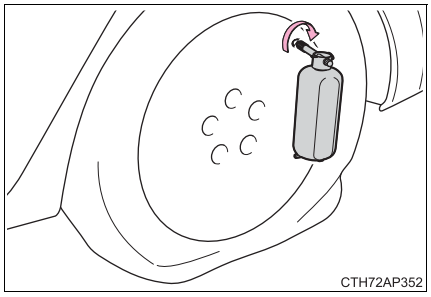
4 Remove the cap from the nozzle.


CTH72AP277

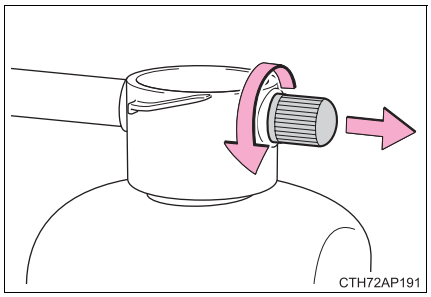
5 Connect the nozzle to the valve.

Screw the end of the nozzle clockwise as far as possible.

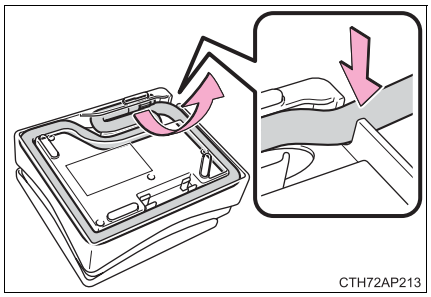
The bottle should hang vertically without contacting the ground. If the bottle does not hang vertically, move the vehicle so that the tire valve is located properly.


CTH72AP352

6 Remove the cap from the bottle.

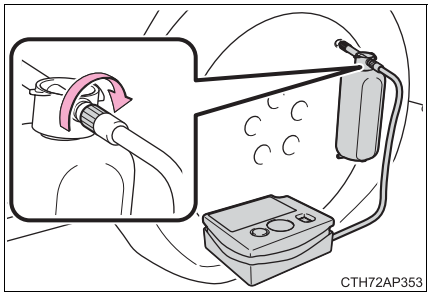

CTH72AP191

7 Pull the hose out from the compressor.

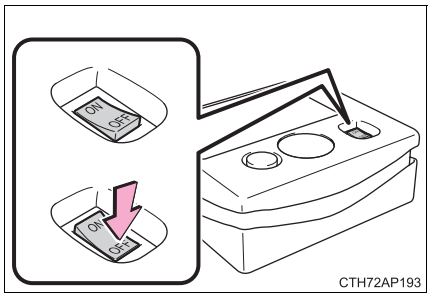

CTH72AP213

8 Connect the bottle to the compressor.

Screw the end of the nozzle clockwise as far as possible.

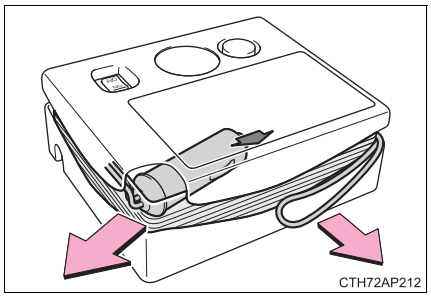

CTH72AP353

9 Make sure that the compressor switch is off.

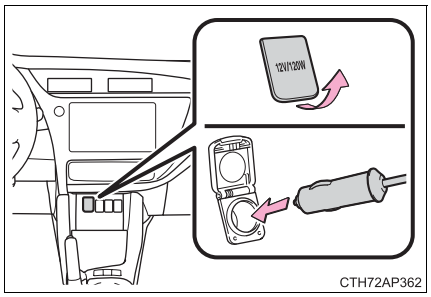


CTH72AP193

10 Remove the power plug from the compressor.


CTH72AP212

11 Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P. 421)

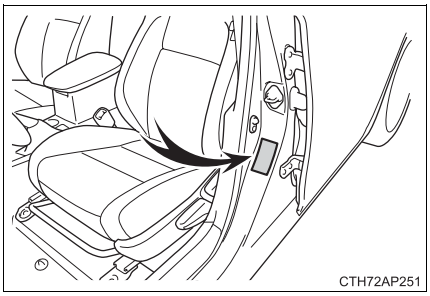


CTH72AP362

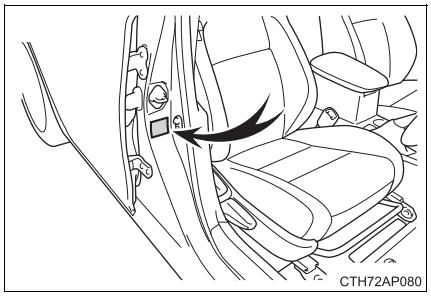
12 Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label as shown. (→P. 603)

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

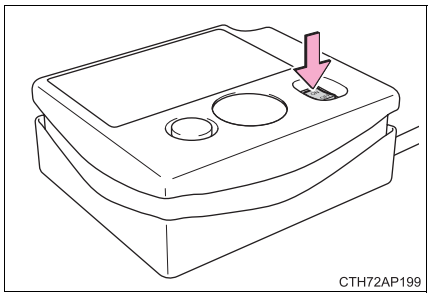

CTH72AP251

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

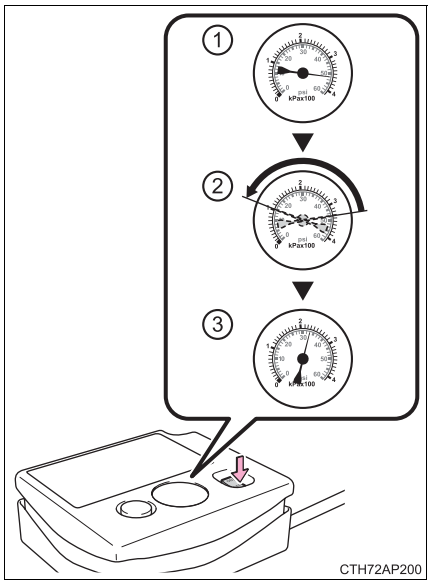

CTH72AP080

13 Start the vehicle's engine.

14 To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.


CTH72AP199

15 Inflate the tire until the specified air pressure is reached.



① The sealant will be injected and the pressure will surge and then gradually decrease.

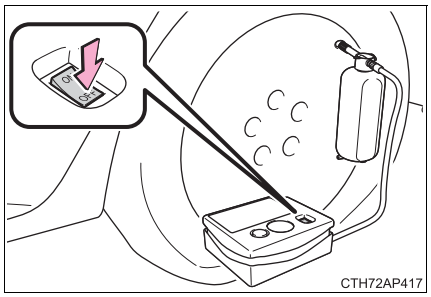
② The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 minute (5 minutes at low temperature) after the switch is turned on.

③ Inflate the tire until the specified air pressure.

- If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the specified point after inflation for 35 minutes with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the specified air pressure, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure. (→P. 561, 603)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 559 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

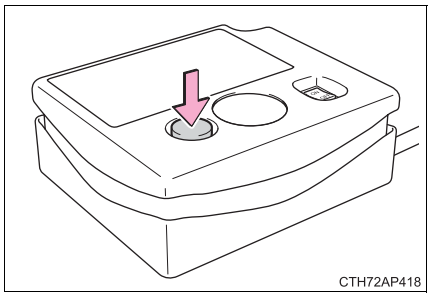
16 Turn the compressor off.



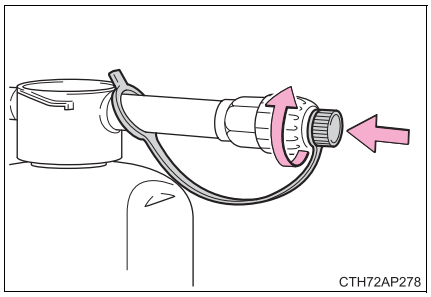
17 Disconnect the nozzle from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

Some sealant may leak when the hose is removed.

18 Press the button to release pressure from the bottle.



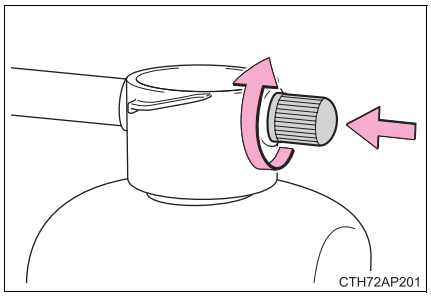
19 Attach the cap to the nozzle.



20 Install the valve cap onto the valve of the repaired tire.

21 Disconnect the hose from the bottle and attach the cap to the bottle.

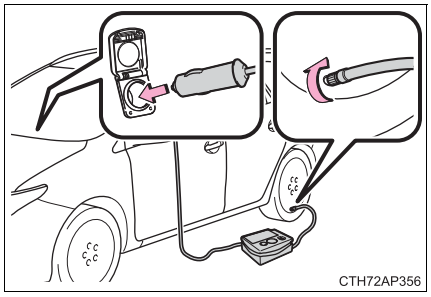
Place the bottle in the original bag and zip it.



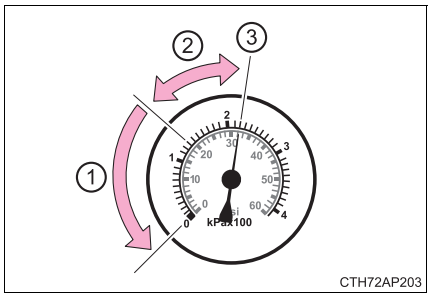
22 Temporarily store the bottle and compressor in the luggage compartment.

23 To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive safely for about 5 km (3 miles) below 80 km/h (50 mph).

24 After driving for about 5 km (3 miles), stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and connect the compressor.


CTH72AP356

25 Check the tire inflation pressure.



CTH72AP203

① If the tire inflation pressure is under 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi): The puncture cannot be repaired. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

② If the tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or higher, but less than the specified air pressure: Proceed to 26.

③ If the tire inflation pressure is the specified air pressure (→P. 603): Proceed to 27.

26 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the specified air pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform 24.

27 Store the compressor in the luggage compartment.

28 Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to the nearest authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for tire repair or replacement.

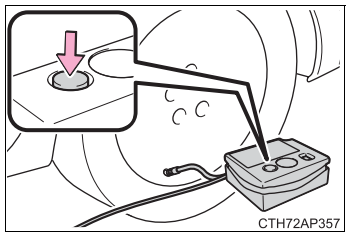
UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 561 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

- When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
- When there are any cracks or damage at any location on the tire, such as on the side wall, except the tread
- When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
- When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
- When the wheel is damaged
- When two or more tires have been punctured
- When 2 or more sharp objects such as nails or screws have passed through the tread on a single tire
- When the sealant has expired

■ **If the tire is inflated to more than the specified air pressure**

1 Press the button to let some air out.


CTH72AP357

2 Check that the air pressure indicator shows the specified air pressure.

If the air pressure is under the designated pressure, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the specified air pressure is reached.

■ **After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
- Even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 562 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Note for checking the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

Check the sealant expiry date occasionally.
The expiry date is shown on the bottle. Do not use sealant whose expiry date has already passed. Otherwise, repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be performed properly.

■ **Emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant has been used and needs to be replaced, purchase a new bottle at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The compressor is reusable.
- The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -30°C (-22°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- The repair kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
- The sealant has a limited lifespan. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The bottle of sealant should be replaced with a new bottle before the expiry date. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for replacement.
- If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
- If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
- During operation of the repair kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- Do not use to check or to adjust the tire pressure.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 563 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

■Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

Driving with a flat tire may cause a circumferential groove on the side wall. In such a case, the tire may explode when using a repair kit.

■Caution while driving

- The repair kit is exclusively only for your vehicle.
  Do not use repair kit on other vehicles, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Do not use repair kit for tires that are different size than the original ones, or for any other purpose. If the tires have not been completely repaired, it could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■Precautions for use of the sealant

- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, and then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

■When fixing the flat tire

- Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
- Do not touch the wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven, the wheels and the area around the brakes may be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts may result in burns.
- To avoid risk of burst or severe leakage, do not drop or damage the bottle. Visually inspect the bottle before use. Do not use a bottle with shock, crack, scratch, leakage or any other damage. In such case, immediately replace.
- Connect the valve and hose securely with the wheel installed to the vehicle. If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur and sealant may be sprayed out.
- If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 564 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

WARNING

When fixing the flat tire

- After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
- Follow the operation procedure to repair the tire. If the procedures not followed, the sealant may spray out.
- Keep back from the tire while it is being repaired, as there is a chance of it bursting while the repair operation is being performed. If you notice any cracks or deformation of the tire, turn off the compressor switch and stop the repair operation immediately.
- The repair kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the repair kit continuously for more than 40 minutes.
- Parts of the repair kit become hot during operation. Be careful when handling the repair kit during and after operation. Do not touch the metal part around the connecting area between the bottle and compressor. It will be extremely hot.
- Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS airbag from operating properly.

Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.
- If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following.
  - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
  - Tire inflation pressure. If the tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or less, the tire may be severely damaged.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 565 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

When performing an emergency repair

- A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a sharp object such as nail or screw passing through the tire tread.
  Do not remove the sharp object from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the repair kit.
- The repair kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the repair kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the repair kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the repair kit vacuums up dust etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Do not turn the bottle upside down when using it, as doing so may cause damage to the compressor.

Precautions for the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The repair kit power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the repair kit to any other source.
- If gasoline splatters on the repair kit, the repair kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
- Place the repair kit in a storage to prevent it from being exposed to dirt or water.
- Store the repair kit in the tool tray under the deck mat out of reach of children.
- Do not disassemble or modify the repair kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 467)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 566 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 199, 203), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P. 199, 203)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 75)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 572)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 567)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 567 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 572)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

  Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally:

1. Shift the shift lever to P (Multidrive) or N (manual transmission).
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
4. Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P (vehicles with a Multidrive)

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately. The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

1 Set the parking brake.

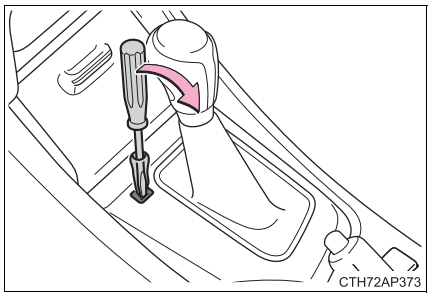
2 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to the “ACC” position.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.

3 Depress the brake pedal.

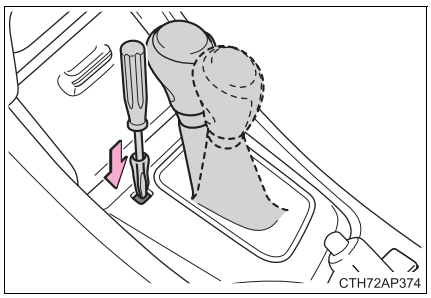
4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



5 Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 569 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If the electronic key does not operate properly (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

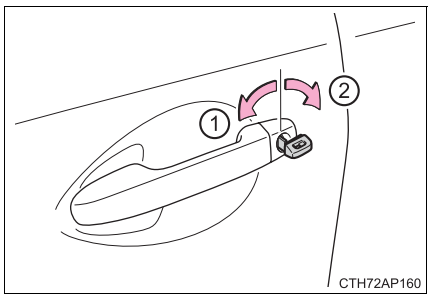
If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 145) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system, push button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors

Use the mechanical key (→P. 120) in order to perform the following operations:

① Locks all the doors

② Unlocks all the doors

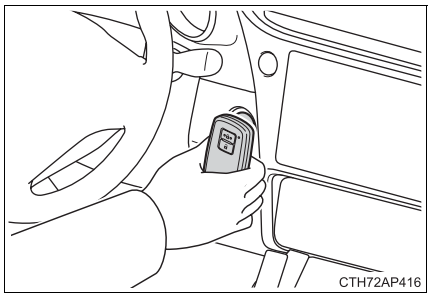


UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 570 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Starting the engine

1 Multidrive: Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.
Manual transmission: Shift the shift lever to N and depress the clutch pedal.

2 Touch the Toyota emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.



When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.

3 Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: Firmly depress the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and check that the smart entry & start system indicator light (green) turns on.
Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: Firmly depress the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 571 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to P (Multidrive) or N (manual transmission) and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P. 483)

■ **Alarm (if equipped)**

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

■ **Changing engine switch modes**

Release the brake pedal (Multidrive) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the engine switch in step 3 above.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 206)

■ **When the electronic key does not work properly**

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system and push button start has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on. (Customizable features →P. 608)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P. 144)

If the vehicle battery is discharged

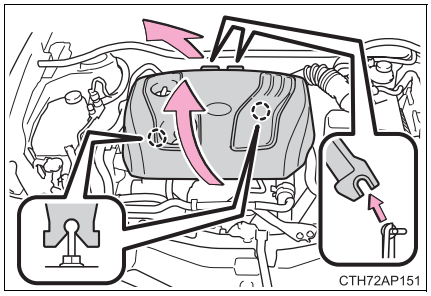
The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

1 Open the hood. (→P. 441)

2 Vehicles with 1ND-TV engine, remove the engine cover.

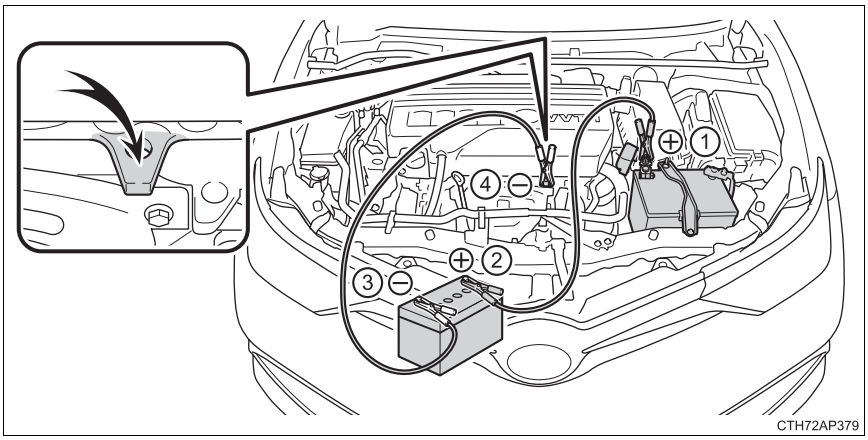
Raise the front of the engine cover to detach it from the clips and then pull the cover to detach it from the brackets on the rear bar as shown in the illustration.



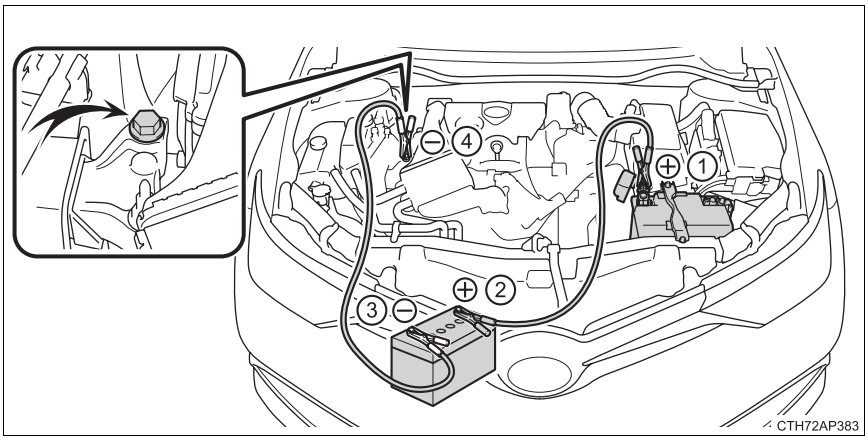
3 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 573 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

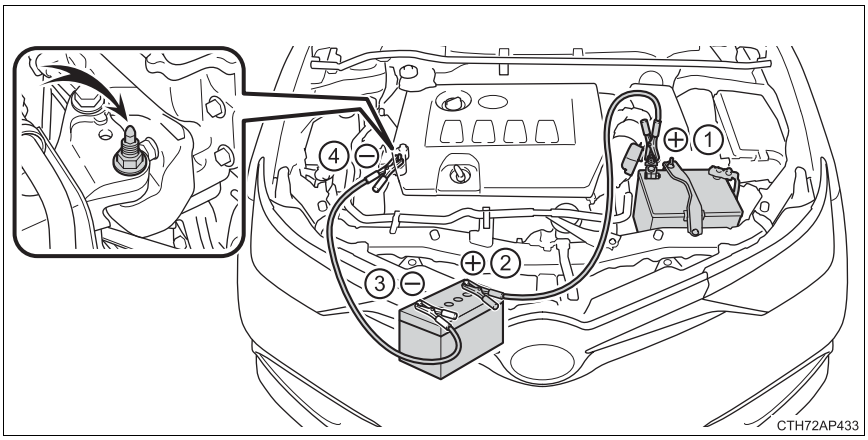
▶ 1NR-FE engine



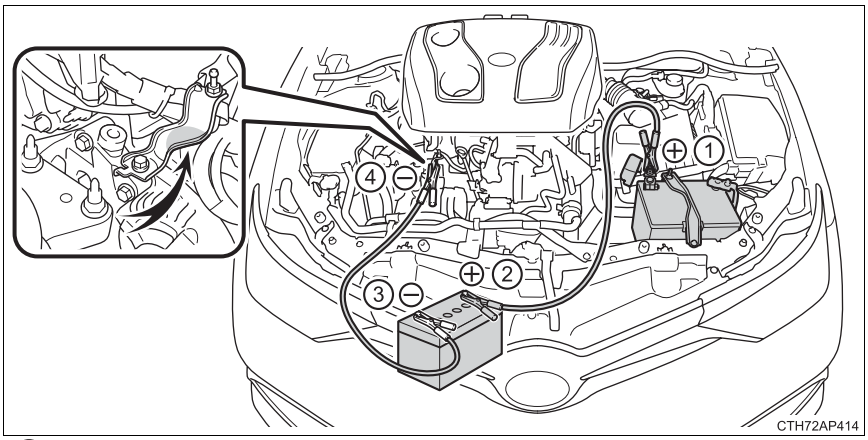
▶ 8NR-FTS engine



▶ 1ZR-FAE and 1WW engines



▶ 1ND-TV engine



① Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

② Connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

③ Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

④ Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 575 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

4 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

5 Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.

6 Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the engine switch to the “ON” position, then start the vehicle’s engine.

Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the vehicle’s engine.

7 Once the vehicle’s engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and audio system while the engine is stopped. (Vehicles with a Stop & Start system: except when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system.)
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ When the battery is removed or discharged (vehicles with an alarm)

Make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery. The key may be locked in the vehicle if the alarm is activated. (→P. 85)

■ Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 576 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **When recharging or replacing the battery**

- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off.
  If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.
- Vehicles with Stop & Start system:
  After charging the battery or reconnecting the battery terminals, the Stop & Start system may not automatically stop the engine for approximately 5 to 40 minutes.

■ **When exchanging the battery (vehicles with Stop & Start system)**

Use a battery specified for use with the Stop & Start system or an equivalent battery. If an unsupported battery is used, Stop & Start system functions may be restricted to protect the battery.
Also, battery performance may decrease and the engine may not be able to restart. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Avoiding battery fires or explosions**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the “+” terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 577 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or engine drive belt.

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- Vehicles with a 3-ring meter: The high engine coolant temperature warning light (→P. 519) comes on or a loss of engine power is experienced (for example, the vehicle speed does not increase).
  Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: The engine coolant temperature gauge (→P. 94) enters the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced (for example, the vehicle speed does not increase).
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

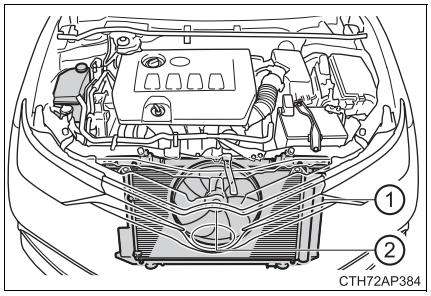
▶ Except 8NR-FTS and 1WW engines

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

① Radiator

② Cooling fan

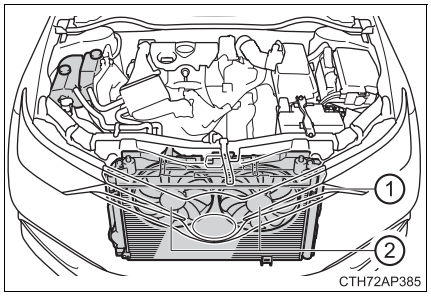
If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 579 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ 8NR-FTS and 1WW engines

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.



① Radiator

② Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

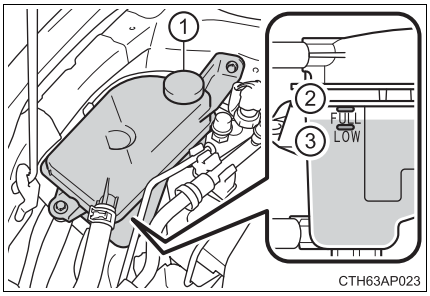
4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir.

① Reservoir

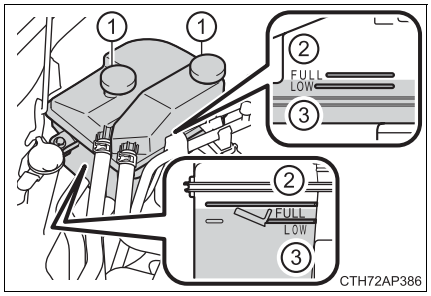
② “FULL”

③ “LOW”

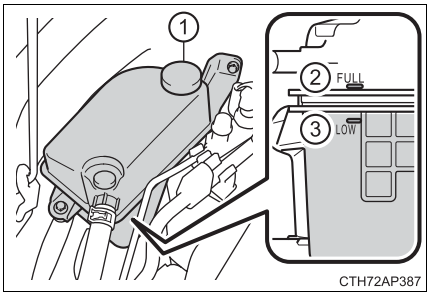
▶ Except 8NR-FTS and 1WW engines



▶ 8NR-FTS engine



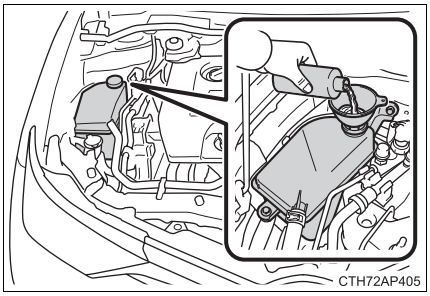
▶ 1WW engine



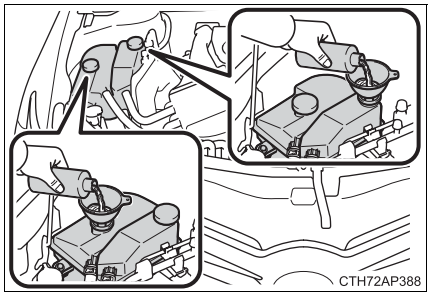
5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

▶ Except 8NR-FTS engine



▶ 8NR-FTS engine



6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the fan is operating:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 581 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fan and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
  High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

⚠ NOTICE

■When adding coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

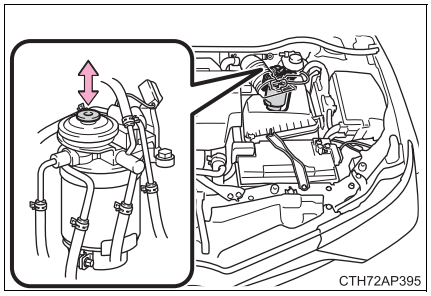
- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls (1ND-TV engine only)

If you run out of fuel and the engine dies:

1 Refuel your vehicle.

2 Operate the priming pump until you feel more resistance to bleed the fuel system.



3 Start the engine. (→P. 199, 203)

If the engine does not start after the above steps have been performed, wait for 10 seconds and try step 2 and 3 again. If the engine still does not start, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

After starting the engine, depress the accelerator pedal lightly until the engine runs smoothly.

NOTICE

When restarting the engine

- Do not crank the engine before refueling and operating the priming pump. This may damage the engine and fuel system.
- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system: Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring system.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 583 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

If the vehicle becomes stuck

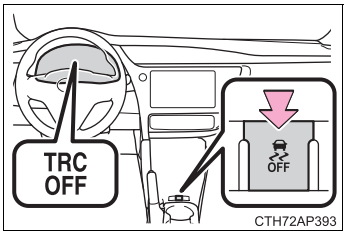
Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

1. Stop the engine. Shift the shift lever to P (Multidrive) or N (manual transmission), and set the parking brake.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine.
5. Shift the shift lever to D or R (Multidrive) or 1 or R (manual transmission) and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■When it is difficult to free the vehicle

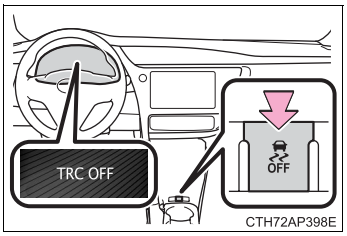
▶ Vehicles with a 3-ring meter

Press  to turn off TRC.



▶ Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

Press  to turn off TRC.



UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 584 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

⚠ WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

Vehicle specifications 9

9-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.).....586

Fuel information.....606

9-2. Customization

Customizable features.....608

9-3. Initialization

Items to initialize.....615

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 586 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		4330 mm (170.5 in.)
Overall width		1760 mm (69.3 in.)
Overall height*1		1475 mm (58.1 in.)
Wheelbase		2600 mm (102.4 in.)
Tread	Front	1535 mm (60.4 in.)*2 1525 mm (60.0 in.)*3 1515 mm (59.6 in.)*4, 5
	Rear	▶ 1NR-FE and 1ND-TV engines 1535 mm (60.4 in.)*2 1525 mm (60.0 in.)*3 1515 mm (59.6 in.)*4 ▶ 1ZR-FAE, 8NR-FTS and 1WW engines 1525 mm (60.0 in.)*2 1515 mm (59.6 in.)*3 1505 mm (59.3 in.)*5
Gross vehicle mass		▶ 1NR-FE engine 1735 kg (3826 lb.) ▶ 1ZR-FAE engine 1830 kg (4035 lb.)*6 1805 kg (3980 lb.)*7 ▶ 8NR-FTS engine 1845 kg (4068 lb.)*6 1820 kg (4012 lb.)*7 ▶ 1ND-TV engine 1820 kg (4012 lb.) ▶ 1WW engine 1890 kg (4167 lb.)

Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	▶ 1NR-FE, 1ZR-FAE, 8NR-FTS and 1ND-TV engines 1020 kg (2249 lb.) ▶ 1WW engine 1080 kg (2381 lb.)
	Rear	1010 kg (2227 lb.)
Drawbar load		▶ 1NR-FE and 1ND-TV engines 55 kg (121 lb.) ▶ 1ZR-FAE, 8NR-FTS and 1WW engines 65 kg (143 lb.)
Towing capacity	With brake	▶ 1NR-FE and 1ND-TV engines 1000 kg (2205 lb.) ▶ 1ZR-FAE, 8NR-FTS and 1WW engines 1300 kg (2867 lb.)
	Without brake	450 kg (992 lb.)

*1: Unladen vehicles

*2: Vehicles with 195/65R15 tires

*3: Vehicles with 205/55R16 tires

*4: Vehicles with 215/45R17 tires

*5: Vehicles with 225/45R17 tires

*6: Vehicles with a Multidrive

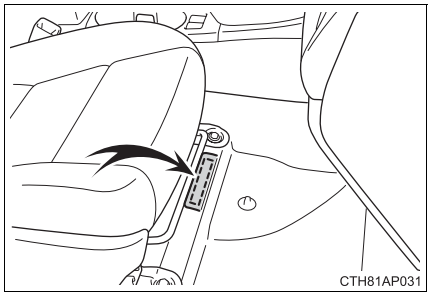
*7: Vehicles with a manual transmission

Vehicle identification

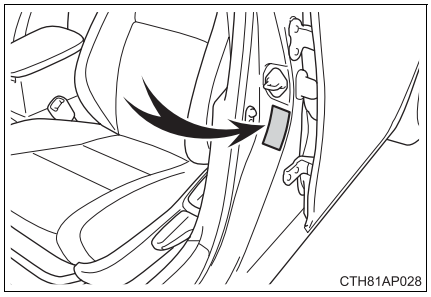
■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Toyota. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is stamped under the right-hand front seat.



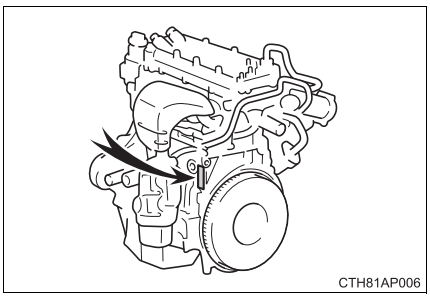
This number is also on the manufacturer's label.



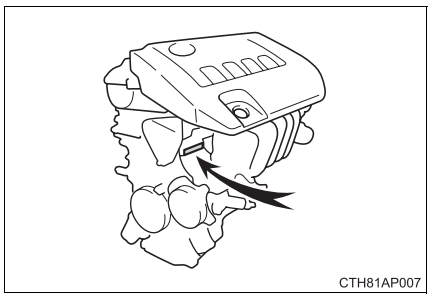
■ **Engine number**

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

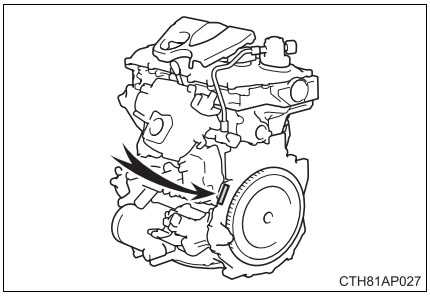
▶ 1NR-FE engine



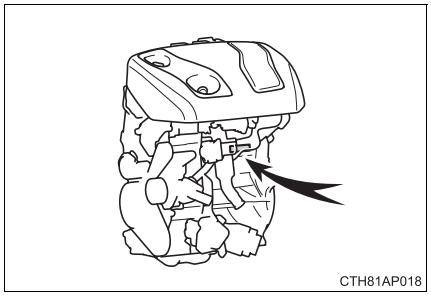
▶ 1ZR-FAE engine



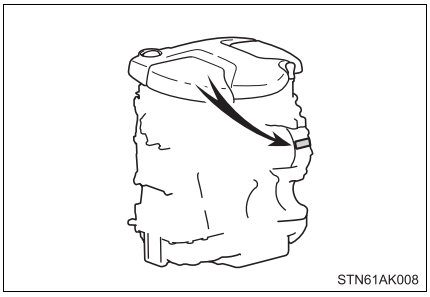
▶ 8NR-FTS engine



▶ 1ND-TV engine

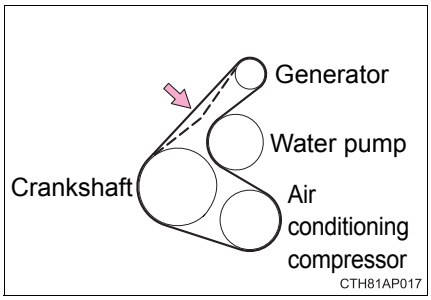


▶ 1WW engine



Engine

▶ 1NR-FE and 1ZR-FAE engines

Model	1NR-FE, 1ZR-FAE
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	▶ 1NR-FE engine 72.5 × 80.5 mm (2.85 × 3.17 in.) ▶ 1ZR-FAE engine 80.5 × 78.5 mm (3.17 × 3.09 in.)
Displacement	▶ 1NR-FE engine 1329 cm^3 (81.1 cu. in.) ▶ 1ZR-FAE engine 1598 cm^3 (97.5 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	▶ 1NR-FE engine Automatic adjustment ▶ 1ZR-FAE engine 7.6 — 10.0 mm (0.30 — 0.39 in.)*  *: Drive belt deflection with 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) thumb force (used belt)

▶ 8NR-FTS engine

Model	8NR-FTS
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline (with turbo-charger)
Bore and stroke	71.5 × 74.5 mm (2.82 × 2.93 in.)
Displacement	1197 cm^3 (73.0 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

▶ 1ND-TV and 1WW engines

Model	1ND-TV, 1WW
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, diesel (with turbo-charger)
Bore and stroke	▶ 1ND-TV engine 73.0 × 81.5 mm (2.87 × 3.21 in.) ▶ 1WW engine 78.0 × 83.6 mm (3.07 × 3.29 in.)
Displacement	▶ 1ND-TV engine 1364 cm^3 (83.2 cu. in.) ▶ 1WW engine 1598 cm^3 (97.52 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	▶ 1ND-TV engine Intake: 0.11 — 0.17 mm (0.004 — 0.007 in.) Exhaust: 0.14 — 0.20 mm (0.006 — 0.008 in.) ▶ 1WW engine Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 592 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

■ Drive belt type (1ND-TV engine)

The high strength drive belt is used for the generator side drive belt. When replacing the drive belt, use Toyota genuine drive belt or equivalent high strength drive belt. If the high strength drive belt is not used, durability of the belt may become less than expected. The high strength drive belt is a belt with Aramid core which has higher strength compared to usually available belts with PET or PEN core.

Fuel

▶ Gasoline engine

Fuel type	EU area: Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only Except EU area: Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	50 L (13.2 gal., 11.0 Imp. gal.)

▶ Diesel engine

Fuel type	EU area: Diesel fuel conforming to European standard EN590 Except EU area: Diesel fuel that contains 50 ppm or less of sulfur
Cetane number	48 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	50 L (13.2 gal., 11.0 Imp. gal.)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 593 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*) With filter	▶ 1NR-FE engine 3.4 L (3.6 qt., 3.0 Imp. qt.) ▶ 1ZR-FAE engine 4.2 L (4.4 qt., 3.7 Imp. qt.) ▶ 8NR-FTS engine 4.0 L (4.2 qt., 3.5 Imp. qt.) ▶ 1ND-TV engine 3.7 L (3.9 qt., 3.3 Imp. qt.) ▶ 1WW engine 5.2 L (5.5 qt., 4.6 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	▶ 1NR-FE engine 3.2 L (3.4 qt., 2.8 Imp. qt.) ▶ 1ZR-FAE engine 3.9 L (4.1 qt., 3.4 Imp. qt.) ▶ 8NR-FTS engine 3.7 L (3.9 qt., 3.3 Imp. qt.) ▶ 1ND-TV engine 3.3 L (3.5 qt., 2.9 Imp. qt.) ▶ 1WW engine 4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

▶ 1NR-FE and 1ZR-FAE engines

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Toyota vehicle. Toyota recommends the use of approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil”. Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving” or SN “Resource-Conserving”; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

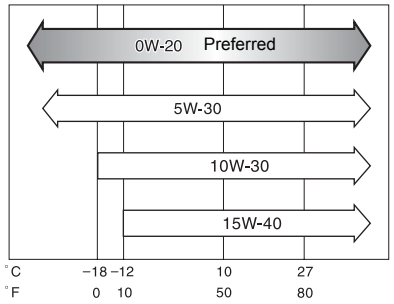
15W-40:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Toyota vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

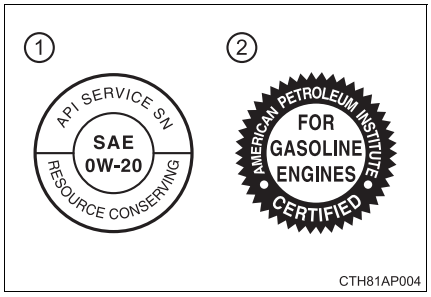
ITIOIL148

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



① API Service Symbol

Top portion: “API SERVICE SN” means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: “SAE 0W-20” means the SAE viscosity grade.
Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

▶ 8NR-FTS engine

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines” is used in your Toyota vehicle. Use Toyota approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines” or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

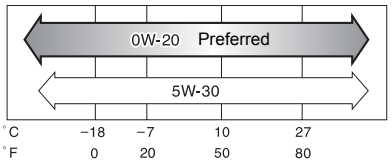
Oil grade:
“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines” or API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving” or SN “Resource-Conserving”; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Viscosity grade:
SAE 0W-20 and 5W-30

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 596 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil SAE 0W-20 for Downsized Turbo Gasoline Engines” is filled into your Toyota vehicle at manufacturing, and SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

ITIOIL158

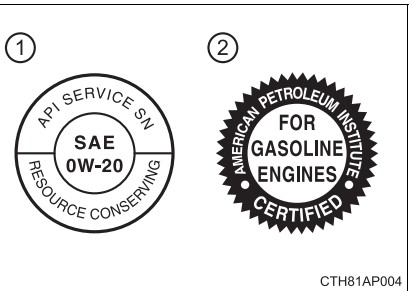
If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



CTH81AP004

① API Service Symbol

Top portion: “API SERVICE SN” means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: “SAE 0W-20” means the SAE viscosity grade.
Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

② ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 597 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ 1ND-TV engine

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Toyota vehicle. Toyota recommends the use of approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil”. Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

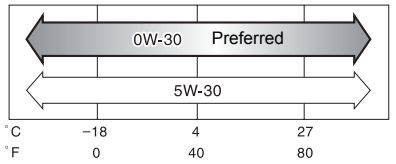
Oil grade: ACEA C2

NOTICE

Using engine oil other than ACEA C2 may damage the catalytic converter.

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-30 is filled into your Toyota vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change ITIOIL135

Oil viscosity (0W-30 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-30 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 0W-30 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

▶ 1WW engine

Toyota recommends the use of approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30 Premium Fuel Economy for 1WW/2WW engines”. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for usage of any other approved engine oil of matching quality.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine

- Use of engine oils other than “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30 Premium Fuel Economy for 1WW/2WW engines” or any other approved engine oil, may cause damage to the engine.
- If the approved oils are not available, up to 1 L (1.1 qt., 0.9 Imp. qt.) of the following oils may be used: ACEA C3 oils.
  Confirm that the viscosity grade is SAE 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 or 5W-30. Viscosities other than these, may damage the engine.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 599 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Cooling system

▶ 1NR-FE, 1ZR-FAE and 1ND-TV engines

Capacity (Reference)	1NR-FE engine	▶ With exhaust heat recirculation system 5.7 L (6.0 qt., 5.0 Imp. qt.) ▶ Without exhaust heat recirculation system 4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 Imp. qt.)
	1ZR-FAE engine	▶ Vehicles with a Multidrive 5.8 L (6.1 qt., 5.1 Imp. qt.) ▶ Vehicles with a manual transmission 5.6 L (5.9 qt., 4.9 Imp. qt.)
	1ND-TV engine	▶ With power heater 6.0 L (6.3 qt., 5.3 Imp. qt.) ▶ Without power heater 5.6 L (5.9 qt., 4.9 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

▶ 8NR-FTS engine

Capacity (reference)	
Gasoline engine	▶ Vehicles with a Multidrive 6.4 L (6.8 qt., 5.6 Imp. qt.) ▶ Vehicles with a manual transmission 6.2 L (6.6 qt., 5.5 Imp. qt.)
Intercooler	2.1 L (2.2 qt., 1.8 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

▶ 1WW engine

Capacity (reference)	▶ With power heater 7.3 L (7.7 qt., 6.4 Imp. qt.) ▶ Without power heater 7.0 L (7.4 qt., 6.2 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	“Toyota Genuine Premium Long Life Coolant 1WW/2WW” or equivalent. “Toyota Genuine Premium Long Life Coolant 1WW/2WW” concentrated product always needs to be mixed as 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. Do not use plain water alone. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for usage of any other approved engine coolant of matching quality.

Ignition system (gasoline engine)

Spark plug Make	▶ 1NR-FE engine DENSO SC16HR11 ▶ 1ZR-FAE engine DENSO SC20HR11 ▶ 8NR-FTS engine NGK DILKAR8J9G
Gap	▶ 1NR-FE and 1ZR-FAE engines 1.1 mm (0.043 in.) ▶ 8NR-FTS engine 0.9 mm (0.035 in.)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 601 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Electrical system

Battery Open voltage at 20°C (68°F):	12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the engine and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5 A max.

Multidrive

Fluid capacity*	7.5 L (7.9 qt., 6.6 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine CVT Fluid FE

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ Multidrive fluid type

Using Multidrive fluid other than “Toyota Genuine CVT Fluid FE” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage to the transmission of your vehicle.

Manual transaxle

Gear oil capacity (Reference)	▶ 1WW engine 2.1 L (2.2 qt., 1.8 Imp. qt.) ▶ Except 1WW engine 2.4 L (2.5 qt., 2.1 Imp. qt.)
Gear oil type	Use either of the following: • “TOYOTA Genuine Manual Transmission Gear Oil LV” • Other gear oil that meets API GL-4 and SAE 75W specifications

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 602 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

Manual transaxle gear oil

Please be aware that depending on the particular characteristics of the gear oil used or the operating conditions, idle sound, shift feeling and/or fuel efficiency may be different or affected. Toyota recommends to use “TOYOTA Genuine Manual Transmission Gear Oil LV” to achieve optimal performance.

Clutch

Pedal free play	5 — 15 mm (0.2 — 0.6 in.)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1704 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 4

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1 Left-hand drive vehicles Right-hand drive vehicles	 63 mm (2.48 in.) Min. 73 mm (2.87 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1 — 6 mm (0.04 — 0.24 in.)
Parking brake lever travel*2	5 — 8 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1704 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 4

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) while the engine is running

*2: Parking brake lever travel when pulled up with a force of 200 N (20.4 kgf, 45.0 lbf)

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 603 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Tires and wheels

▶ 15-inch tires

Tire size	195/65R15 91H		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	Type A*: 260 (2.6, 38) Type B*: 270 (2.7, 39)	Type A*: 260 (2.6, 38) Type B*: 270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	Type A*: 230 (2.3, 33) Type B*: 240 (2.4, 35)	Type A*: 230 (2.3, 33) Type B*: 240 (2.4, 35)
Wheel size	15 × 6 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

*: The tire inflation pressure is specified on the tire-loading information label. (→P. 476)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 604 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

▶ 16-inch and 17-inch tires

Tire size	205/55R16 91V, 215/45R17 87W, 225/45R17 91W		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	260 (2.6, 38)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	16 × 6 1/2 J (16-inch tires), 17 × 7 J (17-inch tires)		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Compact spare tire

Tire size	T125/70D17 98M
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 4 T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

■ **When towing a trailer**

Add 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) to the recommended tire inflation pressure and drive at speeds below 100 km/h (62 mph).

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 605 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Halogen headlights*	55	A
	Front fog lights*	19	B
	Front turn signal lights	21	C
	Side turn signal lights	5	C
	Rear turn signal lights	21	D
	Stop lights	21	E
	Back-up light	16	F
	Licence plate lights	5	F
Interior	Vanity lights*	5	G
	Front interior lights/personal lights	8	F
	Rear interior light*	8	G
	Rear personal lights*	8	F
	Luggage compartment light	5	G

A: HIR2 halogen bulbs
B: H16 halogen bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
D: Single end bulbs (amber)
E: Single end bulbs (clear)
F: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
G: Double end bulbs
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 606 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Fuel information

▶ Gasoline engine

EU area:

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.

For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

Except EU area:

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

▶ Diesel engine

EU area:

Your vehicle must use only diesel fuel conforming to European standard EN590.

Except EU area:

Your vehicle must use only diesel fuel that contains 50 ppm or less of sulfur and has a cetane number of 48 or higher.

■ **Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline (gasoline engine)**

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ **If you plan to drive in foreign countries (diesel engine)**

Low sulfur diesel fuel may not be available, so please check the availability with your distributor.

■ **If your engine knocks**

- Consult any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 607 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Gasoline engine: Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly.
- Diesel engine: Do not use a fuel that contains more than 50 ppm of sulphur.
  Use of such a high sulphur fuel may damage the engine.
- Gasoline engine: Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100.
  The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.
- Gasoline engine (EU area): Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Gasoline engine (except EU area): Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Diesel engine (EU area): FAME (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester) fuel sold under names such as “B30” or “B100” and fuel containing a large amount of FAME should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Diesel engine (except EU area): FAME (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester) fuel sold under names such as “B30” or “B100” and fuel containing a large amount of FAME should not be used. Your vehicle can use diesel mixed with 5% max biodiesel FAME (B5). The use of fuel with more than 5% FAME content (B5) will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 608 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed using the meter control switches, on the navigation/multimedia system screen or at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing on the navigation/multimedia system screen (vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system)

1 Press the “SETUP” button.

2 Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.
Select the desired item.

Various settings can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ Changing using the meter control switches (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)

→P. 105

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions when customized. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

① Settings that can be changed on the navigation/multimedia system screen (vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system)

② Settings that can be changed using the meter control switches (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)

③ Settings that can be changed by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Definition of symbols: O = Available, — = Not available

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 609 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Gauges, meters and multi-information display*1 (→P. 94, 102)

Function*2	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Language*3	English	*4	—	O	—
Units*3	km (L/100 km)	km (km/L)	O	O	—
		miles (MPG)			
	°C	°F	O	O	—
Eco Driving Indicator Light*5	On (Self-lighting)	Off	—	O	—
Drive information 1	Current fuel consumption (gauge display)	*6	—	O	—
	Average fuel economy (after reset)				
Drive information 2	Distance (driving range)	*6	—	O	—
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)				
Drive information 3*5	Stop & Start system operation time (after start)	*6	—	O	—
	Stop & Start system operation time (after reset)				
Pop-up display*5	On	Off	—	O	—

*1: Vehicles with a 2-ring meter

*2: For details about each function: →P. 108

*3: The default setting varies according to country.

*4: German, French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, Dutch, Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, Russian, Finnish, Greek, Polish, Ukrainian, Turkish, Hungarian, Czech, Slovak, Romanian

*5: If equipped

*6: 2 of the following items: current fuel consumption (gauge display), current fuel consumption (numerical display), average fuel economy (after reset), average fuel economy (after start), average fuel economy (after refuel), Stop & Start system operation time (after reset)*5, Stop & Start system operation time (after start)*5, average vehicle speed (after reset), average vehicle speed (after start), elapsed time (after reset), elapsed time (after start), distance (driving range), distance (after start), blank.

■ Smart entry & start system*1 and wireless remote control (→P. 130, 136, 141)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	—	O
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		120 seconds			
Open door warning buzzer*2	On	Off	—	—	O

*1: If equipped

*2: Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 611 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Smart entry & start system*1 (→P. 130, 136, 141)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	—	O
Number of consecutive door lock operations*2	2 times	As many as desired	—	—	O

*1: If equipped

*2: Left-hand drive vehicles

■ Wireless remote control (→P. 118, 130, 136)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Wireless remote control	On	Off	—	—	O
Back door unlocking operation*	One short press	Push twice	—	—	O
		Press and hold (short)			
		Press and hold (long)			
		Off			

*: If equipped

■ Turn signal lever (→P. 221)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	3	5	—	—	O
		7			
		Off			

■ **Automatic light control system* (→P. 223)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	—	O

*: If equipped

■ **Follow me home system (→P. 225)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		90 seconds			
		120 seconds			

■ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert)* (→P. 252)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
LDA warning sensitivity	High	Standard	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ **RSA (Road Sign Assist)* (→P. 262)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
RSA system	On	Off	—	O	—
Notification method of excessive speed	Only display	Display and buzzer	—	O	—
		Off			
Notification methods other than excessive speed	Only display	Display and buzzer	—	O	—
		Off			
Notification level of excessive speed	2 km/h (1 mph)	10 km/h (5 mph)	—	O	—
		5 km/h (3 mph)			

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 613 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ Stop & Start system* (→P. 267)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Change the Stop & Start system duration when the A/C is on	Normal	Long	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ Toyota parking assist-sensor*1 (→P. 289)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Toyota parking assist-sensor system	On	Off	—	O	—
Detection distance of the front center sensors*2	Far	Near	O	—	O
Detection distance of the rear center sensors*2	Far	Near	O	—	O
Buzzer volume*2	5	1 to 4	O	—	O
Display setting*2, 3	All sensors displayed	Display off	O	—	O

*1: If equipped

*2: Vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system

*3: When Toyota parking assist-sensor is operating.

■ Automatic air conditioning system* (→P. 391)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to “AUTO” switch operation	On	Off	O	—	O
A/C auto switch operation	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 614 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

■ **Illumination (→P. 403)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Interior light illumination control*	On	Off	O	—	O
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds	O*	—	O
		30 seconds			
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person*	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

■ **Vehicle customization**

When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operational signal (emergency flashers) function setting.

WARNING

■ **During customization**

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **During customization**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 615 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Items to initialize

The following item must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system*	• When rotating front and rear tires which have different tire inflation pressures • When changing the tire size • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.	P. 468

*: If equipped

Index

What to do if...
(Troubleshooting).....618
Alphabetical index.....623

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 618 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed

You lose your keys

- If you lose your keys or mechanical keys, new genuine keys or mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 120)
- If you lose your keys or electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately. (→P. 129)

The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the key battery weak or depleted? (→P. 483)
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?
  When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P. 206)
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P. 121, 145)

The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P. 134)

If you think something is wrong

The engine does not start (vehicles without a smart entry & start system)

- Vehicles with a manual transmission:
  Do you turn the key with the clutch pedal depressed firmly? (→P. 199)
- Vehicles with a Multidrive:
  Is the shift lever in P? (→P. 199)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P. 200)
- Is the battery discharged? (→P. 572)

The engine does not start (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

- Vehicles with a Multidrive:
  Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P. 203)
- Vehicles with a manual transmission:
  Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the clutch pedal? (→P. 203)
- Vehicles with a Multidrive:
  Is the shift lever in P? (→P. 209)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P. 142)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P. 210)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
  In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P. 570)
- Is the battery discharged? (→P. 572)

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 620 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal (vehicles with a Multidrive)

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
  Is the engine switch in the “ON” position?
  If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in the “ON” position. (→P. 568)
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?
  If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode. (→P. 568)

The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
  It is locked to prevent theft of the vehicle if the key is pulled from the engine switch. (→P. 201)
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P. 209)

The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
  The power window except for the one at the driver’s seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P. 170)

The engine switch is turned off automatically (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P. 209)

A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing
  Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P. 523)
- The brake system warning light (red indicator) is on
  Is the parking brake released? (→P. 222)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P. 519, 531)

An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (vehicles with an alarm)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door during setting the alarm?
  The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P. 83)
  Vehicles without a smart entry & start system:
  To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to the “ON” position or start the engine.
  Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode or start the engine.

A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  Vehicles with a 2-ring meter: Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P. 531)

A warning light turns on (vehicles with a 3-ring meter)

- When a warning light turns on, refer to P. 519.

A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed (vehicles with a 2-ring meter)

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P. 519, 531.

When a problem has occurred

If you have a flat tire

- Vehicles with a spare tire:
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P. 537)
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit:
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and repair the flat tire temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 551)

The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P. 583)

Alphabetical index

A

A/C 391
Air conditioning filter 481
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 313
Warning light 520
Air conditioning filter 481
Air conditioning system 391
Air conditioning filter 481
Airbag manual on-off system ... 52
Airbags 42
Airbag manual on-off system 52
Airbag operating conditions 48
Airbag precautions for your child 44
Correct driving posture 36
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 48
Curtain shield airbag precautions 46
General airbag precautions 44
Locations of airbags 42
Modification and disposal of airbags 47
Side airbag operating conditions 48
Side airbag precautions 44
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 48
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 44
SRS airbags 42
SRS warning light 520
Alarm 83
Warning buzzer 519, 531
Anchor brackets 64
Antennas (smart entry & start system) 141
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 313
Warning light 520
Armrest 422
Ashtrays 420
Assist grips 423
Audio input* 326
Audio system* 324
Audio input 326
AUX port/USB port 326
Bluetooth® audio 356
CD player 332
iPod 340
MP3/WMA disc 332
Optimal use 327
Portable music player 355
Radio 329
Steering wheel audio switch 325
USB memory 348
Automatic headlight leveling system 228
Automatic High Beam 258
Automatic light control system 223
AUX port* 326
Auxiliary boxes 411, 415

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 624 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

B

Back door 136
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulb..... 492
Wattage..... 605
Battery 459
Checking..... 459
If the vehicle has discharged battery..... 572
Preparing and checking before winter..... 319
Warning light..... 519
Bluetooth®*
Audio system 373
Hands-free system (for cellular phone)..... 376
Bottle holders..... 409
Brake
Emergency brake signal 313
Fluid 602
Parking brake..... 222
Warning light..... 519
Brake assist..... 313
Break-in tips 180
Brightness control
Meter light control 99, 108

C

Care..... 428, 432
Aluminum wheels..... 429
Exterior 428
Interior..... 432
Seat belts..... 433
Cargo hooks..... 413
CD player*..... 332
Chains..... 320
Child restraint system..... 55
Baby seats, definition..... 55
Baby seats, installation 65
Child seats, definition..... 55
Child seats, installation 65
Installing CRS with ISOFIX rigid anchors..... 69
Installing CRS with seat belts..... 65
Installing CRS with top strap 70
Junior seats, definition..... 55
Junior seats, installation 67
Child safety 54
Airbag precautions..... 44
Battery precautions..... 460, 577
Child restraint system 55
How your child should wear the seat belt..... 39
Installing child restraints 64
Panoramic roof shade precautions..... 425
Power window lock switch 170
Power window precautions..... 173
Rear door child-protectors 134
Removed electronic key battery precautions..... 485
Seat belt precautions..... 41
Seat heater precautions..... 401

Child-protectors **134**
Cleaning **428, 432**
Aluminum wheels 429
Exterior 428
Interior 432
Seat belts 433
Clock **420**
Coat hooks **423**
Condenser **458**
Console box **408**
Cooling system **456**
Engine overheating 578
Cruise control **280**
Cup holders **410**
Curtain shield airbags **42**
Customizable features **608**

D

Daytime running light system **227**
Deck board **414**
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors 388, 395
Rear window 388, 395
Windshield 388, 395
Dimensions **586**
Display
Multi-information display 97, 102
Warning message 531
Do-it-yourself maintenance **438**
Door lock
Back door 136
Side doors 130
Smart entry & start system 130, 136
Wireless remote control 130, 136
Doors
Back door 136
Door lock 130, 136
Door windows 170
Double locking system 86
Open door warning buzzer 134, 137
Open door warning light 523
Outside rear view mirrors 167
Rear door child-protector 134
Side doors 130
Double locking system **86**
DPF
Diesel Particulate Filter system 311
Warning light 522
Drive information **106**

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 626 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Driving 176
Break-in tips 180
Correct posture 36
Procedures 176
Winter drive tips 319

E

Eco Driving Indicator 100, 110
Electric Power Steering (EPS) 313
Warning light 520
Electronic key 118
Battery-saving function 144
If the electronic key does not operate properly 569
Replacing the battery 483
Emergency, in case of
If a warning light turns on 519
If a warning message is displayed 531
If the battery is discharged 572
If the electronic key does not operate properly 569
If the engine will not start 566
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 568
If the warning buzzer sounds 519
If you have a flat tire 537, 551
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls 582
If you think something is wrong 517
If your vehicle becomes stuck 583
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 509
If your vehicle needs to be towed 511
If your vehicle overheats 578
Emergency brake signal 313
Emergency flashers 508
Emergency tire puncture repair kit 551
Engine 590
ACCESSORY mode 206
Compartment 444
Engine switch 199, 203
Hood 441
How to start the engine 199, 203
Identification number 589
If the engine will not start 566
Ignition switch (engine switch) 199, 203
Overheating 578

Engine coolant 456
Capacity 599
Checking 456
Preparing and checking before winter 319
Warning light 519
Engine coolant temperature gauge 94
Engine immobilizer system 75
Engine oil 449
Capacity 593
Checking 449
Oil level warning light 522
Oil pressure warning light 519
Preparing and checking before winter 319
Engine oil maintenance data 454
Engine switch 199, 203
EPS (Electric Power Steering) 313
Warning light 520

F

Flat tire
Vehicles with a spare tire 537
Vehicles without a spare tire 551
Floor mats 34
Fluid
Brake 602
Clutch 602
Multidrive 601
Washer 462
Fog lights 229
Replacing light bulbs 492
Switch 229
Wattage 605
Follow me home system 225
Front fog lights 229
Replacing light bulbs 492
Switch 229
Wattage 605
Front personal lights 405
Wattage 605
Front position lights 223
Light switch 223
Replacing light bulbs 492
Front seats 157
Adjustment 157
Cleaning 432
Correct driving posture 36
Head restraints 161
Seat heaters 401
Front sensor 241

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 628 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Front turn signal lights.....221
Replacing light bulbs.....492
Turn signal lever 221
Wattage.....605
Fuel 237
Capacity 592
Fuel filter 463, 464, 582
Fuel gauge 94
Fuel pump shut off system....518
If you run out of fuel and the engine stalls.....582
Information 606
Refueling.....237
Type 237, 592
Warning light.....522, 523
Fuel filler door.....237
Refueling.....237
Fuel pump shut off system.....518
Fuses 486

G

Gauges 94
Gear Shift Indicator 219
Glove box 408
Grocery bag hooks.....413

H

Hands-free system (for cellular phone)* 376
Head restraints 161
Headlight cleaners.....231
Headlights 223
Automatic High Beam system.....258
Follow me home system.....225
Light switch 223
Replacing light bulbs.....492
Wattage 605
Heaters
Heater system.....386
Outside rear view mirrors 388, 395
Seat heaters 401
Hill-start assist control.....313

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 629 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Hood.....441
Open.....441
Hooks
Cargo hooks.....413
Coat hooks.....423
Grocery bag hooks.....413
Retaining hooks (floor mat).....34
Horn.....163

I

Identification.....588
Engine.....589
Vehicle.....588
Ignition switch (engine switch).....199, 203
Illuminated entry system.....406
Immobilizer system.....75
Indicators.....91
Initialization
Engine oil maintenance data.....454
Meter display settings.....108
Power windows.....172
Tire pressure warning system.....467
Inside rear view mirror.....165
Intercooler.....458
Intercooler coolant.....457
Capacity.....599
Checking.....457
Preparing and checking before winter.....319
Interior lights.....403
ISOFIX rigid anchors.....64

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 630 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

J

Jack
Positioning the jack 443
Vehicle-equipped jack 538
Jack handle 538
Jam protection function
Panoramic roof shade 425
Power window 171

K

Keyless entry
Smart entry & start system 130, 136
Wireless remote control 130, 136
Keys 118
Battery-saving function 144
Electronic key 118
Engine switch 199, 203
If the electronic key does not operate properly 569
If you lose your keys 120
Key number plate 118
Keyless entry 130, 136
Mechanical key 120
Replacing the battery 483
Warning buzzer 142
Wireless remote control key 119
Knee airbags 42

L

Lane Departure Alert (LDA) 252
Language (multi-information display) 109
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 252
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever 441
Hood lock release lever 441
Shift lever 213, 218
Turn signal lever 221
Wiper lever 231, 235
License plate lights 223
Light switch 223
Replacing light bulbs 492
Wattage 605
Light bulbs
Replacing 492
Wattage 605
Lights
Automatic High Beam system 258
Fog light switch 229
Follow me home system 225
Headlight switch 223
Illuminated entry system 406
Interior light 404
Interior lights list 403
Luggage compartment light 138
Personal lights 405
Replacing light bulbs 492
Turn signal lever 221
Vanity lights 404
Wattage 605
Lock steering column 209
Low profile tire 469
Luggage cover 417

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 631 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 438
Maintenance data 586
Maintenance requirements 435
Malfunction indicator lamp 520
Manual headlight leveling dial 226
Manual transmission 218
Gear Shift Indicator 219
Master warning light 524
Meter 94
Indicators 91
Meter light control 99, 108
Meters 94
Multi-information display 97, 102
Settings 108
Warning lights 89
Meter light control 99, 108
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 165
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 388, 395
Outside rear view mirrors 167
Vanity mirrors 419
MP3 disc* 332
Multidrive 213
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 568
M mode 216
Paddle shift switches 215, 216
Multi-information display 97, 102
Drive information 106
Language 109
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 254
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 244, 245
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 263
Settings 108
Stop & Start system 275
Warning message 531

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 632 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

O

Odometer 98, 104
Oil
Engine oil 593
Manual transaxle oil 601
Opener
Back door 137
Fuel filler door 239
Hood 441
Outside rear view mirrors 167
Adjusting and folding 167
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 388, 395
Outside temperature display 94
Overheating, Engine 578

P

Paddle shift switches 215, 216
Panoramic roof shade 424
Parking assist sensors 289
Parking brake 222
Operation 222
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 222
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 244
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch 245
Personal lights 405
Wattage 605
Power heater 399
Power outlets 421
Power steering 313
Warning light 520
Power windows 170
Jam protection function 171
Operation 170
Window lock switch 170
Pre-Crash Safety system (PCS) 244
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch 245

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 633 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

R

Radiator 458
Radio* 329
Rear fog light 229
Replacing light bulb 492
Switch 229
Rear personal lights 405
Wattage 605
Rear seat
Folding down 159
Rear turn signal lights 221
Replacing light bulbs 492
Turn signal lever 221
Wattage 605
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 165
Outside rear view mirrors 167
Rear view monitor system*
Rear window defogger 388, 395
Rear window wiper 235
Refueling 237
Capacity 592
Fuel types 592
Opening the fuel tank cap 239
Replacing
Electronic key battery 483
Fuses 486
Light bulbs 492
Tires 537
Wireless remote control battery 483
Reset the maintenance data 463
Road Sign Assist (RSA) 262
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 262

S

Seat belt reminder light 523
Seat belts 38
Adjusting the seat belt 39
Child restraint system installation 65
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt 433
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) 39
How to wear your seat belt 36
How your child should wear the seat belt 39
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 40
Reminder light and buzzer 523
Seat belt pretensioners 39
SRS warning light 520
Seat heaters 401
Seats 157, 159
Adjustment 157
Adjustment precautions 158
Child seats/child restraint system installation 64
Cleaning 432
Head restraints 161
Properly sitting in the seat 36
Seat heaters 401

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 634 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

Sensor
Automatic headlight system 227
Automatic High Beam system 241
Inside rear view mirror 166
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 252
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 241
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 233
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 262
Toyota parking assist-sensor 289
Shift lever 213, 218
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 568
Manual transmission 218
Multidrive 213
Shift lock system 568
Side airbags 42
Side mirrors 167
Adjusting and folding 167
Side turn signal lights 221
Replacing light bulbs 492
Turn signal lever 221
Wattage 605
Simple-IPA 296
Smart entry & start system 141
Antenna location 141
Entry functions 130, 136
Starting the engine 203
Snow tires 321
Spare tire 537
Inflation pressure 604
Storage location 538
Spark plug 600
Specifications 586
Speech command system*
Speed limiter 285
Speedometer 94
Sport mode 214
Steering lock 209
Column lock release 201, 210
Steering wheel 163
Adjustment 163
Audio switches 325
Stop & Start cancel switch 269
Stop & Start system 267

Stop lights
Replacing light bulbs 492
Wattage 605
Storage feature 407
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck 583
Sun visors 419
Sunshade
Panoramic roof 424
Switches
Airbag manual on-off switch 52
Audio remote control switches* 325
Cruise control switch 280
"DISP" switch 98
Door lock switches 133
Emergency flashers switch 508
Engine switch 199, 203
Fog light switch 229
Ignition switch 199, 203
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) switch 253
Light switches 223
Meter control switches 105
Outside rear view mirror switches 167
Paddle shift switches 215, 216
Panoramic roof shade switch 424
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch 245
Power door lock switch 133
Power heater switch 399
Power window switches 170
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 388, 395
Seat heater switches 401
Simple-IPA switch 297
Speed limiter switch 285
Sport mode switch 214
Stop & Start cancel switch 269
Talk switch* 361
Telephone switches* 361
Tire pressure warning reset switch 468
"TRIP" switch 104
VSC OFF switch 314, 315
Window lock switch 170
Windshield wiper and washer switch 231, 235

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to "Navigation and multimedia system Owner's manual".

T

Tachometer 94
Tail lights 223
Light switch 223
Replacing light bulbs 504
Talk switch* 361
Telephone switches* 361
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 83
Double locking system 86
Engine immobilizer system 75
Tire inflation pressure 476
Maintenance data 603
Tire pressure warning system 467
Initializing 467
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 467
Registering ID codes 469
Tire pressure warning reset switch 468
Warning light 524
Tires 465
Chains 320
Checking 465
Emergency tire puncture repair kit 551
If you have a flat tire 537, 551
Inflation pressure 603
Replacing 537
Rotating tires 466
Size 603
Snow tires 321
Spare tire 537
Tire pressure warning system 467
Warning light 524
Tools 538, 552
Top strap 70
Towing
Emergency towing 511
Towing capacity 586
Towing eyelet 513
Trailer towing 189
Toyota parking assist-sensor 289
Toyota Safety Sense 240
Automatic High Beam 258
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 252
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 244
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 262
Traction Control (TRC) 313
Trailer towing 189
Transmission 213, 218
Gear Shift Indicator 219
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 568
M mode 216
Manual transmission 218
Multidrive 213
Paddle shift switches 215, 216
TRC (Traction Control) 313
Trip meters 98, 104
Turn signal lights 221
Replacing light bulbs 492
Turn signal lever 221
Wattage 605

UK AURIS_HB_OM_EE_OM12J21E.book 637 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後９時２７分

U

USB port* **326**

V

Vanity lights **404**
Wattage 605
Vanity mirrors **419**
Vehicle identification number **588**
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) **313**
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) **313**

W

Warning buzzers
Brake system 519
Downshifting 217
Electric power steering system 520
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 252
Open back door 137
Open door 134
Pre-crash warning 244
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 262
Seat belt reminder 523
Stop & Start system 272
Toyota parking assist-sensor 289

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

Warning lights 89
ABS 520
Brake system 519
Charging system 519
Cruise control indicator light 520
DPF system 522
Electric power steering system 520
Engine oil level 522
Engine oil maintenance 522
Engine oil pressure 519
Fuel filter 522
High engine coolant temperature warning light 519
Low fuel level 523
Malfunction indicator lamp 520
Master warning light 524
Open door 523
PCS warning light 521
Seat belt reminder light 523
Slip indicator 521
Smart entry & start system 523
Speed limiter indicator light 520
SRS warning light 520
Stop & Start indicator light 521
Tire pressure warning light 524
Warning messages 531
Washer 231, 235
Checking 462
Preparing and checking before winter 319
Switch 231, 235
Washing and waxing 428
Weight 586
Wheels 478
Replacing 478
Size 603
Window glasses 170
Window lock switch 170
Windows 170
Power windows 170
Rear window defogger 388, 395
Windshield wipers 231
Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster 231
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 232
Winter driving tips 319
Wireless remote control key ... 119
Battery-saving function 144
Locking/Unlocking 130, 136
Replacing the battery 483
WMA disc* 332

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

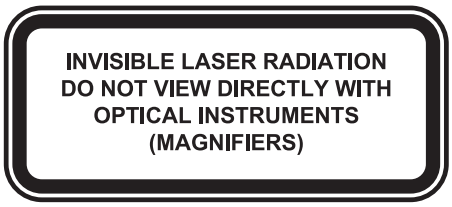
⚠ WARNING

■ **Front sensor**

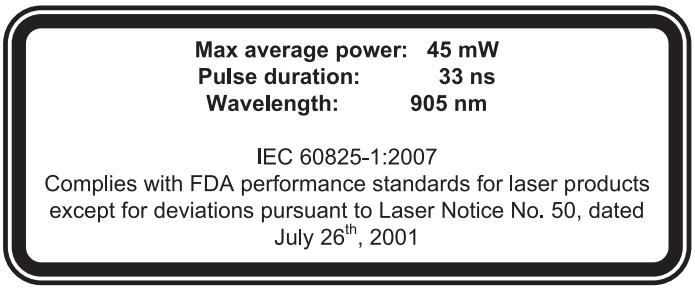
The front sensor uses lasers to detect vehicles ahead of your vehicle. The front sensor is classified as class 1M laser product according to the IEC 60825-1 standard. Under normal usage conditions, these lasers are not harmful to the naked eye. However, it is necessary to observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in the loss of eyesight or severe visual impairment.

- To avoid hazardous laser radiation exposure, never attempt to disassemble the front sensor (e.g. remove the lenses). When disassembled, the front sensor is classified as a class 3B laser product according to the IEC 60825-1 standard. Class 3B lasers are hazardous and pose a risk of eye injury under direct exposure.
- Do not attempt to look into the front sensor with a magnifying glass, microscope or other optical instrument within a distance of less than 100 mm (3.9 in.).

Laser classification label



Laser explanatory label

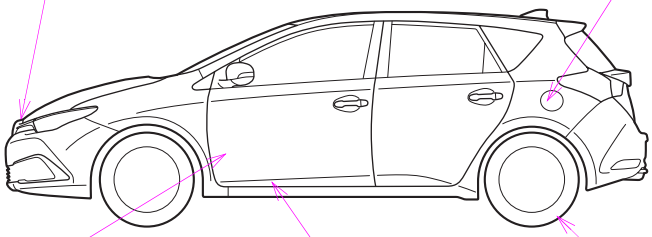


Laser emission data

Maximum average power: 45 mW
Pulse duration: 33 ns
Wave length: 905 nm
Divergence (horizontal x vertical): 28° x 12°

GAS STATION INFORMATION

Auxiliary catch lever		Fuel filler door
P. 441		P. 239



Hood lock release lever	Fuel filler door opener	Tire inflation pressure
P. 441	P. 239	P. 603

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	50 L (13.2 gal., 11.0 Imp. gal.)
Fuel type	P. 592
Cold tire inflation pressure	P. 603
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)	P. 593
Engine oil type	P. 593